

## § 1012.10

- (2) Maintain impartiality in conducting its business;
- (3) Minimize the possibility that the Presidio Trust will become involved in issues that are not related to its mission or programs;
- (4) Avoid spending public employees' time for private purposes;
- (5) Avoid any negative cumulative effect of granting similar requests;
- (6) Ensure that privileged or protected matters remain confidential; and
- (7) Avoid undue burden on the Presidio Trust.

### RESPONSIBILITIES OF EMPLOYEES

#### § 1012.10 What must I, as an employee, do upon receiving a request?

- (a) If you receive a request or subpoena that does not include a *Touhy* Request, you must immediately notify your supervisor and the Presidio Trust's General Counsel for assistance in issuing the proper response.
- (b) If you receive a *Touhy* Request, you must promptly notify your supervisor and forward the request to the General Counsel. After consulting with the General Counsel, the Executive Director will decide whether to grant the *Touhy* Request under § 1012.9.
- (c) All decisions granting or denying a *Touhy* Request must be in writing. The Executive Director must ask the General Counsel for advice when preparing the decision.
- (d) Under 28 U.S.C. 1733, Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 44(a)(1), or comparable State or Tribal law, a request for an authenticated copy of a Presidio Trust record may be granted by the person having the legal custody of the

## 36 CFR Ch. X (7–1–23 Edition)

record. If you believe that you have custody of a record:

- (1) Consult the General Counsel to determine if you can grant a request for authentication of records; and
- (2) Consult the General Counsel concerning the proper form of the authentication (as authentication requirements may vary by jurisdiction).

#### § 1012.11 Must I get approval before testifying as an expert witness other than on behalf of the United States in a Federal proceeding in which the United States is a party or has a direct and substantial interest?

(a) You must comply with 5 CFR 2635.805(c), which details the authorization procedure for an employee to testify as an expert witness, not on behalf of the United States, in any proceeding before a court or agency of the United States in which the United States is a party or has a direct and substantial interest. This procedure means:

- (1) You must obtain the written approval of the Presidio Trust's General Counsel;
  - (2) You must be in an approved leave status if you testify during duty hours; and
  - (3) You must state for the record that you are appearing as a private individual and that your testimony does not represent the official views of the Presidio Trust.
- (b) If you testify as an expert witness on a matter outside the scope of your official duties, and which is not covered by paragraph (a) of this section, you must comply with 5 CFR 2635.802.

### PARTS 1013–1099 [RESERVED]

## CHAPTER XI—ARCHITECTURAL AND TRANSPORTATION BARRIERS COMPLIANCE BOARD

| <i>Part</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                | <i>Page</i> |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1100–1119   | [Reserved]                                                                                                                                                                     |             |
| 1120        | Public availability of information .....                                                                                                                                       | 287         |
| 1121        | Privacy Act implementation .....                                                                                                                                               | 301         |
| 1150        | Practice and procedures for compliance hearings. ..                                                                                                                            | 303         |
| 1151        | Bylaws .....                                                                                                                                                                   | 316         |
| 1154        | Enforcement of nondiscrimination on the basis of<br>handicap in programs or activities conducted by<br>the Architectural and Transportation Barriers<br>Compliance Board ..... | 321         |
| 1155        | [Reserved]                                                                                                                                                                     |             |
| 1191        | Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) accessi-<br>bility guidelines for buildings and facilities; Ar-<br>chitectural Barriers Act (ABA) accessibility<br>guidelines .....      | 327         |
| 1192        | Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) accessi-<br>bility guidelines for transportation vehicles .....                                                                          | 430         |
| 1194        | Information and communication technology stand-<br>ards and guidelines .....                                                                                                   | 465         |
| 1195        | Standards for accessible medical diagnostic equip-<br>ment .....                                                                                                               | 487         |
| 1196–1199   | [Reserved]                                                                                                                                                                     |             |



## PARTS 1100–1119 [RESERVED]

### PART 1120—PUBLIC AVAILABILITY OF INFORMATION

#### Subpart A—General

Sec.

- 1120.1 Purpose and scope of this part.
- 1120.2 Definitions.
- 1120.3 Existing records.

#### Subpart B—Published Information

- 1120.5 Information published in the Federal Register.
- 1120.6 Information in A&TBCB publications.

#### Subpart C—Records Available for Public Inspection and Copying, Documents Published and Indexed

- 1120.11 Records available for inspection.
- 1120.12 Indexes to certain records.
- 1120.13 Effect of nonavailability.

#### Subpart D—Information Available Upon Request

- 1120.21 Policy on disclosure of records.
- 1120.22 Requests to which this subpart applies.
- 1120.23 Where requests for agency records must be filed.
- 1120.24 Misdirected written requests; oral requests.
- 1120.25 Form of requests.
- 1120.26 Deficient descriptions.
- 1120.31 A&TBCB receipt of requests; responsibilities of Freedom of Information Officer.
- 1120.32 A&TBCB action on requests.
- 1120.33 Time allowed for initial action on requests.
- 1120.34 Initial denials of requests.
- 1120.36 Appeals from initial denials.
- 1120.37 A&TBCB action on appeals.
- 1120.38 Time allowed for action on appeals.
- 1120.41 Exempt documents.
- 1120.42 Release of exempt documents.

#### Subpart E—Copies of Records and Fees for Services

- 1120.51 Charges for services, generally.
- 1120.52 Computerized records.
- 1120.53 Payment of fees.

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 552, the Freedom of Information Act, as amended.

SOURCE: 45 FR 80976, Dec. 8, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

#### Subpart A—General

##### § 1120.1 Purpose and scope of this part.

This part contains the general rules of the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board for public access to Board records. These regulations implement 5 U.S.C. 552, the Freedom of Information Act, as amended, and the policy of the Board. It is the Board's policy to disseminate information on matters of interest to the public and to disclose on request all information contained in records in its custody insofar as is compatible with the discharge of its responsibilities and consistent with the law. This part sets forth generally the categories of records accessible to the public, the types of records subject to prohibitions or restrictions on disclosure, and the places and procedures to obtain information from records in the custody of the A&TBCB.

##### § 1120.2 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part:

(a) *A&TBCB* or *Board* means the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board.

(b) *A&TBCB record* or *record* means any document, writing, photograph, sound or magnetic recording, drawing or other similar thing by which information has been preserved, from which the information can be retrieved and copied, and which is, was, or is alleged to be under the control of the A&TBCB.

(1) The term includes—

(i) Informal writings such as handwritten notes and drafts;

(ii) Information preserved in a form which must be translated or deciphered by machine in order to be intelligible to humans;

(iii) Records which were created or acquired by the A&TBCB, its members, its employees, its members' employees, or persons acting on behalf of its members, by use of A&TBCB funds or in the course of transacting official business for the A&TBCB.

(2) The term does not include—

(i) Materials which are legally owned by an A&TBCB member, employee, or member's employee or representative

in his or her purely personal capacity; and

(ii) Materials published by non-Federal organizations which are readily available to the public, such as books, journals, standards, and periodicals available through reference libraries, even if such materials are in the A&TBCB's possession.

(c) The terms *agency*, *person*, *party*, *rule*, *rulemaking*, *order*, and *adjudication* have the meanings given in 5 U.S.C. 551, except where the context demonstrates that a different meaning is intended, and except that for purposes of the Freedom of Information Act the term *agency* as defined in 5 U.S.C. 551 includes any executive department, military department, Government corporation, Government controlled corporation, the United States Postal Service, or other establishment in the executive branch of the Government (including the Executive Office of the President) or any independent regulatory agency.

(d) A government record *under the control of the A&TBCB* means that the record is subject to the free disposition of the A&TBCB. This includes keeping the record available for governmental use as required and protecting, preserving, and exercising such control over it as may be necessary for that purpose. Control of a record is not synonymous with, and does not require, actual physical possession of the record.

(e) *Request* means a request to inspect or obtain a copy of one or more records.

(f) *Requestor* means any person who submits a request to the A&TBCB.

(g) *Public member* means a member appointed by the President from among members of the general public.

(h) *Direct Costs* means those expenditures which an agency actually incurs in searching for and duplicating (and in the case of commercial requesters, reviewing) documents to respond to a FOIA request. Direct costs include, for example, the salary of the employee performing work (the basic rate of pay for the employee plus 16 percent of that rate to cover benefits) and the cost of operating duplicating machinery. Not included in direct costs are overhead expenses such as costs of space, and

heating or lighting the facility in which the records are stored.

(i) *Search* includes all time spent looking for material that is responsive to a request, including page-by-page or line-by-line identification of material within documents. Agencies should ensure that searching for material is done in the most efficient and least expensive manner so as to minimize costs for both the agency and the requester. For example, agencies should not engage in line-by-line search when merely duplicating an entire document would prove the less expensive and quicker method of complying with a request. *Search* should be distinguished, moreover, from *review* of material in order to determine whether the material is exempt from disclosure (see paragraph (k) of this section). Searches may be done manually or by computer using existing programming.

(j) *Duplication* refers to the process of making a copy of a document necessary to respond to an FOIA request. Such copies can take the form of paper copy, microform, audio-visual materials, or machine readable documentation (e.g., magnetic tape or disk), among others. The copy provided must be in a form that is reasonably usable by requesters.

(k) *Review* refers to the process of examining documents located in response to a request that is for a commercial use (see paragraph (l) of this section) to determine whether any portion of any document located is permitted to be withheld. It also includes processing any documents for disclosure, e.g., doing all that is necessary to excise them and otherwise prepare them for release. Review does not include time spent resolving general legal or policy issues regarding the application of exemptions.

(l) *Commercial Use Request* refers to a request from or on behalf of one who seeks information for a use or purpose that furthers the commercial, trade, or profit interests of the requester or the person on whose behalf the request is made. In determining whether a requester properly belongs in this category, agencies must determine the use to which a requester will put the documents requested. Moreover, where an agency has reasonable cause to doubt

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1120.5

the use to which a requester will put the records sought, or where that use is not clear from the request itself, agencies should seek additional clarification before assigning the request to a specific category.

(m) *Educational Institution* refers to a preschool, a public or private elementary or secondary school, an institution of graduate higher education, an institution of undergraduate higher education, an institution of professional education, and an institution of vocational education, which operates a program or programs of scholarly research.

(n) *Non-Commercial Scientific Institution* refers to an institution that is not operated on a *commercial* basis as that term is referenced in paragraph (l) of this section, and which is operated solely for the purpose of conducting scientific research the results of which are not intended to promote any particular product or industry.

(o) *Representative of the News Media* refers to any person actively gathering news for an entity that is organized and operated to publish or broadcast news to the public. The term *news* means information that is about current events or that would be of current interest to the public. Examples of news media entities include television or radio stations broadcasting to the public at large, and publishers of periodicals (but only in those instances when they can qualify as disseminators of *news*) who make their products available for purchase or subscription by the general public. These examples are not intended to be all-inclusive.

Moreover, as traditional methods of news delivery evolve (e.g., electronic dissemination of newspapers through telecommunications services), such alternative media would be included in this category. In the case of *freelance* journalists, they may be regarded as working for a news organization if they can demonstrate a solid basis for expecting publication through that organization, even though not actually employed by it. A publication contract would be the clearest proof, but agencies may also look to the past publica-

tion record of a requester in making this determination.

[45 FR 80976, Dec. 8, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 43195, Nov. 10, 1987; 55 FR 2519, Jan. 25, 1990]

### § 1120.3 Existing records.

All existing A&TBCB records are subject to routine destruction according to standard record retention schedules.

## Subpart B—Published Information

### § 1120.5 Information published in the Federal Register.

(a) *General.* In accordance with the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(1), basic information concerning the organization, operations, functions, substantive and procedural rules and regulations, officials, office locations, and allocation of responsibilities for functions and programs of the A&TBCB is published in the FEDERAL REGISTER for the guidance of the public. This information includes—

(1) Description of the A&TBCB's organization and the established places at which, the employees from whom, and the methods whereby the public may obtain information, make submissions or requests, or obtain decisions;

(2) Statements of the general course and method by which the A&TBCB's functions are channeled and determined, including the nature and requirements of all formal and informal procedures available;

(3) Rules of procedure, descriptions of forms available or the places at which forms may be obtained, and instructions as to the scope and contents of all papers, reports, or examinations;

(4) Substantive rules of general applicability adopted as authorized by law, and statements of general policy or interpretations of general applicability formulated and adopted by the A&TBCB, and

(5) Each amendment, revision, or repeal of the foregoing. Indexes to the FEDERAL REGISTER are published in each daily issue and compiled currently on a monthly, quarterly, and annual basis. Copies of the FEDERAL REGISTER and its indexes are available in many libraries and may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office,

## § 1120.6

Washington, DC 20402. No formal request to examine documents in the FEDERAL REGISTER is necessary to inspect them at the place where they are kept. Materials incorporated by reference in the FEDERAL REGISTER are available for inspection in A&TBCB offices.

(b) *Code of Federal Regulations.* Title 36 of the *Code of Federal Regulations*, which is republished and updated annually, contains a compilation of documents published by the A&TBCB in the FEDERAL REGISTER which set forth substantive and procedural rules and regulations of the A&TBCB and statements of general policy or interpretations of general applicability formulated and adopted by the Board. Copies of the Code of Federal Regulations are available in many libraries and may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents. Reference copies maintained in offices of the A&TBCB are available for examination without formal request.

(c) *Effect of nonpublication.* Except to the extent that a person has actual and timely notice of its terms, no person may in any manner be required to resort to, or be adversely affected by, any procedure or matter required to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, but not so published. For the purposes of this paragraph, material that is reasonably available to the class of persons affected by it is considered to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER if it has been incorporated by reference in the FEDERAL REGISTER with the approval of the Director of the Federal Register.

### § 1120.6 Information in A&TBCB publications.

(a) *General.* Copies of information material shall be available upon oral or written request so long as an adequate supply exists. These informational materials include press releases, pamphlets, and other materials ordinarily made available to the public without cost as part of a public information program, and reprints of individual parts of the Code of Federal Regulations or FEDERAL REGISTER relating to programs affecting substantial segments of the general public. Copies of informational publications of the

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

A&TBCB which may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents may be inspected in those offices of the A&TBCB in which reference copies are available. Compliance with the formal procedures provided in this part for obtaining access to A&TBCB records is not necessary for access to the materials described in this paragraph.

(b) *Published indexes.* The informational publications available from the A&TBCB may include indexes to materials published or contained in its records. They will include the current indexes required by the Freedom of Information Act to be maintained and made available for inspecting and copying, except as otherwise provided by published order, as noted below. These indexes provide identifying information for the public as to—

(1) Final opinions and orders made in the adjudication of cases;

(2) Statements of policy and interpretations adopted but not published in the FEDERAL REGISTER; and

(3) Administrative staff manuals and instructions to staff that affect a member of the public.

As promptly as possible after adoption of this part, these indexes will be made available to members of the public. Thereafter, updated indexes or supplements shall be published at least quarterly. However, the Board may determine by order published in the FEDERAL REGISTER that publication of an index is unnecessary and impracticable. In that case the Board shall provide copies of the index on request at a cost not to exceed the direct cost of duplication.

### Subpart C—Records Available for Public Inspection and Copying, Documents Published and Indexed

#### § 1120.11 Records available for inspection.

Except for those categories of materials listed in paragraph (a) of this section, paragraphs (a) (1) through (9) of § 1120.41 the following materials are available for public inspection and copying during normal business hours at the Washington office of the A&TBCB:

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1120.22

(a) Final opinions and orders made in the adjudication of cases;

(b) Statements of policy and interpretations which have been adopted under the authority of the A&TBCB and are not published in the FEDERAL REGISTER;

(c) Administrative staff manuals and instructions to staff that affect a member of the public;

(d) A record of the final votes of each member of the Board in every Board proceeding;

(e) Current indexes providing identifying information for the public as to the materials made available under paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section.

(f) All papers and documents made a part of the official record in administrative proceedings conducted by the A&TBCB in connection with the issuance, amendment, or revocation of rules and regulations or determinations having general applicability or legal effect with respect to members of the public or a class of the public.

(g) After a final order is issued in any adjudicative proceeding conducted by the A&TBCB, all papers and documents made a part of the official record of the proceeding. (The official docket is kept in the office of the administrative law judge hearing the case until a final order is issued.)

### § 1120.12 Indexes to certain records.

Current indexes are normally available to the public in published form as provided in § 1120.11. These indexes, whether or not published, are made available for inspection and copying on request. If published copies of a particular index are at any time not available or if publication of the index has been determined to be unnecessary and impracticable by order published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, copies of the index will be furnished on request. (See § 1120.6(b), *Published indexes.*)

### § 1120.13 Effect of nonavailability.

Any material listed in paragraph (a) of this section that is not indexed as required by § 1120.11(e) and § 1120.12, may not be cited, relied on, or used as precedent by the Board to adversely affect any member of the public unless the person against whom it is cited, re-

lied on, or used has had actual and timely notice of the material.

## Subpart D—Information Available Upon Request

### § 1120.21 Policy on disclosure of records.

(a) It is the policy of the A&TBCB to make information available to the public to the greatest extent possible in keeping with the spirit of the Freedom of Information Act. Therefore, all records of the A&TBCB, except those that the A&TBCB specifically determines must not be disclosed in the national interest, for the protection of private rights, or for the efficient conduct of public business to the extent permitted by the Freedom of Information Act, are declared to be available for public inspection and copying as provided in this part. Each member and employee of the A&TBCB is directed to cooperate to this end and to make records available to the public promptly and to the fullest extent consistent with this policy. A record may not be withheld from the public solely because its release might suggest administrative error or embarrass a member or employee of the A&TBCB.

(b) Subject to § 1120.51, any non-exempt A&TBCB record is available to the public upon request regardless of whether the requestor shows any justification or need for the record.

(c) An A&TBCB office may waive the procedures on this subpart in favor of the requestor, for reasons of the public interest, simplicity, or speed.

(d) If a requested record contains both exempt and nonexempt material, the nonexempt material shall be disclosed, after the exempt material has been deleted in accordance with § 1120.42.

### § 1120.22 Requests to which this subpart applies.

(a) This subpart applies to any written request (other than a request made by another Federal agency) received by the A&TBCB, whether or not the request cites the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, except with respect to records for which a less formal disclosure procedure is provided specifically in this part.

## § 1120.23

(b) Any written request to the A&TBCB for existing records prepared by the A&TBCB for routine public distribution, e.g., pamphlets, copies of speeches, press releases, and educational materials, shall be honored. No individual determination under § 1120.32 is necessary in these cases, since preparation of the materials for routine public distribution itself constitutes that a determination that the records are available to the public.

(c) This subpart applies only to records that exist at the time the request for information is made. (See § 1120.3, *Existing records*.)

### § 1120.23 Where requests for agency records must be filed.

A written request for records must be filed with the A&TBCB Freedom of Information Officer, Suite 501, 1111 18th Street NW., Washington, DC 20036. Requests may be mailed to that address or filed in person at that address during the A&TBCB's normal business hours.

[45 FR 80976, Dec. 8, 1980, as amended at 55 FR 2520, Jan. 25, 1990]

### § 1120.24 Misdirected written requests; oral requests.

(a) The A&TBCB cannot assure that a timely for satisfactory response under this subpart will be given to written requests that are addressed to A&TBCB offices, members, or employees other than the Freedom of Information Officer listed in § 1120.23. Any A&TBCB member or employee who receives a written request for inspection or disclosure of A&TBCB records must promptly forward a copy of the request to the Freedom of Information Officer, by the fastest practicable means, and must, if appropriate, commence action under § 1120.32.

(b) While A&TBCB members and employees will attempt in good faith to comply with oral requests for inspection or disclosure of A&TBCB records, by telephone or otherwise, these requests are not required to be processed in accordance with this subpart.

### § 1120.25 Form of requests.

A request must be in writing, must reasonably describe the records sought in a way that will permit their identi-

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7-1-23 Edition)

fication and location, and must be addressed to the address set forth in § 1120.23, but otherwise need not be in any particular form. Each request under the Freedom of Information Act should be clearly and prominently identified by a legend on the first page, such as "Freedom of Information Act Request." The envelope in which the request is sent should be prominently marked with the letters "FOIA." It is helpful, but not necessary, for the requestor to include his or her phone number and the reason for the request. A request may state the maximum amount of fees which the requester is willing to pay. Under § 1120.33(d), the failure to state willingness to pay fees as high as are anticipated by the A&TBCB will delay running of the time limit and delay processing of the request, if the responsible official anticipates that the fees chargeable may exceed \$250.00.

[45 FR 80976, Dec. 8, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 43195, Nov. 10, 1987]

### § 1120.26 Deficient descriptions.

(a) If the description of the records sought in the request is not sufficient to allow the A&TBCB to identify and locate the requested records, the office taking action under § 1120.32 must notify the requestor (by telephone when practicable) that the request cannot be further processed until additional information is furnished.

(b) The A&TBCB must make every reasonable effort to assist the requestor in formulating his or her request. If a request is described in general terms (e.g., all records having to do with a certain area), the A&TBCB office taking action under § 1120.32 may communicate with the requestor (by telephone when practicable) with a view toward reducing the administrative burden of processing a broad request and minimizing the fee payable by the requestor. Such attempts must not be used as a means to discourage requests, but rather as a means to help identify with more specificity the records actually sought.

**§ 1120.31 A&TBCB receipt of requests; responsibilities of Freedom of Information Officer.**

(a) Upon receipt of a written request, the Freedom of Information Officer must mark the request with the date of receipt and must attach to the request a control slip indicating the Request Identification Number and other pertinent administrative information. The Freedom of Information Officer must immediately forward the request and control slip to the A&TBCB office which the FOIA Officer believes to be responsible for maintaining the records requested. The Freedom of Information Officer must retain a full copy of the request and control slip and must monitor the handling of the request to ensure a timely response.

(b) The Freedom of Information Officer must maintain a file concerning each request received. The file must contain a copy of the request, initial and appeal determinations, and other pertinent correspondence and records.

(c) The Freedom of Information Officer must collect and maintain the information necessary to compile the reports required by 5 U.S.C. 552(d).

**§ 1120.32 A&TBCB action on requests.**

(a) The FOIA Officer is delegated the authority to issue initial determinations concerning records which he or she believes are in the custody of a Board member, an employee of a member's agency, or an employee of a public member. When the FOIA Officer receives such a request, he or she shall forward it to the member, employee of a member agency, or employee of a public member whom the FOIA Officer believes to have custody of the records, requesting the records. The person to whom the request is forwarded shall, within three days of receipt of the FOIA Officer's request, either furnish the records requested to the FOIA Officer or inform the FOIA Officer of the time when they will be furnished. The FOIA Officer shall then determine whether or not to disclose the documents. For purposes of such requests and their processing under this subpart, the FOIA Officer is considered the office handling the requests.

(b) Heads of staff offices are delegated the authority to issue initial de-

terminations, other records which are in their respective custody.

(c) Whenever an A&TBCB office receives a request forwarded by the FOIA Officer, the office should:

(1) Take action under § 1120.26, if required, to obtain a better description of the records requested;

(2) Locate the records as promptly as possible, or determine that:

(i) The records are not known to exist; or

(ii) They are located at another A&TBCB office; or

(iii) They are located at another Federal agency and not possessed by the A&TBCB.

(3) When appropriate, take action under § 1120.53(b) to obtain payment or assurance of payment;

(4) Determine which of the requested records legally must be withheld, and why (see § 1120.42(b), *Release of exempt documents*);

(5) Of the requested records which are exempt from mandatory disclosure but which legally may be disclosed (see § 1120.42(a)), determine which records will be withheld, and why;

(6) Issue an initial determination within the allowed period (see § 1120.31), specifying (individually or by category) which records will be disclosed and which will be withheld, and signed by a person authorized to issue the determination under paragraph (a) of this section (see § 1120.33, *Initial denials of requests*);

(7) Furnish the Freedom of Information Officer a copy of the determination; and

(8) If the determination denies a request, furnish the Freedom of Information Officer the name of the A&TBCB member(s) or employee(s) having custody of the records and maintain the records in a manner permitting their prompt forwarding to the General Counsel upon request if an appeal from the initial denial is filed. (See also § 1120.34.)

(d) If it appears that some or all of the requested records are not in the possession of the A&TBCB office which has been assigned responsibility for responding to the request but may be in the possession of some A&TBCB office, the responding office must so inform

### § 1120.33

### 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

the Freedom of Information officer immediately.

(e) An initial determination to disclose documents must provide the requested documents or provide the opportunity to inspect and/or obtain copies of the documents.

#### **§ 1120.33 Time allowed for initial action on requests.**

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this section, as soon as possible and not later than the tenth working day after the day on which the Freedom of Information Officer receives a request for records, the A&TBCB office responsible for responding to the request must issue a written determination to the requestor stating which of the requested records, will, and which will not, be released and the reason for any denial of a request.

(b) The period of 10 working days is measured from the date the request is first received and logged in by the Freedom of Information Officer.

(c) There is excluded from the period of 10 working days (or any extension) any time which elapses between the date that a requestor is notified by the A&TBCB under § 1120.26 that his or her request does not reasonably identify the records sought, and the date that the requestor furnishes a reasonable identification.

(d) There is excluded from the period of 10 working days (or any extension) any time which elapses between the date that a requestor is notified by an A&TBCB office under § 1120.53(b) that prepayment of fees is required, and the date that the requestor pays (or makes suitable arrangements to pay) the charges.

(e) The A&TBCB office taking action under § 1120.31 may extend the basic 10-day period established under paragraph (a) of this section by a period not to exceed 10 additional working days if—

(1) The office notifies the Freedom of Information Officer;

(2) The office notifies the requestor in writing within the basic 10-day period stating the reasons for the extension and the date by which the office expects to be able to issue a determination;

(3) The extension is reasonably necessary to properly process the particular request; and

(4) One or more of the following unusual circumstances require the extension:

(i) There is a need to search for and collect the requested records from field facilities or other establishments that are separate from the office processing the request;

(ii) There is a need to search for, collect, and/or appropriately examine a voluminous amount of separate and distinct records which are demanded in a single request; or

(iii) There is need for consultation with another agency having a substantial interest in the determination of the request or among two or more components of the A&TBCB. The office must conduct the consultation with all practicable speed.

(f) Should the A&TBCB fail to issue a determination within the 10-day period or any authorized extension as to an initial request, or during the period for consideration of an appeal, the requestor shall be deemed to have exhausted his or her administrative remedies with respect to such.

In the latter situation, the requestor may commence an action in an appropriate Federal district court to obtain the records.

#### **§ 1120.34 Initial denials of requests.**

(a) An initial denial of a request may be issued only for the following reasons:

(1) The record is not under the A&TBCB's control;

(2) The record has been published in the FEDERAL REGISTER or is otherwise published and available for sale;

(3) A statutory provision, provision of this part, or court order requires that the information not be disclosed;

(4) The record is exempt from mandatory disclosure under 5 U.S.C. 552(b) and the responding office has decided not to disclose it under §§ 1120.41 and 1120.42;

(5) The record is believed to be in the A&TBCB's custody but has not yet been located. (See paragraph (f) of this section.)

(b) Each initial denial of a request shall—

- (1) Be written, signed, and dated;
- (2) Contain a reference to the Request Identification Number;
- (3) Identify the records that are being withheld (individually or, if the denial covers a large number of similar records, by described category); and
- (4) State the basis for denial of each record of category of records or any reasonably segregable portion(s) thereof of being withheld.

(c) If the issuance of the determination to deny a request was directed by some A&TBCB officer or employee other than the person signing the determination letter, that other person's identity and position must be stated in the determination letter.

(d) Each initial determination which denies, in whole or in part, a request for one or more existing, located A&TBCB records must state that the requestor may appeal the initial denial by sending a written appeal to the address shown in §1120.23 within 30 days of receipt of the determination. (See §1120.36.)

(e) A determination is deemed issued on the date the determination letter is placed in A&TBCB mailing channels for first class mailing to the requestor, delivered to the U.S. Postal Service for mailing, or personally delivered to the requestor, whichever date first occurs.

(f) When a request must be denied because the record has not yet been located (although it is believed to be in the A&TBCB's possession), the A&TBCB office responsible for maintaining the record must continue to search diligently until it is located or it appears that the record does not exist or is not in the A&TBCB's possession, and must periodically inform the requestor of the office's progress.

**§ 1120.36 Appeals from initial denials.**

(a) Any person whose request has been denied in whole or in part by an initial determination may appeal that denial by addressing a written appeal to the address shown in §1120.23.

(b) Any appeal must be mailed or filed in person at the address shown in §1120.23—

- (1) In the case of a denial of an entire request, generally not later than 30 calendar days after the date the requestor

received the initial determination on the request; or

- (2) In the case of a partial denial, generally not later than 30 calendar days after the requestor receives all records being made available pursuant to the initial determination.

An appeal which does not meet the requirements of this paragraph may be treated either as a timely appeal or as a new request, at the option of the Freedom of Information Officer.

(c) The appeal letter must contain—

- (1) A reference to the Request Identification Number (RIN);
- (2) The date of the initial determination;
- (3) The name and address of the person who issued the initial denial;
- (4) A statement of which of the records to which access was denied are the subjects of the appeal; and
- (5) If the applicant wishes, such facts and legal or other authorities as he or she considers appropriate.

**§ 1120.37 A&TBCB action on appeals.**

(a) The General Counsel must make one of the following legal determinations in connection with every appeal from the initial denial of a request for an existing, located record:

- (1) The record must be disclosed;
- (2) The record must not be disclosed because a statute or a provision of this part so requires; or
- (3) The record is exempt from mandatory disclosure but legally may be disclosed as a matter of agency discretion.

(b) Whenever the General Counsel has determined under paragraph (a)(3) of this section that a record is exempt from mandatory disclosure but legally may be disclosed, the matter must be referred to the Executive Director. If the Executive Director determines that an important purpose would be served by withholding the record, the General Counsel shall issue a determination denying the appeal. If the Executive Director determines that no important purpose would be served by withholding the record, the General Counsel must disclose the record.

(c) The General Counsel may delegate his or her authority under this section to any other attorney employed by the A&TBCB in connection

## § 1120.38

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

with any category of appeals or any individual appeals.

(d) A determination denying an appeal from an initial denial must—

- (1) Be in writing;
- (2) State which of the exemptions in 5 U.S.C. 552(b) apply to each requested existing record;
- (3) State the reason(s) for denial of the appeal;
- (4) State the name and position of each A&TBCB officer or employee who directed that the appeal be denied; and
- (5) State that the person whose request was denied may obtain de novo judicial review of the denial by complaint filed with the district court of the United States in the district in which the complainant resides, or in which the agency records are situated, or in the District of Columbia, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(4).

### § 1120.38 Time allowed for action on appeals.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this section, as soon as possible and not later than the twentieth working day after the day on which the Freedom of Information Officer receives an appeal from an initial denial of a request for records, the General Counsel shall issue a written determination stating which of the requested records (as to which appeal was made) will and which will not be disclosed.

(b) The period of 20 working days shall be measured from the date an appeal is first received by the Freedom of Information Officer.

(c) The General Counsel may extend the basic 20-day period established under paragraph (a) of this section by a period not to exceed 10 additional working days if—

- (1) He or she notifies the Freedom of Information Officer;
- (2) He or she notifies the requestor in writing within the basic 20-day period stating the reasons for the extension and the date by which he or she expects to be able to issue a determination;
- (3) The extension is reasonably necessary to properly process the particular request; and
- (4) One or more of the following unusual circumstances require the extension:

(i) There is a need to search for and collect the records from field facilities or other establishments that are separated from the office processing the appeal;

(ii) There is a need to search for, collect, and/or appropriately examine a voluminous amount of separate and distinct records which are demanded in a single request; or

(iii) There is a need for consultation with another agency or among two or more components of the A&TBCB. The General Counsel must conduct the consultation with all practicable speed.

(d) No extension of the 20-day period may be issued under paragraph (c) of this section which would cause the total of all such extensions and of any extensions issued under § 1120.33(c) to exceed 10 working days.

### § 1120.41 Exempt documents.

(a) Generally, 5 U.S.C. 552(b) establishes nine exclusive categories of matters which are exempt from the mandatory disclosure requirements of 5 U.S.C. 552(a). No request under 5 U.S.C. 552 for an existing, located, unpublished record in the A&TBCB's control may be denied by any A&TBCB office or employee unless the record contains (or its disclosure would reveal) matters that are—

(1) Specifically authorized under criteria established by an Executive order to be kept secret in the interest of national defense or foreign policy and which are in fact properly classified pursuant to the Executive order;

(2) Related solely to the internal personnel rules and practices of an agency;

(3) Specifically exempted from disclosure by statute;

(4) Trade secrets and commercial or financial information obtained from a person and privileged or confidential;

(5) Interagency or intra-agency memorandums or letters which would not be available by law to a party other than an agency in litigation with the agency;

(6) Personnel and medical files and similar files the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy;

(7) Investigatory records compiled for law enforcement purposes, but only to

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1120.51

the extent that the production of such records would—

(i) Interfere with enforcement proceedings;

(ii) Deprive a person of a right to a fair trial or an impartial adjudication;

(iii) Constitute an unwarranted invasion of personal privacy;

(iv) Disclose the identity of a confidential source and, in the case of a record compiled by a criminal law enforcement authority in the course of a criminal investigation or by an agency conducting a lawful national security intelligence investigation, confidential information furnished only by the confidential source;

(v) Disclose investigative techniques and procedures; or

(vi) Endanger the life or physical safety of law enforcement personnel;

(8) Contained in or related to examination, operating, or condition reports prepared by, on behalf of, or for the use of an agency responsible for the regulation or supervision of financial institutions; or

(9) Geological and geophysical information and data, including maps, concerning wells.

(b) The fact that the applicability of an exemption permits the withholding of a requested record (or portion of a record) does not necessarily mean that the record must or should be withheld. (See § 1120.42 *Release of exempt documents*.)

### § 1120.42 Release of exempt documents.

(a) An A&TBCB office may, in its discretion, release requested records despite the applicability of one or more of the exemptions listed in § 1120.41 (a)(2), (5), or (7). Disclosure of such records is encouraged if no important purpose would be served by withholding the records.

(b) Though the policy of the A&TBCB is to honor all requests, as indicated in § 1120.21(a), there are circumstances when the A&TBCB will not disclose a record if one or more of the FOIA exemptions applies to the record. The exemptions usually in such circumstances are exemptions (2), (3), (4), (6), (8) and (9). In these cases, where the A&TBCB has withheld a requested record, or portions thereof, the

A&TBCB will disclose the exempted record when ordered to do so by a Federal court or in exceptional circumstances under appropriate restrictions with the approval of the Office of General Counsel.

## Subpart E—Copies of Records and Fees for Services

### § 1120.51 Charges for services, generally.

(a) It shall be the policy of the ATBCB to comply with requests for documents made under the FOIA using the most efficient and least costly methods available. Requesters will be charged fees, in accordance with the administrative provisions and fee schedule set forth below, for searching for, reviewing (in the case of commercial use requesters only), and duplicating requested records.

(b) *Categories of requesters.* For the purpose of standard FOIA fee assessment, the four categories of requesters are: Commercial use requesters; educational and non-commercial scientific institution requesters; requesters who are representatives of the news media; and, all other requesters (see § 1120.2 (1) through (o), Definitions).

(c) *Levels of fees.* Levels of fees prescribed for each category of requester are as follows:

(1) *Commercial Use Requesters*—When the ATBCB receives a request for documents which appears to be a request for commercial use, the Board may assess charges in accordance with the fee schedule set forth below, which recover the full direct costs of searching for, reviewing for release, and duplicating the records sought. Costs for time spent reviewing records to determine whether they are exempt from mandatory disclosure applies to the initial review only. No fees will be assessed for reviewing records, at the administrative appeal level, of the exemptions already applied.

(2) *Educational and Non-Commercial Scientific Institution Requesters*—The ATBCB shall provide documents to requesters in this category for the cost of reproduction alone, in accordance with the fee schedule set forth below, excluding charges for the first 100 pages of reproduced documents.

(i) To be eligible for inclusion in this category, requesters must demonstrate the request is being made under the auspices of a qualifying institution and that the records are not sought for a commercial use, but are sought in furtherance of scholarly (if the request is from an educational institution) or scientific (if the request is from a non-commercial scientific institution) research.

(ii) Requesters eligible for free search must reasonably describe the records sought.

(3) Requesters Who Are Representatives of the News Media—The ATBCB shall provide documents to requesters in this category for the cost of reproduction alone, in accordance with the fee schedule set forth below, excluding charges for the first 100 pages of reproduced documents.

(4) All Other Requestors—The ATBCB shall charge requestors who do not fit into any of the categories described above, fees which recover the full direct cost of searching for and reproducing records that are responsive to the request, except that the first two hours of search time and the first 100 pages of reproduction shall be furnished without charge.

(d) Schedule of FOIA fees.

(1) Record search (ATBCB employees)—\$14.00 per hour

(2) Document review (ATBCB employees)—\$20.00 per hour

(3) Duplication of documents (paper copy of paper original)—\$.20 per page

(e) No charge shall be made:

(1) If the costs of routine collection and processing of the fee are likely to equal or exceed the amount of the fee;

(2) For any request made by an individual or group of individuals falling into the categories listed at paragraph (b) of this section, and described in paragraph (c) of this section, (excepting commercial use requests) the first two hours of search time and first 100 pages of duplication;

(3) For the cost of preparing or reviewing letters of response to a request or appeal;

(4) For responding to a request for one copy of the official personnel record of the requestor;

(5) For furnishing records requested by either House of Congress, or by duly

authorized committee or subcommittee or Congress, unless the records are requested for the benefit of an individual Member of Congress or for a constituent;

(6) For furnishing records requested by and for the official use of other Federal agencies; or

(7) For furnishing records needed by an A&TBCB contractor or grantee to perform the work required by the A&TBCB contract or grant.

(f) Requestors may be charged for unsuccessful or unproductive searches or for searches when records located are determined to be exempt from disclosure.

(g) Where the ATBCB reasonably believes that a requestor or group of requestors is attempting to break a request down into a series of requests for the purpose of evading the assessment of fees, the ATBCB shall aggregate any such requests and charge accordingly.

[55 FR 2520, Jan. 25, 1990]

#### § 1120.52 Computerized records.

(a) Information available in whole or in part in computerized form which is disclosable under the Freedom of Information Act is available to the public as follows:

(1) When there is an existing printout from the computer which permits copying the printout, the material will be made available at the per page rate stated in §1120.51(a) for each 8½ by 11 inch page.

(2) When there is not an existing printout of information disclosable under the Freedom of Information Act, a printout shall be made if the applicant pays the cost to the A&TBCB as stated in paragraph (a)(3) of this section.

(3) Obtaining information from computerized records frequently involves a minimum computer time cost of approximately \$100 per request. Multiple requests involving the same subject may cost less per request. Services of personnel in the nature of a search shall be charged for at rates prescribed in §1120.51(a). A charge shall be made for the computer time involved based upon the prevailing level of costs to Government organizations and upon the particular types of computer and associated equipment and the amounts

of time on such equipment that are utilized. A charge shall also be made for any substantial amounts of special supplies or materials used to contain, present, or make available the output of computers based upon the prevailing levels of costs to Government organizations and upon the type and amount of the supplies and materials that are used.

(b) Information in the Board's computerized records which could be produced only by additional programming of the computer, thus producing information not previously in being, is not required to be furnished under the Freedom of Information Act. In view of the usually heavy workloads of the computers used by the Board, such a service cannot ordinarily be offered to the public.

#### § 1120.53 Payment of fees.

(a) *Method of payment.* All fee payments shall be in the form of a check or money order payable to the order of the "U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board" and shall be sent (accompanied by a reference to the pertinent Request Identification Number(s)) to the address in § 1120.23.

(b) *Charging interest.* The ATBCB may charge interest to those requestors failing to pay fees assessed in accordance with the procedures described in § 1120.51. Interest charges, computed at the rate prescribed in section 3717 of title 31 U.S.C.A., will be assessed on the full amount billed starting on the 31st day following the day on which the bill was sent.

(c) *Advance payment or assurance of payment.* (1) When an ATBCB office determines or estimates that the allowable charges a requestor may be required to pay are likely to exceed \$250.00, the ATBCB may require the requestor to make an advance payment or arrangements to pay the entire fee before continuing to process the request. The ATBCB shall promptly inform the requestor (by telephone, if practicable) of the need to make an advance payment or arrangements to pay the fee. That office need not search for, review, duplicate, or disclose records in response to any request by that requestor until he or she pays, or makes

acceptable arrangements to pay, the total amount of fees due (or estimated to become due) under this subpart.

(2) Where a requestor has previously failed to pay a fee charged in a timely fashion, the ATBCB may require the requestor to pay the full amount owed, plus any applicable interest, as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, and to make an advance payment of the full amount of the estimated fee before any new or pending requests will be processed from that requestor.

(3) In those instances described in paragraphs (c)(1) and (2) of this section, the administrative time limits prescribed in § 1120.33(d) will begin only after the ATBCB has received all fee payments due or acceptable arrangements have been made to pay all fee payments due.

(d) *Effect of the Debt Collection Act of 1982 (Pub. L. 97-365).* Requestors are advised that the ATBCB shall use the authorities of the Debt Collection Act of 1982, including disclosure to consumer reporting agencies and use of collection agencies, where appropriate, to encourage repayment of debts arising from freedom of information act requests.

(e) *Waiver or reduction of fees.* (1) Records responsive to a request under 5 U.S.C. 552 shall be furnished without charge or at a charge reduced below that established under paragraph (d) of § 1120.51 where the Freedom of Information Officer determines, based upon information provided by a requestor in support of a fee waiver request or otherwise made known to the Freedom of Information Officer, that disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government and is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requestor. Requests for a waiver or reduction of fees shall be considered on a case-by-case basis.

(2) In order to determine whether the first fee waiver requirement is met—i.e., that disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government—Freedom of Information Officer

shall consider the following four factors in sequence:

(i) The subject of the request: Whether the subject of the requested records concerns “the operations or activities of the government.” The subject matter of the requested records, in the context of the request, must specifically concern identifiable operations or activities of the federal government—with a connection that is direct and clear, not remote or attenuated. Furthermore, the records must be sought for their informative value with respect to those government operations or activities; a request for access to records for their intrinsic informational content alone will not satisfy this threshold consideration.

(ii) The informative value of the information to be disclosed: Whether the disclosure is “likely to contribute” to an understanding of government operations or activities. The disclosable portions of the requested records must be meaningfully informative on specific government operations or activities in order to hold potential for contributing to increase public understanding of those operations and activities. The disclosure of information that already is in the public domain, in either a duplicative or a substantially identical form, would not be likely to contribute to such understanding, as nothing new would be added to the public record.

(iii) The contribution to an understanding of the subject by the public likely to result from disclosure: Whether disclosure of the requested information will contribute to “public understanding.” The disclosure must contribute to the understanding of the public at large, as opposed to the individual understanding of the requestor or a narrow segment of interested persons. A requestor’s identity and qualifications—e.g., expertise in the subject area and ability and intention to effectively convey information to the general public—should be considered. It reasonably may be presumed that a representative of the news media (as defined in §1120.2(o)) who has access to the means of public dissemination readily will be able to satisfy this consideration. Requests from libraries or other record repositories (or requestors

who intend merely to disseminate information to such institutions) shall be analyzed, like those of other requestors to identify a particular person who represents that he actually will use the requested information in scholarly or other analytic work and then disseminate it to the general public.

(iv) The significance of the contribution to public understanding: Whether the disclosure is likely to contribute “significantly” to public understanding of government operations or activities. The public’s understanding of the subject matter in question, as compared to the level of public understanding existing prior to the disclosure, must be likely to be enhanced by the disclosure to a significant extent. Freedom of Information Officer shall not make separate value judgments as to whether information, even though it in fact would contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government, is “important” enough to be made public.

(3) In order to determine whether the second fee waiver requirement is met—i.e., that disclosure of the requested information is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requestor—the Freedom of Information Officer shall consider the following two factors in sequence:

(i) The existence and magnitude of a commercial interest: Whether the requestor has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the requested disclosure. The Freedom of Information Officer shall consider all commercial interests of the requester (with reference to the definition of “commercial use” in §1120.2(1)) or any person on whose behalf the requestor may be acting, but shall consider only those interests which would be furthered by the requested disclosure. In assessing the magnitude of identified commercial interests, consideration shall be given to the role that such FOIA-disclosed information plays with respect to those commercial interests, as well as to the extent to which FOIA disclosures serve those interests overall. Requestors shall be given a reasonable opportunity in the administrative process to provide information bearing upon this consideration.

(ii) The primary interest in disclosure: Whether the magnitude of the identified commercial interest of the requestor is sufficiently large, in comparison with the public interest in disclosure, that disclosure is “primarily in the commercial interest of the requestor.” A fee waiver or reduction is warranted only where, once the “public interest” standard set out in paragraph (e)(2) of this section is satisfied, that public interest can fairly be regarded as greater in magnitude than that of the requestor’s commercial interest in disclosure. The Freedom of Information Officer shall ordinarily presume that where a news media requestor has satisfied the “public interest” standard, that will be the interest primarily served by disclosure to that requestor. Disclosure to data brokers or others who compile and market government information for direct economic return shall not be presumed to primarily serve “public interest.”

(4) Where only a portion of the requested records satisfies both of the requirements for a waiver or reduction of fees under this paragraph, a waiver or reduction shall be granted only as to that portion.

(5) Requests for the waiver or reduction of fees shall address each of the factors listed in paragraphs (e) (2) and (3) of this section, as they apply to each record request. One hundred pages of reproduction shall be furnished without charge.

(6) A request for reduction or waiver of fees shall be addressed to the Freedom of Information Officer at the address shown in § 1120.23. The ATBCB office which is responding to the request for records shall initially determine whether the fee shall be reduced or waived and shall so inform the requestor. The initial determination may be appealed by letter addressed to the address shown in § 1120.23. The General Counsel or his or her designee shall decide such appeals.

[45 FR 80976, Dec. 8, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 43196, Nov. 10, 1987; 55 FR 2521, Jan. 25, 1990]

## PART 1121—PRIVACY ACT IMPLEMENTATION

### Sec.

1121.1 Purpose and scope.

1121.2 Definitions.

1121.3 Procedures for requests pertaining to individuals’ records in a records system.

1121.4 Times, places, and requirements for the identification of the individual making a request.

1121.5 Access to requested information to the individual.

1121.6 Request for correction or amendment to the record.

1121.7 Agency review of request for correction or amendment of the record.

1121.8 Appeal of an initial adverse agency determination on correction or amendment of the record.

1121.9 Notification of dispute.

1121.10 Disclosure of record to a person other than the individual to whom the record pertains.

1121.11 Accounting of disclosures.

1121.12 Fees.

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 552a; Pub. L. 93–579.

SOURCE: 50 FR 3905, Jan. 29, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

### § 1121.1 Purpose and scope.

The purposes of these regulations are to:

(a) Establish a procedure by which an individual can determine if the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, hereafter known as the Board or ATBCB, maintains a system of records which includes a record pertaining to the individual; and

(b) Establish a procedure by which an individual can gain access to a record pertaining to him or her for the purpose of review, amendment and/or correction.

### § 1121.2 Definitions.

For the purpose of these regulations—

(a) The term *individual* means a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence.

(b) The term *maintain* includes maintain, collect, use or disseminate.

(c) The term *record* means any item, collection or grouping of information about an individual that is maintained by the Board, including, but not limited to, his or her employment history, payroll information, and financial

### § 1121.3

transactions and that contains his or her name, or the identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual, such as social security number.

(d) The term *system of records* means a group of any records under control of the Board from which information is retrieved by the name of the individual or by some identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual.

(e) The term *routine use* means, with respect to the disclosure of a record, the use of such record for a purpose which is compatible with the purpose for which it was collected.

(f) The term *authorized representative* means a person who acts on an *individual's* behalf for purposes of these regulations, pursuant to written, signed instructions from the individual.

### § 1121.3 Procedures for requests pertaining to individuals' records in a records system.

An individual or authorized representative shall submit a written request to the Administrative Officer to determine if a system of records named by the individual contains a record pertaining to the individual. The individual or authorized representative shall submit a written request to the Executive Director of the ATBCB which states the individual's desire to review his or her record.

### § 1121.4 Times, places, and requirements for the identification of the individual making a request.

An individual or authorized representative making a request to the Administrative Officer of the ATBCB pursuant to § 1121.3 shall present the request at the ATBCB offices, 330 C Street, SW., Room 1010, Washington, DC 20202, on any business day between the hours of 9 a.m. and 5:30 p.m. The individual or authorized representative submitting the request should present himself or herself at the ATBCB's offices with a form of identification which will permit the ATBCB to verify that the individual is the same individual as contained in the record requested. An authorized representative shall present a written document au-

### 36 CFR Ch. XI (7-1-23 Edition)

thorizing access. The document must be signed by the individual.

### § 1121.5 Access to requested information to the individual.

Upon verification of identity the Board shall disclose to the individual or authorized representative the information contained in the record which pertains to that individual. Nothing in this section shall allow an individual access to any information compiled in reasonable anticipation of a civil action or proceeding.

### § 1121.6 Request for correction or amendment to the record.

The individual or authorized representative should submit a request to the Administrative Officer which states the individual's desire to correct or to amend his or her record. This request is to be made in accord with provisions of § 1121.4.

### § 1121.7 Agency review of request for correction or amendment of the record.

Within ten working days of the receipt of the request to correct or to amend the record, the Administrative Officer will acknowledge in writing such receipt and promptly either—

(a) Make any correction or amendment of any portion thereof which the individual believes is not accurate, relevant, timely, or complete; or

(b) Inform the individual or authorized representative of his or her refusal to correct or to amend the record in accordance with the request, the reason for the refusal and the procedures established by the Board for the individual to request a review of that refusal.

### § 1121.8 Appeal of an initial adverse agency determination on correction or amendment of the record.

An individual who disagrees with the refusal of the Administrative Officer to correct or to amend his or her record may submit a request for a review of such refusal to the Executive Director, ATBCB, 330 C Street, SW., Room 1010, Washington, DC 20202. The Executive Director will, not later than thirty (30) working days from the date on which the individual requests such review,

complete such review and make final determination, unless, for good cause shown, the Executive Director extends such thirty-day period. If, after his or her review, the Executive Director also refuses to correct or to amend the record in accordance with the request, the Board shall permit the individual or authorized representative to file with the Executive Director a concise statement setting forth the reasons for his or her disagreement with the refusal of the Executive Director and shall notify the individual or authorized representative that he or she may seek judicial review of the Executive Director's determination under 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(1)(A).

**§ 1121.9 Notification of dispute.**

In any disclosure pursuant to §1121.10 containing information about which the individual has previously filed a statement of disagreement under §1121.8, the Board shall clearly note any portion of the record which is disputed and provide copies of the statement and, if the Executive Director deems it appropriate, copies of a concise statement of the reasons of the Executive Director for not making the amendments requested.

**§ 1121.10 Disclosure of record to a person other than the individual to whom the record pertains.**

The Board will not disclose a record to any individual or agency other than the individual to whom the record pertains, except to an authorized representative, unless the disclosure has been listed as a "routine use" in the Board's notices of its systems of records, or falls within one of the special disclosure situations listed in the Privacy Act of 1974 (5 U.S.C. 552a(b)).

**§ 1121.11 Accounting of disclosures.**

(a) The Board shall, except for disclosure made under sections (b)(1) and (b)(2) of the Privacy Act of 1974 (5 U.S.C. 552a) keep an accurate accounting of—

(1) The date, nature and purpose of each disclosure of a record to any person or another agency made pursuant to §1121.10; and

(2) The name and address of the person or agency to whom the disclosure is made.

(b) This accounting shall be retained for at least five years or the life of the record, whichever is longer, after the disclosure for which the accounting is made;

(c) The Board shall make this accounting available to the individual named in the record at his or her request, except for disclosures made under section (b)(7) of the Privacy Act of 1974 (5 U.S.C. 552a).

(d) The Board shall inform any person or other agency to whom disclosure has been made pursuant to §1121.10 about any correction or notation of dispute made by the Board.

**§ 1121.12 Fees.**

If an individual or authorized representative requests copies of his or her record, he or she shall be charged ten cents per page, excluding the cost of any search for review of the record, in advance of receipt of the pages.

**PART 1150—PRACTICE AND PROCEDURES FOR COMPLIANCE HEARINGS**

**Subpart A—General Information**

Sec.

- 1150.1 Purpose.
- 1150.2 Applicability: Buildings and facilities subject to guidelines and standards.
- 1150.3 Policy of amicable resolution.
- 1150.4 Definitions.
- 1150.5 Scope and interpretation of rules.
- 1150.6 Suspension of rules.

**Subpart B—Parties, Complainants, Participants**

- 1150.11 Parties.
- 1150.12 Complainants.
- 1150.13 Participation on petition.
- 1150.14 Appearance.

**Subpart C—Form, Execution, Service and Filing of Documents for Proceedings on Citations**

- 1150.21 Form of documents to be filed.
- 1150.22 Signature of documents.
- 1150.23 Filing and service.
- 1150.24 [Reserved]
- 1150.25 Date of service.
- 1150.26 Certificate of service.

## § 1150.1

### Subpart D—Time

- 1150.31 Computation.
- 1150.32 Extension of time or postponement.

### Subpart E—Proceedings Prior to Hearings; Pleadings and Motions

- 1150.41 Informal resolution.
- 1150.42 Citations.
- 1150.43 Answers.
- 1150.44 Amendments.
- 1150.45 Request for hearing.
- 1150.46 Motions.
- 1150.47 Disposition of motions and petitions.
- 1150.48 PER: Citation, answer, amendment.

### Subpart F—Responsibilities and Duties of Judge

- 1150.51 Who presides.
- 1150.52 Authority of judge.
- 1150.53 Disqualification of judge.

### Subpart G—Prehearing Conferences and Discovery

- 1150.61 Prehearing conference.
- 1150.62 Exhibits.
- 1150.63 Discovery.

### Subpart H—Hearing Procedures

- 1150.71 Briefs.
- 1150.72 Purpose of hearing.
- 1150.73 Testimony.
- 1150.74 Exclusion of evidence.
- 1150.75 Objections.
- 1150.76 Exceptions.
- 1150.77 Official notice.
- 1150.78 Public documents.
- 1150.79 Offer of proof.
- 1150.80 Affidavits.
- 1150.81 Consolidated or joint hearing.
- 1150.82 PER proceedings.

### Subpart I—The Record

- 1150.91 Record for decision.
- 1150.92 Official transcript.

### Subpart J—Posthearing Procedures; Decisions

- 1150.101 Posthearing briefs; proposed findings.
- 1150.102 Decision.
- 1150.103 PER: Posthearing briefs, decision.
- 1150.104 Judicial review.
- 1150.105 Court enforcement.

### Subpart K—Miscellaneous Provisions

- 1150.111 Ex parte communications.
- 1150.112 Post-order proceedings.
- 1150.113 Amicable resolution.
- 1150.114 Effect of partial invalidity.

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 792, as amended.

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

SOURCE: 45 FR 78474, Nov. 25, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

### Subpart A—General Information

#### § 1150.1 Purpose.

*Purpose.* The purpose of the regulations in this part is to implement section 502(b)(1) of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, Pub. L. 93–112, 29 U.S.C. 792, as amended by the Rehabilitation, Comprehensive Services, and Developmental Disabilities Amendments of 1978, Pub. L. 95–602, section 118, 92 Stat. 2979, by establishing rules of procedure for public hearings which ensure compliance with standards issued under the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, Pub. L. 90–480, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 4151 *et seq.* (including standards of the U.S. Postal Service).

#### § 1150.2 Applicability: Buildings and facilities subject to guidelines and standards.

(a) *Definitions.* As used in this section, the term:

*Constructed or altered on behalf of the United States* means acquired by the United States through lease-purchase arrangement, constructed or altered for purchase by the United States, or constructed or altered for the use of the United States.

*Primarily for use by able-bodied military personnel* means expected to be occupied, used, or visited principally by military service personnel. Examples of buildings so intended are barracks, officers' quarters, and closed messes.

*Privately owned residential structure* means a single or multi-family dwelling not owned by a unit or subunit of Federal, state, or local government.

(b) *Buildings and facilities covered.* Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, the standards issued under the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, Pub. L. 90–480, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 4151 *et seq.* (including standards of the United States Postal Service) apply to any building or facility—

(1) The intended use for which either—

(i) Will require that such building or facility be accessible to the public, or

(ii) May result in employment or residence therein of physically handicapped persons; and

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1150.4

(2) Which is—

(i) To be constructed or altered by or on behalf of the United States;

(ii) To be leased in whole or in part by the United States—

(A) After August 12, 1968, and before January 1, 1977, after construction or alteration in accordance with plans and specifications of the United States; or

(B) On or after January 1, 1977, including any renewal of a lease entered into before January 1, 1977, which renewal is on or after such date;

(iii) To be financed in whole or in part by a grant or loan made by the United States after August 12, 1968, if the building or facility may be subject to standards for design, construction, or alteration issued under the law authorizing the grant or loan; or

(iv) To be constructed under the authority of the National Capital Transportation Act of 1960, the National Capital Transportation Act of 1965, or title III of the Washington Metropolitan Area Transit Regulation Compact.

(c) *Buildings and facilities not covered.* The standards do not apply to—

(1) Any privately owned residential structure, unless it is leased by the Federal government on or after January 1, 1977, for subsidized housing programs; or

(2) Any building or facility on a military installation designed and constructed primarily for use by military personnel.

(d) Any covered building or facility, as provided in this section, which is designed, constructed, or altered after the effective date of a standard issued which is applicable to the building or facility, shall be designed, constructed, altered, or leased in accordance with the standard. For purposes of this section, any design, construction, alteration or lease for which bids or offers are received before the effective date of an applicable standard, in response to an invitation for bids or request for proposals, is not subject to that standard.

### § 1150.3 Policy of amicable resolution.

The policy of the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board is to maximize the accessibility and usability of buildings, and facilities

through amicable means. To this end, the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board encourages voluntary and informal resolution of all complaints.

### § 1150.4 Definitions.

*A&TBCB* means the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board.

*Agency* means Federal department, agency, or instrumentality as defined in sections 551(1) and 701(b)(1) of title 5 U.S.C., or an agency official authorized to represent the agency. It includes any executive department or independent establishment in the Executive Branch of the government, including wholly owned government corporations, and any establishment in the legislative or judicial branch of the government, except the Senate, the House of Representatives, and the Architect of the Capitol and any activities under his direction.

*Alteration* means any change in a building or facility or its permanent fixtures or equipment. It includes, but is not limited to, remodeling, renovation, rehabilitation, reconstruction, changes or rearrangement in structural parts, and extraordinary repairs. It does not include normal maintenance, reroofing, interior decoration, or changes to mechanical systems.

*Architectural Barriers Act* means the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, Pub. L. 90-480, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 4151 *et seq.*

*Building or facility* means all or any portion of buildings, structures, equipment, roads, walks, parking lots, parks, sites, or other real property or interest in such property.

*Chair* means the Chair of the A&TBCB.

*Complaint* means any written notice of an alleged violation, whether from an individual or organization, or other written information reasonably indicating to the Executive Director a violation of the standard.

*Construction* means any section of a new building or an addition to an existing building.

*Day* means calendar day.

*Executive Director* means the A&TBCB Executive Director.

## § 1150.5

*Extraordinary repair* means the replacement or renewal of any element of an existing building or facility for purposes other than normal maintenance.

*Judge* means an Administrative Law Judge appointed by the A&TBCB and assigned to the case in accordance with either section 3105 or 3314 of title 5 U.S.C.

*PER* means Provisional Expedited Relief.

*Respondent* means a party answering the citation, including PER Citation.

*Section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act* means section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, Pub. L. 93-112, 29 U.S.C. 792, as amended.

*Standard* means any standard for accessibility and usability prescribed under the Architectural Barriers Act.

[53 FR 39473, Oct. 7, 1988]

## § 1150.5 Scope and interpretation of rules.

(a) These rules shall govern all compliance proceedings held before a judge and all alleged violations coming to the Executive Director as a complaint.

(b) In the absence of a specific provision in these rules, procedure shall be in accordance with the Administrative Procedure Act, subchapter II of chapter 5 and chapter 7, of title 5 U.S.C., and the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, in that order.

(c) These rules and regulations shall be liberally construed to effectuate the purposes and provisions of the Architectural Barriers Act and section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act.

(d) The rules shall be applied to secure fairness in administration and elimination of unjustifiable expense and delay and to ascertain the truth.

(e) Words importing the singular number may extend and be applied to a plural and vice versa.

## § 1150.6 Suspension of rules.

Upon notice to all parties, the judge, with respect to matters pending before him/her, may modify or waive any rule in these regulations upon determination that no party will be unduly prejudiced and that the end of justice will be served.

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7-1-23 Edition)

### Subpart B—Parties, Complainants, Participants

#### § 1150.11 Parties.

(a) The term parties includes (1) any agency, state or local body, or other person named as a respondent in a notice of hearing or opportunity for hearing, (2) the Executive Director and (3) any person named as a party by order of the judge.

(b) The Executive Director has the sole authority to initiate proceedings by issuing a citation under § 1150.42, on the basis of (1) a complaint from any person or (2) alleged violations coming to his/her attention through any means.

#### § 1150.12 Complainants.

(a) Any person may submit a complaint to the A&TBCB alleging that a building or facility does not comply with applicable standards issued under the Architectural Barriers Act. Complaints must be in writing and should be sent to: Executive Director, Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, 1111 18th Street, Suite 501, Washington, DC 20036-3894.

A complaint form is available at the above address. Complaints may, but need not, contain (1) the complainant's name and where he/she may be reached, (2) the facility or building and, if known, the funding agency, and (3) a brief description of the barriers. A complaint form is available at the above address.

(b) The A&TBCB shall hold in confidence the identity of all persons submitting complaints unless the person submits a written authorization otherwise.

(c) The A&TBCB shall give or mail to the complainant a copy of these regulations.

(d) A complainant is not a party to the proceedings as a matter of course, but may petition the judge to participate under § 1150.13.

(e) The A&TBCB shall send the complainant a copy of the final order issued by the judge. The complainant has standing to obtain judicial review of that order.

[53 FR 39473, Oct. 7, 1988]

**§ 1150.13 Participation on petition.**

(a) By petitioning the judge, any person may be permitted to participate in the proceedings when he/she claims an interest in the proceedings and may contribute materially to their proper disposition. A complainant shall be permitted to participate in the proceeding when he/she petitions the judge.

(b) The judge may, in his/her discretion, determine the extent of participation of petitioners, including as an intervening party or participant. The judge may, in his/her discretion, limit participation to submitting documents and briefs, or permit the introduction of evidence and questioning of witnesses.

**§ 1150.14 Appearance.**

(a) A party may appear in person or by counsel or other representative and participate fully in any proceedings. An agency, state or local body, corporation or other association, may appear by any of its officers or by any employee it authorizes to appear on its behalf.

(b) A representative of a party or participant shall be deemed to control all matters respecting the interest of such party or participant in the proceedings.

(c) This section shall not be construed to require any representative to be an attorney-at-law.

(d) Withdrawal of appearance of any representative is effective when a written notice of withdrawal is filed and served on all parties and participants.

**Subpart C—Form, Execution, Service and Filing of Documents for Proceedings on Citations****§ 1150.21 Form of documents to be filed.**

Documents to be filed under the rules in this part shall be dated, the original signed in ink, shall show the docket number and title of the proceeding and shall show the title, if any, and address of the signatory. Copies need not be signed; however, the name of the person signing the original, but not necessarily his/her signature, shall be reproduced. Documents shall be legible

and shall not be more than 8½ inches wide.

**§ 1150.22 Signature of documents.**

The signature of a party, authorized officer, employee or attorney constitutes a certification that he/she has read the document, that to the best of his/her knowledge, information, and belief there is a good ground to support it, and that it is not interposed for delay. If a document is not signed or is signed with intent to defeat the purpose of this section, it may be stricken as sham and false and the proceeding may proceed as though the document had not been filed.

**§ 1150.23 Filing and service.**

(a) *General.* All notices, written motions, requests, petitions, memoranda, pleadings, briefs, decisions, and correspondence to the judge, from a party or a participant or vice versa, relating to a proceeding after its commencement shall be filed and served on all parties and participants.

(b) *Filing.* Parties shall submit for filing the original and two copies of documents, exhibits, and transcripts of testimony. Filings shall be made in person or by mail, with the hearing clerk at the address stated in the notice of hearing or notice of opportunity for hearing, during regular business hours. Regular business hours are every Monday through Friday (Federal legal holidays excepted) from 9 a.m. to 5:30 p.m. Standard or Daylight Savings Time, whichever is effective in the city where the office of the judge is located at the time.

(c) *Service.* Service of one copy shall be made on each party and participant by personal delivery or by certified mail, return receipt requested, properly addressed with postage prepaid. When a party or participant has appeared by attorney or other representative, service upon the attorney or representative is deemed service upon the party or participant.

**§ 1150.24 [Reserved]****§ 1150.25 Date of service.**

The date of service shall be the day when the matter is deposited in United States mail or is delivered in person,

except that the date of service of the initial notice of hearing or opportunity for hearing shall be the date of its delivery, or the date that its attempted delivery is refused.

**§ 1150.26 Certificate of service.**

The original of every document filed and required to be served upon parties to a proceeding shall be endorsed with a certificate of service signed by the party making service or by his/her attorney or representative, stating that such service has been made, the date of service, and the manner of service, whether by mail or personal delivery.

**Subpart D—Time**

**§ 1150.31 Computation.**

In computing any period of time under these rules or in any order issued under them, the time begins with the day following the act, event, or default, and includes the last day of the period, unless it is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal legal holiday, in which event it includes the next following business day. When the period of time prescribed or allowed is less than seven (7) days, intermediate Saturdays, Sundays, and Federal legal holidays shall be excluded from the computation.

**§ 1150.32 Extension of time or postponement.**

(a) Requests for extension of time shall be addressed to the judge and served on all parties and participants. Requests should set forth the reasons for the application.

(b) If made promptly, answers to requests for extension of time are permitted.

(c) The judge may grant the extension upon a showing of good cause by the applicant.

**Subpart E—Proceedings Prior to Hearings; Pleadings and Motions**

**§ 1150.41 Informal resolution.**

(a) The A&TBCB immediately shall send copies of complaints to all interested agencies and persons. In addition, the A&TBCB shall apprise any person who might become a party to compliance proceedings of the alleged in-

stances of noncompliance and afford him/her a reasonable opportunity to respond or submit pertinent documents.

(b) The Executive Director or his/her designee shall seek the cooperation of persons and agencies in obtaining compliance and shall provide assistance and guidance to help them comply voluntarily.

(c) Upon request of the Executive Director, interested agencies or persons, including, but not limited to, occupant agencies, recipients of assistance, and lessors, shall submit to the Executive Director or his/her designee timely, complete, and accurate reports concerning the particular complaint. Reports shall be completed at such times, and in such form containing all information as the Executive Director or his/her designee may prescribe.

(d) The Executive Director, or his/her designee, shall have access during normal business hours to books, records, accounts and other sources of information and facilities as may be pertinent to ascertain compliance. Considerations of privacy or confidentiality asserted by an agency or person may not bar the Executive Director from evaluating such materials or seeking to enforce compliance. The Executive Director may seek a protective order authorizing the use of allegedly confidential materials on terms and conditions specified by the judge.

(e) Complaints should be resolved informally and expeditiously, by the interested persons or agencies. If compliance with the applicable standards is not achieved informally or an impasse concerning the allegations of compliance or noncompliance is reached, the Executive Director will review the matter, including previous attempts by agencies to resolve the complaint, and take actions including, but not limited to, surveying and investigating buildings, monitoring compliance programs of agencies, furnishing technical assistance, such as standard interpretation, to agencies, and obtaining assurances, certifications, and plans of action as may be necessary to ensure compliance.

(f) All actions to informally resolve complaints under paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section shall be completed within one hundred eighty

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1150.42

(180) days after receipt of the complaint by all affected agencies and persons. A complaint shall be deemed informally resolved if the person or agencies responsible for the alleged violation either:

(1) Demonstrates to the Executive Director that no violation has occurred, or

(2) Corrects the violation, or

(3) Agrees in writing to implement specific compliance action within a definite time agreed to by the Executive Director, or

(4) Are timely implementing a plan for compliance agreed to by the Executive Director.

No later than ten (10) days after the termination of the one hundred eighty (180) day period, the Executive Director shall either issue a citation under § 1150.42, or determine in writing that a citation will not be issued at that time and the reasons that it is considered unnecessary.

(g) A determination not to issue a citation shall be served in accordance with § 1150.23 on all interested agencies and persons upon whom a citation would have been served if it had been issued. Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (i) of this section, the failure of the Executive Director to take action within the ten (10) day period after termination of the one hundred eighty (180) day informal resolution period shall not preclude the Executive Director from taking action thereafter.

(h) Nothing in paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section shall be construed as precluding the Executive Director before the termination of the one hundred eighty (180) day informal resolution period from:

(1) Issuing a citation if it is reasonably clear that informal resolution cannot be achieved within that time, or

(2) Determining not to issue a citation if it is reasonably clear that compliance can be achieved or that issuance of a citation is not otherwise warranted.

(i) At any time after the expiration of one hundred ninety (190) days after receipt of the complaint by all affected agencies and persons, any person or agency receiving a copy of the complaint, or the complainant, may serve a

written request on the Executive Director to issue a citation or determination not to proceed within thirty (30) days. If the Executive Director fails to serve a written response within thirty (30) days of receipt of such a request, the complaint shall be deemed closed.

[53 FR 39474, Oct. 7, 1988]

### § 1150.42 Citations.

(a) If there appears to be a failure or threatened failure to comply with a relevant standard, and the noncompliance or threatened noncompliance cannot be corrected or resolved by informal means under § 1150.41, the Executive Director on behalf of the A&TBCB may issue a written citation, requesting the ordering of relief necessary to ensure compliance with the standards or guidelines and requirements. The relief may include the suspension or withholding of funds and/or specific corrective action.

(b) The citation shall be served upon all interested parties, as appropriate, including but not limited to the complainant, the agency having custody, control, or use of the building or facility, and the agency funding by contract, grant, or loan, the allegedly non-complying building or facility.

(c) The citation shall contain:

(1) A concise jurisdictional statement reciting the provisions of section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act and Architectural Barriers Act under which the requested action may be taken, (2) a short and plain basis for requesting the imposition of the sanctions, (3) a statement either that within fifteen (15) days a hearing date will be set or that the agency or affected parties may request a hearing within fifteen (15) days from service of the citation, and (4) a list of all pertinent documents necessary for the judge to make a decision on the alleged noncompliance, including but not limited to, contracts, invitations for bids, specifications, contract or grant drawings, and correspondence.

(d) The Executive Director shall file copies of all pertinent documents listed in the citation simultaneously with filing the citation.

## § 1150.43

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

### § 1150.43 Answers.

(a) Answers shall be filed by respondents within fifteen (15) days after receipt of a citation.

(b) The answer shall admit or deny specifically and in detail, matters set forth in each allegation of the citation. If the respondent is without knowledge, the answer shall so state and such statement shall be deemed a denial. Matters not specifically denied shall be deemed admitted. Failure to file a timely answer shall constitute an admission of all facts recited in the citation.

(c) Answers shall contain a list of additional pertinent documents not listed in the citation when respondent reasonably believes these documents are necessary for the judge to make a decision. Copies of the listed documents shall be filed with the answer.

(d) Answers may also contain a request for a hearing under § 1150.45.

### § 1150.44 Amendments.

(a) The Executive Director may amend the citation as a matter of course before an answer is filed. A respondent may amend its answer once as a matter of course, but not later than five (5) days after the filing of the original answer. Other amendments of the citation or the answer shall be made only by leave of judge.

(b) An amended citation shall be answered within five (5) days of its service, or within the time for filing an answer to the original citation, whichever is longer.

### § 1150.45 Request for hearing.

When a citation does not state that a hearing will be scheduled, the respondent, either in a separate paragraph of the answer, or in a separate document, may request a hearing. Failure of a respondent to request a hearing within fifteen (15) days from service of the citation shall be deemed a waiver of the right to a hearing and shall constitute consent to the making of a decision on the basis of available information.

### § 1150.46 Motions.

(a) Motions and petitions shall state the relief sought, the authority relied upon, and the facts alleged.

(b) If made before or after the hearing, these matters shall be in writing. If made at the hearing, they may be stated orally or the judge may require that they be reduced to writing and filed and served on all parties.

(c) Except as otherwise ordered by judge, responses to a written motion or petition shall be filed within ten (10) days after the motion or petition is served. An immediate oral response may be made to an oral motion. All oral arguments on motions will be at the discretion of the judge.

(d) A reply to a response may be filed within five (5) days after the response is served. The reply shall address only the contents of the response.

### § 1150.47 Disposition of motions and petitions.

The judge may not sustain or grant a written motion or petition prior to expiration of the time for filing responses, but may overrule or deny such motion or petition without awaiting response, *Providing however*, That pre-hearing conferences, hearings, and decisions need not be delayed pending disposition of motions or petitions. All motions and petitions may be ruled upon immediately after reply. Motions and petitions not disposed of in separate rulings or in decisions will be deemed denied.

### § 1150.48 PER: Citation, answer, amendment.

(a) Unless otherwise specified, other relevant sections shall apply to PER proceedings.

(b) In addition to all other forms of relief requested, the citation shall request PER when it appears to the Executive Director that immediate and irreparable harm from noncompliance with the standard is occurring or is about to occur. Citations requesting PER shall recite specific facts and include the affidavit or the notarized complaint upon which the PER request is based. Citations requesting PER shall recite that a hearing regarding PER has been scheduled to take place eight (8) days after receipt of the citation. Citations requesting PER may be filed without prejudice to proceedings in which PER is not requested and

without prejudice to further proceedings if PER is denied. The time and place of hearing fixed in the citation shall be reasonable and shall be subject to change for cause.

(c) Answers to citations requesting PER shall be in the form of all answers, as set forth in § 1150.43, and must be filed within four (4) days after receipt of the citation. Answers shall recite in detail, by affidavit or by notarized answer, why the PER requested should not be granted.

(d) When a citation contains both a request for relief to ensure compliance with a standard and a request for PER, an answer to the PER request shall be filed in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section and an answer to a request for other relief shall be filed in accordance with § 1150.43.

(e) Citations and answers in PER proceedings may not be amended prior to hearing. Citations and answers in PER proceedings may be amended at the hearing with the permission of the judge.

### Subpart F—Responsibilities and Duties of Judge

#### § 1150.51 Who presides.

(a) A judge assigned to the case under section 3105 or 3344 of title 5 U.S.C. (formerly section 11 of the Administrative Procedure Act), shall preside over the taking of evidence in any hearing to which these rules of procedure apply.

(b) The A&TBCB shall, in writing, promptly notify all parties and participants of the assignment of the judge. This notice may fix the time and place of hearing.

(c) Pending his/her assignment, the responsibilities, duties, and authorities of the judge under these regulations shall be executed by the A&TBCB, through the Chair or another member of the A&TBCB designated by the Chair. A Board member shall not serve in this capacity in any proceeding relating to the member, his/her Federal agency, or organization of which he/she is otherwise interested.

[53 FR 39474, Oct. 7, 1988]

#### § 1150.52 Authority of judge.

The judge shall have the duty to conduct a fair hearing, to take all necessary action to avoid delay, and maintain order. He/she shall have all powers necessary to effect these ends, including (but not limited to) the power to:

(a) Arrange and issue notice of the date, time, and place of hearings previously set.

(b) Hold conferences to settle, simplify, or fix the issues in proceedings, or to consider other matters that may aid in the expeditious disposition of the proceedings.

(c) Require parties and participants to state their position with respect to the various issues in the proceedings.

(d) Administer oaths and affirmations.

(e) Rule on motions, and other procedural items on matters pending before him/her.

(f) Regulate the course of the hearing and conduct of counsel.

(g) Examine witnesses and direct witnesses to testify.

(h) Receive, rule on, exclude or limit evidence.

(i) Fix time for filing motions, petitions, briefs, or other items in matters pending before him/her.

(j) Issue decisions.

(k) Take any action authorized by the rules in this part or the provisions of sections 551 through 559 of title 5 U.S.C. (the Administrative Procedure Act).

[45 FR 78474, Nov. 25, 1980. Redesignated at 53 FR 39474, Oct. 7, 1988]

#### § 1150.53 Disqualification of judge.

(a) A judge shall disqualify himself/herself whenever in his/her opinion it is improper for him/her to preside at the proceedings.

(b) At any time following appointment of the judge and before the filing of the decision, any party may request the judge to withdraw on grounds of personal bias or prejudice either against it or in favor of any adverse party, by promptly filing with him/her an affidavit setting forth in detail the alleged grounds for disqualification.

(c) If, in the opinion of the judge, the affidavit referred to in paragraph (b) of this section is filed with due diligence

## **§ 1150.61**

and is sufficient on its face, the judge shall promptly disqualify himself/herself.

(d) If the judge does not disqualify himself/herself, he/she shall so rule upon the record, stating the grounds for his/her ruling. Then, he/she shall proceed with the hearing, or, if the hearing has closed, he/she shall proceed with the issuance of the decision.

[45 FR 78474, Nov. 25, 1980. Redesignated at 53 FR 39474, Oct. 7, 1988]

### **Subpart G—Prehearing Conferences and Discovery**

#### **§ 1150.61 Prehearing conference.**

(a) At any time before a hearing, the judge on his/her own motion or on motion of a party, may direct the parties or their representative to exchange information or to participate in a prehearing conference for the purpose of considering matters which tend to simplify the issues or expedite the proceedings.

(b) The judge may issue a prehearing order which includes the agreements reached by the parties. Such order shall be served upon all parties and participants and shall be a part of the record.

#### **§ 1150.62 Exhibits.**

(a) Proposed exhibits shall be exchanged at the prehearing conference, or otherwise prior to the hearing if the judge so requires. Proposed exhibits not so exchanged may be denied admission as evidence.

(b) The authenticity of all proposed exhibits will be deemed admitted unless written objection to them is filed prior to the hearing or unless good cause is shown at the hearing for failure to file such written objection.

#### **§ 1150.63 Discovery.**

(a) Parties are encouraged to engage in voluntary discovery procedures. For good cause shown under appropriate circumstances, but not as a matter of course, the judge may entertain motions for permission for discovery and issue orders including orders—(1) to submit testimony upon oral examination or written interrogatories before an officer authorized to administer

## **36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)**

oaths, (2) to permit service of written interrogatories upon the opposing party, (3) to produce and permit inspection of designated documents, and (4) to permit service upon the opposing parties of a request for the admission of specified facts.

(b) Motions for discovery shall be granted only to the extent and upon such terms as the judge in his/her discretion considers to be consistent with and essential to the objective of securing a just and inexpensive determination of the merits of the citation without unnecessary delay.

(c) In connection with any discovery procedure, the judge may make any order which justice requires to protect a party or person from annoyance, embarrassment, oppression or undue burden or expense, including limitations on the scope, method, time and place for discovery, and provisions for protecting the secrecy of confidential information or documents. If any party fails to comply with a discovery order of the judge, without an excuse or explanation satisfactory to the judge, the judge may decide the fact or issue relating to the material requested to be produced, or the subject matter of the probable testimony, in accordance with claims of the other party in interest or in accordance with the other evidence available to the judge, or make such other ruling as he/she determines just and proper.

### **Subpart H—Hearing Procedures**

#### **§ 1150.71 Briefs.**

The judge may require parties and participants to file written statements of position before the hearing begins. The judge may also require the parties to submit trial briefs.

#### **§ 1150.72 Purpose of hearing.**

Hearings for the receipt of evidence will be held only in cases where issues of fact must be resolved. Where it appears from the citation, the answer, stipulations, or other documents in the record, that there are no matters of material fact in dispute, the judge may enter an order so finding, vacating the hearing date, if one has been set, and fixing the time for filing briefs.

**§ 1150.73 Testimony.**

(a) Formal rules of evidence shall not apply, but rules or principles designed to assure production of the most probative evidence available do apply. Testimony shall be given orally under oath or affirmation; but the judge, in his/her discretion, may require or permit the direct testimony of any witness to be prepared in writing and served on all parties in advance of the hearing. Such testimony may be adopted by the witness at the hearing and filed as part of the record.

(b) All witnesses shall be available for cross-examination and, at the discretion of the judge, may be cross-examined without regard to the scope of direct examination as to any matter which is relevant and material to the proceeding.

(c) When testimony is taken by deposition, an opportunity shall be given, with appropriate notice, for all parties to cross-examine the witness. Objections to any testimony or evidence presented shall be deemed waived unless raised at the time of the deposition.

(d) Witnesses appearing before the judge shall be paid the same fees and mileage that are paid witnesses in the courts of the United States. Witnesses whose depositions are taken and the persons taking the same shall be entitled to the same fees as are paid for like services in the courts of the United States. Witness fees and mileage shall be paid by the party requesting the witness to appear, and the person taking a deposition shall be paid by the party requesting the taking of the deposition.

**§ 1150.74 Exclusion of evidence.**

The judge may exclude evidence which is immaterial, irrelevant, unreliable, or unduly repetitious.

**§ 1150.75 Objections.**

Objections to evidence or testimony shall be timely and may briefly state the grounds.

**§ 1150.76 Exceptions.**

Exceptions to rulings of the judge are unnecessary. It is sufficient that a party at the time the ruling of the judge is sought, makes known the ac-

tion which he/she desires the judge to take, or his/her objection to an action taken, and his/her grounds for it.

**§ 1150.77 Official notice.**

Where official notice is taken or is to be taken of a material fact not appearing in the evidence of record, any party on timely request, shall be afforded an opportunity to question the propriety of taking notice or to rebut the fact noticed.

**§ 1150.78 Public documents.**

When a party or participant offers, in whole or in part, a public document, such as an official report, decision, opinion, or published scientific or economic statistical data issued by any of the executive departments, or their subdivisions, legislative agencies or committees or administrative agencies of the Federal government (including government-owned corporations), or a similar document issued by a State or local government or their agencies, and such document (or part thereof) has been shown by the offeror to be reasonably available to the public, such document need not be produced or marked for identification, but may be offered for official notice, as a public document by specifying the document or its relevant part.

**§ 1150.79 Offer of proof.**

An offer of proof made in connection with an objection taken to a ruling of the judge rejecting or excluding proffered oral testimony shall consist of a statement of the substance of the evidence which counsel contends would be adduced by such testimony. If the excluded evidence consists of evidence in documentary or written form or refers to documents or records, a copy of the evidence shall be marked for identification and shall accompany the record as the offer of proof.

**§ 1150.80 Affidavits.**

An affidavit is not inadmissible as such. Unless the judge fixes other time periods, affidavits shall be filed and served on the parties not later than fifteen (15) days prior to the hearing. Not less than seven (7) days prior to hearing, a party may file and serve written objections to any affidavit on the

## **§ 1150.81**

ground that he/she believes it necessary to test the truth of its assertions at hearing. In such event the assertions objected to will not be received in evidence unless the affiant is made available for cross-examination, or the judge determines that cross-examination is not necessary for the full and true disclosure of facts referred to in such assertions. Notwithstanding any objection, however, affidavits may be considered in the case of any respondent who waives a hearing.

### **§ 1150.81 Consolidated or joint hearing.**

In cases in which the same or related facts are asserted to constitute non-compliance with standards or guidelines and requirements, the judge may order all related cases consolidated and may make other orders concerning the proceedings as will be consistent with the objective of securing a just and inexpensive determination of the case without unnecessary delay.

### **§ 1150.82 PER proceedings.**

(a) In proceedings in which a citation, or part of one, seeking PER has been filed, the judge shall make necessary rulings with respect to time for filing of pleadings, the conduct of the hearing, and to all other matters. He/she shall do all other things necessary to complete the proceeding in the minimum time consistent with the objective of securing an expeditious, just and inexpensive determination of the case. The times for actions set forth in these rules shall be followed unless otherwise ordered by the judge.

(b) The judge shall determine the terms and conditions for orders of PER. These orders must be consistent with preserving the rights of all parties so as to permit the timely processing of the citation, or part of it, not requesting PER, as well as consistent with the provisions and objectives of the Architectural Barriers Act and section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act. In issuing an order for PER, the judge shall make the following specific findings of fact and conclusions of law—

(1) The Executive Director is likely to succeed on the merits of the proceedings;

## **36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)**

(2) The threatened injury or violation outweighs the threatened harm to the respondent if PER is granted; and

(3) Granting PER is in the public interest.

(c) The judge may dismiss any citation or part of a citation seeking PER when the judge finds that the timely processing of a citation not requesting PER will adequately ensure the objectives of section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act and that immediate and irreparable harm caused by noncompliance with the standards or guidelines and requirements is not occurring or about to occur.

## **Subpart I—The Record**

### **§ 1150.91 Record for decision.**

The transcript of testimony, exhibits and all papers, documents and requests filed in the proceeding, including briefs and proposed findings and conclusions, shall constitute the record for decision.

### **§ 1150.92 Official transcript.**

The official transcripts of testimony, and any exhibits, briefs, or memoranda of law filed with them, shall be filed with the judge. Transcripts of testimony in hearings may be obtained from the official reporter by the parties and the public at rates not to exceed the maximum rates fixed by the contract between the A&TBCB and the reporter. Upon notice to all parties, the judge may authorize corrections to the transcript as are necessary to reflect accurately the testimony.

## **Subpart J—Posthearing Procedures; Decisions**

### **§ 1150.101 Posthearing briefs; proposed findings.**

The judge shall fix the terms, including time, for filing post-hearing statements of position or briefs, which may contain proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law. The judge may fix a reasonable time for such filing, but this period shall not exceed thirty (30) days from the receipt by the parties of the transcript of the hearing.

**§ 1150.102 Decision.**

(a) The judge shall issue a decision within thirty (30) days after the hearing ends or, when the parties submit posthearing briefs, within thirty (30) days after the filing of the briefs.

(b) The decision shall contain (1) all findings of fact and conclusions of law regarding all material issues of fact and law presented in the record, (2) the reasons for each finding of fact and conclusion of law, and (3) other provisions which effectuate the purposes of the Architectural Barriers Act and section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act. The decision may direct the parties to take specific action or may order the suspension or withholding of Federal funds.

(c) The decision shall be served on all parties and participants to the proceedings.

**§ 1150.103 Posthearing briefs, decision.**

(a) No briefs or posthearing statements of position shall be required in proceedings seeking PER unless specifically ordered by the judge.

(b) In proceedings seeking PER the decision may be given orally at the close of the hearing and shall be made in writing within three (3) days after the hearing.

**§ 1150.104 Judicial review.**

Any complainant or participant in a proceeding may obtain judicial review of a final order issued in a compliance proceeding.

**§ 1150.105 Court enforcement.**

The Executive Director, at the direction of the Board, shall bring a civil action in any appropriate United States district court to enforce, in whole or in part, any final compliance order. No member of the A&TBCB shall participate in any decision of the A&TBCB concerning a proceeding relating to the member, his/her Federal agency, or organization to which he/she is a member or in which he/she is otherwise interested.

**Subpart K—Miscellaneous Provisions****§ 1150.111 Ex parte communications.**

(a) No party, participant or other person having an interest in the case shall make or cause to be made an ex parte communication to the judge with respect to the case.

(b) A request for information directed to the judge which merely inquiries about the status of a proceeding without discussing issues or expressing points of view is not deemed an ex parte communication. Communications with respect to minor procedural matters or inquires or emergency requests for extensions of time are not deemed ex parte communications prohibited by paragraph (a) of this section. Where feasible, however, such communications should be by letter, with copies delivered to all parties. Ex parte communications between a party or participant and the Executive Director with respect to securing compliance are not prohibited.

(c) In the event an ex parte communication occurs, the judge shall issue orders and take action as fairness requires. A prohibited communication in writing received by the judge shall be made public by placing it in the correspondence file of the docket in the case and will not be considered as part of the record for decision. If the prohibited communication is received orally, a memorandum setting forth its substance shall be made and filed in the correspondence section of the docket in the case. A person referred to in this memorandum may file a comment for inclusion in the docket if he/she considers the memorandum to be incorrect.

**§ 1150.112 Post-order proceedings.**

(a) Any party adversely affected by the compliance order issued by a judge may make a motion to the judge to have such order vacated upon a showing that the building or facility complies with the order.

(b) Notice of motions and copies of all pleadings shall be served on all parties and participants to the original proceeding. Responses to the motion to vacate shall be filed within ten (10) days after receipt of the motion unless

## § 1150.113

the judge for good cause shown grants additional time to respond.

(c) Oral arguments on the motion may be ordered by the judge. The judge shall fix the terms of the argument so that they are consistent with the objective of securing a prompt, just, and inexpensive determination of the motion.

(d) Within ten (10) days after receipt of all answers to the motion, the judge shall issue his/her decision in accordance with § 1150.102 (b) and (c).

### § 1150.113 Amicable resolution.

(a) Amicable resolution is encouraged at any stage of proceedings where such resolution is consistent with the provisions and objectives of the Architectural Barriers Act and section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act.

(b) Agreements to amicably resolve pending proceedings shall be submitted by the parties and shall be accompanied by an appropriate proposed order.

(c) The Executive Director is authorized to resolve any proceeding on behalf of the A&TBCB unless otherwise specifically directed by the A&TBCB and afterwards may file appropriate stipulations or notice that the proceeding is discontinued.

### § 1150.114 Effect of partial invalidity.

If any section, subsection, paragraph, sentence, clause or phrase of these regulations is declared invalid for any reason, the remaining portions of these regulations that are severable from the invalid part shall remain in full force and effect. If a part of these regulations is invalid in one or more of its applications, the part shall remain in effect in all valid applications that are severable from the invalid applications.

## PART 1151—BYLAWS

Sec.

1151.1 Establishment.

1151.2 Authority.

1151.3 Membership.

1151.4 Officers.

1151.5 Delegations.

1151.6 Board meetings.

1151.7 Committees.

1151.8 Amendments to the bylaws.

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 792.

SOURCE: 63 FR 1924, Jan. 13, 1998, unless otherwise noted.

### § 1151.1 Establishment.

The Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board was established pursuant to section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended. The agency is also known and often referred to as the “Access Board” or simply the “Board.”

### § 1151.2 Authority.

The Board is the governing body of the agency. The Board shall have the authority and responsibilities as set forth in section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 792); section 504 of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12204); and section 225(e) of the Telecommunications Act of 1996 (47 U.S.C. 255(e)).

[63 FR 1924, Jan. 13, 1998, as amended at 87 FR 69169, Nov. 18, 2022]

### § 1151.3 Membership.

(a) *Public Members.* (1) The Board shall have thirteen members appointed by the President from among members of the general public, at least a majority of whom shall have disabilities.

(2) Members shall be appointed for a term of four years, may be reappointed to one successive term, and thereafter may not be reappointed unless they have not served on the Access board for at least two years prior to their reappointment. Each year, the terms of at least three members of the Board shall expire. A public member may continue to serve following expiration of the member’s term if a successor has not been appointed.

(b) *Federal Members.* The remaining members of the Board shall be the heads of the following agencies or their designees whose positions are Executive Level IV or higher:

(1) The Department of health and Human Services;

(2) The Department of Transportation;

(3) The Department of Housing and Urban Development;

(4) The Department of Labor;

(5) The Department of the Interior;

(6) The Department of Defense;

(7) The Department of Justice;

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1151.4

(8) The General Services Administration;

(9) The Department of Veterans Affairs;

(10) The United States Postal Service;

(11) The Department of Education; and

(12) The Department of Commerce.

(c) *Designation of Federal Board Members and Liaisons.* (1) Designation of a Federal Board member other than an agency head shall be made in writing by the agency head or by anyone authorized to provide such designation on behalf of the agency head. The designation may either be of a particular position, an individual, or both. If only a specific person is designated and not the position, a new designation will be required where appointment of another person to fill the position is subsequently made. The designation shall remain in effect for as long as provided for under applicable agency rules, regulations, or policies.

(2) An individual serving in an acting capacity, or who is otherwise temporarily serving, in a position at Executive Level IV or higher may be designated to serve on the Board, subject to any time limitations under applicable law, or under agency rules, regulations, or policies.

(3) Any newly-appointed Federal Board member shall designate in writing a liaison to the Board. A newly appointed Federal Board member may allow an individual previously serving as a liaison to the Board to continue to do so, but must provide a new designation in writing.

(4) Written designation of a Federal Board member or liaison may be in any form (including from a verifiable email address) indicating the identity of the person making the designation and that the person is authorized to do so.

[87 FR 69169, Nov. 18, 2022]

### § 1151.4 Officers.

(a) *Chair; Vice Chair.* (1) The head of the agency is the Chair of the Board and, in his or her absence or disqualification, the Vice-Chair of the Board. As head of the agency, the Chair represents the Board whenever an applicable Federal statute or regulation imposes a duty or grants a right or au-

thority to the head of the agency and has the authority to act in all matters relating to the operation of the Board. The Chair may delegate any such duties and responsibilities by written delegation of authority. The Chair supervises the Executive Director and evaluates his or her performance and approves performance evaluations of employees who report directly to the Executive Director. The authority to supervise, evaluate, and approve performance evaluations of the Executive Director and those employees who report directly to the Executive Director may only be delegated to the Vice-Chair of the Board.

(2) The Chair and the Vice-Chair of the Board shall be elected by a majority of the membership of the Board (as fixed by statute) and serve for terms of one year. Elections shall be held as soon as possible upon completion of the one year term of the Chair and Vice-Chair, ordinarily at the April meeting of the Board. If no new Chair or Vice-Chair has been elected at the end of the one-year term, the incumbents shall continue to serve in that capacity until a successor Chair or Vice-Chair has been elected. When the Chair is a public member, the Vice-Chair shall be a Federal member; and when the Chair is a Federal member, the Vice-Chair shall be a public member. Upon the expiration of the term as Chair of a Federal member, the subsequent Chair shall be a public member; and vice versa.

(b) *Executive Director.* The Executive Director is nominated by the Chair and confirmed by the Board. The Executive Director provides administrative leadership and supervision and management of staff activities in carrying out the policies and decisions of the Board under the direction and supervision of the Chair. The Executive Director has the authority to execute contracts, agreements, and other documents necessary for the operation of the Board; hire, fire and promote staff (including temporary or intermittent experts and consultants); procure space, equipment, and supplies; and obtain inter-agency and commercial support services. The Executive Director directs compliance and enforcement activities in accordance with the procedures set forth in 36 CFR part 1150, including

## § 1151.5

issuing citations and determinations not to proceed, conducting negotiations for compliance, entering into agreements for voluntary compliance, and performing all other actions authorized by law pertaining to compliance and enforcement not otherwise reserved to the Board.

(c) *General Counsel.* The General Counsel is nominated by the Chair and confirmed by the Board. The General Counsel is responsible to the Board under the supervision of the Executive Director.

[87 FR 69170, Nov. 18, 2022]

### § 1151.5 Delegations.

(a) *Delegations to the Executive Committee.* The Board may delegate to the Executive Committee (provided for in § 1151.7(a)) authority to implement its decisions by a majority vote of the members present at a meeting and any proxies. To the extent permitted by law, the Board may delegate to the Executive Committee any other of its authorities by two-thirds vote of the members present at a meeting and any proxies. A separate delegation is necessary for each action the Board desires the Executive Committee to implement.

(b) *Other.* To the extent permitted by law, the Board may delegate other duties to its officers or committees by a vote of two-thirds of the members present at a meeting and any proxies.

(c) *Redelegation.* Unless expressly prohibited in the original delegation, an officer or committee may redelegate authority.

[63 FR 1924, Jan. 13, 1998. Redesignated and amended at 87 FR 69170, Nov. 18, 2022]

### § 1151.6 Board meetings.

(a) *Number.* The Chair shall schedule four meetings of the Board each year starting January 2023, one of which may be a Board sponsored public event outside the Washington, DC area.

(b) *Timing.* Regular meetings of the Board shall ordinarily be held in January, April, July, and October of each calendar year. The Chair may reschedule a regular meeting of the Board to another date during the month preceding or following the month in which

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

the regularly scheduled meeting was to occur.

(c) *Manner of conducting meetings.* Two regular Board meetings will be in person, but allow for participation by the Board, liaisons, and members of the public remotely, and two meetings may be entirely remote. The Board shall comply with all legal requirements concerning the manner of conducting meetings, including the requirement to provide reasonable accommodations for Board members, employees, members of the public, and other participants.

(d) *Agenda.* The Chair establishes the agenda for the meetings, in consultation with the Executive Director as necessary and appropriate. Members or committees may forward submissions for agenda items to the Chair and/or to the Executive Director. Except for items concerning the adoption, amendment, or rescission of the bylaws in this part, an item may be placed before the Board for consideration without the approval of the Chair upon a two-thirds vote of the members present at a Board meeting and any proxies to suspend the rules of order. Items concerning the adoption, amendment, or rescission of the bylaws in this part may be placed on a future Board agenda without the approval of the Chair upon a vote of two-thirds of the membership of the Board (as fixed by statute).

(e) *Notice.* (1) The Chair shall provide a schedule in writing of Board meetings for the upcoming year at least thirty (30) days prior to the January Board meeting and shall provide to each Board member the agenda and supporting materials for each meeting at least ten (10) work days prior to each meeting. The ten (10) days notice requirement may be waived upon a two-thirds vote by the members present at the Board meeting and any proxies to suspend the rules of order.

(2) The public shall receive notice of the dates of meetings for the upcoming year at least thirty (30) days prior to the January Board meeting. Notice may be by publication of the schedule of meetings on the agency's website and/or through any other means by which interested members of the public are likely to access it. The notice shall include a statement that the Board

will provide reasonable accommodations, absent an undue burden, that will enable members of the public to participate in meetings.

(f) *Cancellation.* The Chair may cancel a regular meeting of the Board by giving written notice of the cancellation at least ten (10) work days prior to the meeting where practical. If the canceled meeting is a public meeting, members of the public will be given notice of its cancellation at the same time as Board members.

(g) *Special meetings.* The Chair may call special meetings of the Board to deal with important matters arising between regular meetings which require action by the Board prior to the next regular meeting. Voting and discussion shall be limited to the subject matter which necessitated the call of the special meeting. All Board members shall receive reasonable advance notice of the time, place, and purpose of the special meeting. If the special meeting is also a public meeting, members of the public shall be given notice of its occurrence at the same time as Board members, and such notice shall indicate that the Board will provide reasonable accommodations for members of the public to participate in the meeting, absent undue burden.

(h) *Record.* The Executive Director shall maintain a permanent record of the minutes of all meetings and attendance. The Board shall approve the final minutes after all corrections and additions have been incorporated.

(i) *Rules for Board meetings.* Meetings of the Board shall be held in accordance with Robert's Rules of Order, except as otherwise prescribed in the bylaws in this part.

(j) *Quorum.* (1) A quorum shall be the majority of the membership of the Board (as fixed by statute). A majority of the members required for a quorum shall be public members.

(2) Proxies shall not be counted for purposes of establishing a quorum.

(3) If a quorum is not present, a meeting shall be held only for the purpose of discussion and no vote may be taken.

(k) *Voting.* (1) Only Board members may vote.

(2) Except as otherwise prescribed in the bylaws in this part, a majority vote

of the members present and any proxies is necessary for action by the Board.

(3) The presiding officer shall have the same right to vote as any other member.

(4) Any member may give his or her directed or undirected proxy to any other Board member present at the meeting. Proxies shall be given in writing and submitted to the Chair prior to or at the meeting. A directed proxy shall be voided as to a specific issue if the question on which the vote is eventually taken differs from the question to which the proxy is directed.

(5) The Board may act on items of business between meetings by notational voting. At the request of the Chair, the Executive Director shall send a written ballot (which may be in the form of electronic mail) to each Board member describing each item submitted for notational voting. If any Board member requests discussion on an item, the ballots shall not be counted and the Chair shall place the item on the next Board meeting agenda for discussion and voting. Notational votes shall ordinarily occur over a period of five (5) business days, but may be extended, at the Chair's discretion, if, at the conclusion of the voting period, an insufficient number of votes have been cast to approve or disapprove an action.

(l) *Telecommunications.* A member of the Board shall be considered present at a meeting when he or she participates in person or by conference telephone or similar communication equipment that enables all persons participating in the meeting to communicate with each other.

[87 FR 69170, Nov. 18, 2022]

#### § 1151.7 Committees.

(a) *Executive Committee*—(1) *Establishment.* The Board shall have an Executive Committee to serve as a leadership and coordinating committee. The Executive Committee acts on behalf of the Board in between regularly scheduled Board meetings as necessary and as authorized by delegation of the Board. In addition, the Executive Committee may perform one or more of the following duties:

(i) Review and consider recommendations and proposals from the various subject matter committees;

(ii) Review and make recommendations to the Board to amend or approve the Board's bylaws; and

(iii) Request and review all committee charters.

(2) *Chair.* The Vice-Chair of the Board shall serve as Chair of the Executive Committee.

(3) *Membership.* The Executive Committee shall be composed of a minimum of six members, three Federal and three public members, which shall include the Chair and the Vice-Chair of the Board, the chairs of each of the subject matter committees, and two at large members. The two at large members shall balance the number of Federal and public members and shall be elected by the Board after the election of the Chair and Vice-Chair of the Board and the chairs of the subject matter committees. In the event that the Board should establish three or more subject matter committees, additional at-large members shall be elected as necessary to balance the Federal and public membership of the committee.

(4) *Quorum.* A quorum in the Executive Committee shall be a majority of the membership, present at the meeting. In the absence of their Federal member, the liaison may count toward a quorum. If a quorum is not present, a meeting can be held only for the purpose of discussion and no vote may be taken.

(5) *Voting.* (i) The presiding officer shall have the same right to vote as any other member.

(ii) On matters subject to Board review, liaisons are permitted to vote in the absence of their Federal member. A majority vote of the members (or liaisons) present at the meeting and any directed or undirected proxies is necessary for action by the committee.

(iii) On matters of final action, not subject to Board review, a majority vote of the membership of the committee, present at the meeting or by directed proxy, is necessary for action by the committee. In the absence of their Federal member, liaisons are permitted to cast a directed proxy only.

(b) *Subject matter committees*—(1) *Establishment.* The Board may establish or dissolve subject matter committees by a two-thirds vote of the members present and any proxies.

(2) *Chair.* The Chair of a subject matter committee shall be elected by the Board after the election of the Chair and Vice-Chair of the Board. The Chair of a subject matter committee shall serve as a member of the Board's Executive Committee.

(3) *Membership.* Each subject matter committee shall be comprised of a minimum of five (5), and a maximum of seven (7), members. Except for the Chair of the committee who is elected by the Board, the members of the committee shall be appointed by the Chair of the Board. Members shall serve a term of one year corresponding to that of the Chair of the Board, and continue their duties until their successors have been appointed.

(4) *Quorum.* A quorum shall be a majority of the actual membership of the committee. A liaison may represent the Federal member for purposes of a quorum. If a quorum is not present, a meeting shall be held only for the purpose of discussion and no vote may be taken.

(5) *Voting.* Directed or undirected proxies are permitted. In the absence of their Federal member, liaisons are permitted to vote on all matters which are subject to review by the full Board. The presiding officer shall have the same right to vote as any other member. A majority vote of the members (or liaisons) present at the meeting and any directed or undirected proxies is necessary for action by the committee.

(c) *Special committees.* The Chair, the Board, the Executive Committee or a subject matter committee may appoint a special committee to carry out a specific task. A special committee shall dissolve upon completion of its task or when dissolved by its creator. A special committee shall be governed by the same rules and procedures applicable to subject matter committees unless other rules or procedures are approved by the creator of the committee.

(d) *Telecommunications.* A member of a committee shall be considered present at a meeting when he or she participates in person or by conference

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1154.103

telephone or similar communication equipment which enables all persons participating in the meeting to communicate with each other.

(e) *Charter*. With the exception of a Committee of the Whole, each committee shall establish a charter and may establish any additional procedures provided that they do not conflict with the provisions of the bylaws in this part.

(f) *Procedure*. Committee meetings shall be held in accordance with Robert's Rules of Order, except as otherwise prescribed in the bylaws in this part or committee charters.

(g) *Records*. Committees shall maintain written records of the meetings.

[63 FR 1924, Jan. 13, 1998, as amended at 71 FR 33254, June 8, 2006. Redesignated and amended at 87 FR 69169, 69171, Nov. 18, 2022]

### § 1151.8 Amendments to the bylaws.

In order to amend the bylaws in this part, a vote of two-thirds of the membership of the Board (as fixed by statute) at the time the vote is taken shall be required. The Board shall not suspend the rules in taking any action concerning adoption, amendment or rescision of the bylaws in this part except that by vote of two-thirds of the membership of the Board (as fixed by statute), an item concerning the adoption, amendment or rescision of the bylaws in this part may be placed on an agenda for Board consideration at a future meeting.

[63 FR 1924, Jan. 13, 1998. Redesignated at 87 FR 69169, Nov. 18, 2022]

## PART 1154—ENFORCEMENT OF NONDISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF HANDICAP IN PROGRAMS OR ACTIVITIES CONDUCTED BY THE ARCHITECTURAL AND TRANSPORTATION BARRIERS COMPLIANCE BOARD

Sec.

1154.101 Purpose.

1154.102 Application.

1154.103 Definitions.

1154.104–1154.109 [Reserved]

1154.110 Self-evaluation.

1154.111 Notice.

1154.112–1154.129 [Reserved]

1154.130 General prohibitions against discrimination.

1154.131–1154.139 [Reserved]

1154.140 Employment.

1154.141–1154.148 [Reserved]

1154.149 Program accessibility: Discrimination prohibited.

1154.150 Program accessibility: Existing facilities.

1154.151 Program accessibility: New construction and alterations.

1154.152–1154.159 [Reserved]

1154.160 Communications.

1154.161–1154.169 [Reserved]

1154.170 Compliance procedures.

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 794.

SOURCE: 52 FR 16380, May 5, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

### § 1154.101 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to effectuate section 119 of the Rehabilitation, Comprehensive Service, and Developmental Disabilities Amendments of 1978, which amended section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 to prohibit discrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by Executive agencies or the United States Postal Service.

### § 1154.102 Application.

This part applies to all programs or activities conducted by the agency.

### § 1154.103 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the term—  
*Agency* means the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board.

*Assistant Attorney General* means the Assistant Attorney General, Civil Rights Division, United States Department of Justice.

*Auxiliary aids* means service or devices that enable persons with impaired sensory, manual, and/or speaking skills to have an equal opportunity to participate in, and enjoy the benefits of, programs or activities conducted by the agency. For example, auxiliary aids useful for persons with impaired vision include readers, Brailled materials, audio recordings, telecommunications devices and other similar services and devices. Auxiliary aids useful for persons with impaired hearing include telephones handset amplifiers, telephone compatible with

hearing aids, telecommunication devices for deaf persons (TDD's), interpreters, notetakers, written materials, and other similar services and devices.

*Complete complaint* means a written statement that contains the complainant's name and address and describes the agency's alleged discriminatory action in sufficient detail to inform the agency of the nature and date of the alleged violation of section 504. It shall be signed by the complainant or by someone authorized to do so on his or her behalf. Complaints filed on behalf of classes or third parties shall describe or identify (by name, if possible) the alleged victims of discriminations.

*Facility* means all or any portion of buildings, structures, equipment, roads, walks, parking lots, rolling stock or other conveyances, or other real or personal property.

*Handicapped person* means any person who has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities, has a record of such an impairment, or is regarded as having such an impairment.

As used in this definition, the phrase:

(1) *Physical or mental impairment* includes—

(i) Any physiological disorder or condition, cosmetic disfigurement, or anatomical loss affecting one or more of the following body systems: neurological; musculoskeletal; special sense organs; respiratory, including speech organs; cardiovascular; reproductive; digestive; genitourinary; hemic and lymphatic; skin; and endocrine; or

(ii) Any mental or psychological disorder, such as mental retardation, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental illness, and specific learning disabilities. The term *physical or mental impairment* includes, but is not limited to, such diseases and conditions as orthopedic, visual, speech, and hearing impairments, cerebral palsy, epilepsy, muscular dystrophy, multiple sclerosis, cancer, heart disease, diabetes, mental retardation, emotional illness, and drug addiction and alcoholism.

(2) *Major life activities* includes functions such as caring for one's self, performing manual tasks, walking, seeing, hearing, speaking breathing, learning, and working.

(3) *Has a record of such an impairment* means has a history of, or has been misclassified as having, a mental or physical impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities.

(4) *Is regarded as having an impairment* means—

(i) Has a physical or mental impairment that does not substantially limit major life activities but is treated by the agency as constituting such a limitation;

(ii) Has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits major life activities only as a result of the attitudes of others toward such impairment; or

(iii) Has none of the impairments defined in subparagraph (1) of this definition but is treated by the agency as having such an impairment.

*Qualified handicapped person* means—

(1) With respect to any agency program or activity under which a person is required to perform services or to achieve a level of accomplishment, a handicapped person who meets the essential eligibility requirements and who can achieve the purpose of the program or activity without modifications in the program or activity that the agency can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in its nature; and

(2) With respect to any other program or activity, a handicapped person who meets the essential eligibility requirements for participation in, or receipt of benefits from, that program or activity.

(3) Qualified Handicapped Person is defined for purposes of employment in 29 CFR 1613.702(f) which is made applicable to this part by §1154.140.

*Section 504* means section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (Pub. L. 93–112, 87 Stat. 394 (29 U.S.C. 794)), as amended by the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1974 (Pub. L. 93–516, 88 Stat. 1617), and the Rehabilitation, Comprehensive Services, and Developmental Disabilities Amendments of 1978 (Pub. L. 95–602, 92 Stat. 2955). As used in this part, section 504 applies only to programs or activities conducted by Executive agencies and not to federally assisted programs.

**§§ 1154.104–1154.109 [Reserved]****§ 1154.110 Self-evaluation.**

(a) By July 6, 1988, the agency shall evaluate its current policies and practices, and the effects thereof, that do not or may not meet the requirements of this part, and, to the extent modification of any such policies and practices is required, the agency shall proceed to make the necessary modifications.

(b) The agency shall provide an opportunity to interested persons, including handicapped persons or organizations representing handicapped persons, to participate in the self-evaluation process by submitting comments (both oral and written).

(c) The agency shall, for all least three years following completion of the evaluation required under paragraph (a) of this section, maintain on file and make available for public inspection—

(1) A description of areas examined and any problems identified; and

(2) A description of any modifications made.

**§ 1154.111 Notice.**

The agency shall make available to employees, applicants, participants, beneficiaries, and other interested persons such information regarding the provisions of this part and its applicability to the programs or activities conducted by the agency, and made such information available to them in such manner as the agency head finds necessary to apprise effectively such persons of the protections against discrimination assured them by section 504 and this regulation.

**§§ 1154.112–1154.129 [Reserved]****§ 1154.130 General prohibitions against discrimination.**

(a) No qualified handicapped person shall, on the basis of handicap, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the agency.

(b)(1) The agency, in providing any aid, benefit, or service, may not, directly or through contractual, licens-

ing, or other arrangements, on the basis of handicap—

(i) Deny a qualified handicapped person the opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service;

(ii) Afford a qualified handicapped person an opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service that is not equal to that afforded others;

(iii) Provide a qualified handicapped person with an aid, benefit, or service that is not as effective in affording equal opportunity to obtain the same result, to gain the same benefit, or to reach the same level of achievement as that provided to others;

(iv) Provide different or separate aid, benefits, or services to handicapped persons or to any class of handicapped persons than is provided to others unless such action is necessary to provide qualified handicapped persons with aid, benefits, or services that are as effective as those provided to others;

(v) Deny a qualified handicapped person the opportunity to participate as a member of planning or advisory boards; or

(vi) Otherwise limit a qualified handicapped person in the enjoyment of any right, privilege, advantage, or opportunity enjoyed by others receiving the aid, benefit, or service.

(2) The agency may not deny a qualified handicapped person the opportunity to participate in programs or activities that are not separate or different, despite the existence of permissibly separate or different programs or activities.

(3) The agency may not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, utilize criteria or methods of administration the purpose or effect of which would—

(i) Subject qualified handicapped persons to discrimination on the basis of handicap; or

(ii) Defeat or substantially impair accomplishment of the objectives of a program or activity with respect to handicapped persons.

(4) The agency may not, in determining the site or location of a facility, make selections the purpose or effect of which would—

(i) Exclude handicapped persons from, deny them the benefits of, or otherwise subject them to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the agency; or

(ii) Defeat or substantially impair the accomplishment of the objectives of a program or activity with respect to handicapped persons.

(5) The agency, in the selection of procurement contractors, may not use criteria that subject qualified handicapped persons to discrimination on the basis of handicap.

(c) The exclusion of nonhandicapped persons from the benefits of a program limited by Federal statute or Executive order to handicapped persons or the exclusion of a specific class of handicapped persons from a program limited by Federal statute or Executive order to a different class of handicapped persons is not prohibited by this part.

(d) The agency shall administer programs and activities in the most integrated setting appropriate to the needs of qualified handicapped persons.

**§§ 1154.131–1154.139 [Reserved]**

**§ 1154.140 Employment.**

No qualified handicapped person shall, on the basis of handicap, be subjected to discrimination in employment under any program or activity conducted by the agency. The definitions, requirements, and procedures of section 501 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 791), as established by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission in 29 CFR part 1613, shall apply to employment in federally-conducted programs or activities.

**§§ 1154.141–1154.148 [Reserved]**

**§ 1154.149 Program accessibility: Discrimination prohibited.**

Except as otherwise provided in § 1154.150, no qualified handicapped person shall, because the agency's facilities are inaccessible to or unusable by handicapped persons, be denied the benefits of, be excluded from participation in, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the agency.

**§ 1154.150 Program accessibility: Existing facilities.**

(a) *General.* The agency shall operate each program or activity so that the program or activity, when viewed in its entirety, is readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons. This paragraph does not—

(1) Necessarily require the agency to make each of its existing facilities accessible to and usable by handicapped persons; or

(2) Require the agency to take any action that it can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of a program or activity or in undue financial and administrative burdens. In those circumstances where agency personnel believe that the proposed action would fundamentally alter the program or activity or would result in undue financial and administrative burdens, the agency has the burden of proving that compliance with § 1154.150(a) would result in such alteration or burdens. The decision that compliance would result in such alteration or burdens must be made by the agency head or his/her designee after considering all agency resources available for use in the funding and operation of the conducted program or activity, and must be accompanied by a written statement of the reasons for reaching that conclusion. If an action would result in such an alteration or such burdens, the agency shall take any other action that would not result in such an alteration or such burdens but would nevertheless ensure that handicapped persons receive the benefits and services of the program or activity.

(b) *Methods.* The agency may comply with the requirements of this section through such means as redesign of equipment, reassignment of services to accessible buildings, assignment of aides to beneficiaries, home visits, delivery of services at alternate accessible sites, alteration of existing facilities and construction of new facilities, use of accessible rolling stock, or any other methods that result in making its programs or activities readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons. The agency is not required to

make structural changes in existing facilities where other methods are effective in achieving compliance with this section. The agency, in making alterations to existing buildings, shall meet accessibility requirements to the extent compelled by the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4151-4157), and any regulations implementing it. In choosing among available methods for meeting the requirements of this section, the agency shall give priority to those methods that offer programs and activities to qualified handicapped persons in the most integrated setting appropriate.

(c) *Time period for compliance.* The agency shall comply with the obligations established under this section by September 4, 1987 except that where structural changes in facilities are undertaken, such changes shall be made by July 6, 1990, but in any event as expeditiously as possible.

(d) *Transition plan.* In the event that structural changes to facilities will be undertaken to achieve program accessibility, the agency shall develop by January 6, 1988, a transition plan setting forth the steps necessary to complete such changes. The agency shall provide an opportunity to interested persons, including handicapped persons or organizations representing handicapped persons, to participate in the development of the transition plan by submitting comments (both oral and written). A copy of the transition plan shall be made available for public inspection. The plan shall, at a minimum—

(1) Identify physical obstacles in the agency's facilities that limit the accessibility of its programs or activities to handicapped persons;

(2) Describe in detail the methods that will be used to make the facilities accessible;

(3) Specify the schedule for taking the steps necessary to achieve compliance with this section and, if the time period of the transition plan is longer than one year, identify steps that will be taken during each year of the transition period; and

(4) Indicate the official responsible for implementatin of the plan.

#### **§ 1154.151 Program accessibility: New construction and alterations.**

Each building or part of a building that is constructed or altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of the agency shall be designed, constructed, or altered so as to be readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons. The definitions, requirements and standards of the Architectural Barriers Act (42 U.S.C. 4151-4157), as established in 41 CFR 101-19.600 to 101-19.607, apply to buildings covered by this section.

#### **§§ 1154.152-1154.159 [Reserved]**

#### **§ 1154.160 Communications.**

(a) The agency shall take appropriate steps to ensure effective communication with applicants, participants, personnel of other Federal entities, and members of the public.

(1) The agency shall furnish appropriate auxiliary aids where necessary to afford a handicapped person an equal opportunity to participate in, and enjoy the benefits of, the program or activity conducted by the agency.

(i) In determining what type of auxiliary aid is necessary, the agency shall give primary consideration to the requests of the handicapped person.

(ii) The agency need not provide individually prescribed devices, readers for personal use or study, or other devices of a personal nature.

(2) Where the agency communicates with applicants, beneficiaries, and members of the public by telephone, telecommunications devices for deaf persons (TDD's) or equally effective telecommunication systems shall be used.

(b) The agency shall ensure that interested person, including persons with impaired vision, speech or hearing, can obtain information as to the existence and location of accessible services, activities, and facilities.

(c) The agency shall provide signage at a primary entrance to each of its inaccessible facilities, directing users to a location at which they can obtain information about accessible facilities. The international symbol for accessibility shall be used at each primary entrance of an accessible facility.

(d) This section does not require the agency to take any action that it can

demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of a program or activity or in undue financial and administrative burdens.

In those circumstances where agency personnel believe that the proposed action would fundamentally alter the program or activity or would result in undue financial and administrative burdens, the agency has the burden of proving that compliance with §1154.160 would result in such alteration or burdens. The decision that compliance would result in such alteration or burdens must be made by the agency head or his/her designee after considering all agency resources available for use in the funding and operation of the conducted program or activity, and must be accompanied by a written statement of the reasons for reaching that conclusion. If an action required to comply with this section would result in such an alteration or such burdens, the agency shall take any other action that would not result in such an alteration or such burdens but would nevertheless ensure that, to the maximum extent possible, handicapped persons receive the benefits and services of the program or activity.

[52 FR 16380, May 5, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 24265, June 28, 1988]

**§§ 1154.161–1154.169 [Reserved]**

**§ 1154.170 Compliance procedures.**

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, this section applies to all allegations of discrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by the agency.

(b) The agency shall process complaints alleging violations of section 504 with respect to employment according to the procedures established by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission in 29 CFR part 1613 pursuant to section 501 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 791).

(c) Responsibility for implementation and operation of this section shall be vested in the Equal Employment Opportunity Director.

(d) Complaints may be delivered or mailed to the Equal Employment Opportunity Director, ATBCB, 330 C Street, SW., Rm. 1010, Washington, DC 20202.

(e) The agency shall accept and investigate all complete complaints over which it has jurisdiction. All complete complaints must be filed within 180 days of the alleged act of discrimination. The agency may extend this time period for good cause.

(f) If the Equal Employment Opportunity Director receives a complaint that is not complete, he or she shall notify the complainant, within 30 days of receipt of the incomplete complaint, that additional information is needed. If the complainant fails to complete the complaint within 30 days of receipt of this notice, the Equal Employment Opportunity Director shall dismiss the complaint without prejudice, and shall notify the complainant of such dismissal.

(g) If the agency receives a complaint over which it does not have jurisdiction, it shall promptly notify the complainant and shall make reasonable efforts to refer the complaint to the appropriate government entity.

(h) The agency shall notify the Director of the Compliance and Enforcement Division of any complaint alleging that a building or facility is not readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons. The Director of the Compliance and Enforcement Division shall determine whether or not the building or facility is subject to the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157), or section 502 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. 792).

(i) Within 180 days of the receipt of a complete complaint over which it has jurisdiction, the agency shall notify the complainant of the results of the investigation in a letter containing—

(1) Findings of fact and conclusions of law;

(2) A description of a remedy for each violation found; and

(3) A notice of the right to appeal.

(j) Appeals of the findings of fact and conclusions of law or remedies must be filed by the complainant within 90 days of receipt from the agency of the letter required by §1154.170(g). The agency may extend this time for good cause.

(k) Timely appeals shall be accepted and processed by the head of the agency.

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1191.1

(l) The head of the agency shall notify the complainant of the results of the appeal within 60 days of the receipt of the request. If the head of the agency determines that additional information is needed from the complainant, he/she shall have 60 days from the date of receipt of the additional information to make his/her determination on the appeal.

(m) The time limits cited in paragraphs (i) and (l) of this section may be extended with the permission of the Assistant Attorney General.

(n) The agency may delegate its authority for conducting complaint investigations to other Federal agencies, except that the authority for making the final determination may not be delegated to another agency.

### PART 1155 [RESERVED]

## PART 1191—AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT (ADA) ACCESSIBILITY GUIDELINES FOR BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES; ARCHITECTURAL BARRIERS ACT (ABA) ACCESSIBILITY GUIDELINES

Sec.

1191.1 Accessibility guidelines.

APPENDIX A TO PART 1191—TABLE OF CONTENTS

APPENDIX B TO PART 1191—AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT: SCOPING

APPENDIX C TO PART 1191—ARCHITECTURAL BARRIERS ACT: SCOPING

APPENDIX D TO PART 1191—TECHNICAL

APPENDIX E TO PART 1191 [RESERVED]

APPENDIX F TO PART 1191—MODIFICATIONS ADOPTED BY THE DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 792(b)(3); 42 U.S.C. 12204.

SOURCE: 69 FR 44151, July 23, 2004, unless otherwise noted.

### § 1191.1 Accessibility guidelines.

(a) The accessibility guidelines for buildings and facilities covered by the Americans with Disabilities Act are set forth in Appendices B and D to this part. The guidelines serve as the basis for accessibility standards adopted by the Department of Justice and the Department of Transportation under the Americans with Disabilities Act.

NOTE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (a): 1. Advisory sections and figures that illustrate the technical requirements in Appendix D are available on the Internet at: [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov). The advisory sections provide guidance only and do not contain mandatory requirements.

NOTE 2 TO PARAGRAPH (a): 2. The Department of Justice adopted the 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design (2010 Standards) as the regulatory standards for the new construction and alteration of facilities subject to its regulations under the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), effective March 15, 2012. 28 CFR 35.151(c)(3), as amended at 75 FR 56163, September 15, 2010; and 28 CFR 36.406(a)(3), as amended at 75 FR 56236, September 15, 2010. For state and local governments, the 2010 Standards consist of the regulations at 28 CFR 35.151 and the versions of Appendices B and D to this part published in the 2009 edition of the Code of Federal Regulations. 28 CFR 35.104. For public accommodations and commercial facilities, the 2010 Standards consist of the regulations at 28 CFR part 36, subpart D and the versions of Appendices B and D to this part published in the 2009 edition of the Code of Federal Regulations. 28 CFR 36.104. Because Appendices B and D to this part, as published in the 2009 edition of the Code of Federal Regulations, were adopted by reference by the Department of Justice as part of the 2010 Standards for new construction and alteration of facilities subject to its ADA regulations, subsequent revisions to Appendices B and D by the Access Board are not included in the 2010 Standards and have no legal effect for facilities subject to its ADA regulations until adopted by the Department of Justice. Therefore, the public is cautioned not to use Appendices B and D to this part published in any edition of the Code of Federal Regulations after 2013, until such time as the later edition is adopted by the Department of Justice as a regulatory standard. Complete copies of the 2010 Standards can be obtained from the Department of Justice's ADA Web site at: <http://www.ada.gov/2010ADASTandards/index.htm>, or by contacting the DOJ Information Line, at: 800-514-0301 (Voice) or 800-514-0383 (TTY).

NOTE 3 TO PARAGRAPH (a): 1. The Department of Transportation has adopted by reference Appendices B and D to this part with modifications as the regulatory standards for the construction and alteration of transportation facilities subject to its regulations under the Americans with Disabilities Act, effective November 29, 2006. 49 CFR 37.9 and Appendix A to 49 CFR part 37, as amended at 71 FR 63263, October 30, 2006; and corrected at 72 FR 11089, March 12, 2007. The Department of Transportation has modified section 206.3 in Appendix B to this part; and sections 406, 810.2.2, and 810.5.3 in Appendix D to this part.

The modified sections adopted by the Department of Transportation are reprinted in Appendix F to this part. Entities that are required to comply with the Department of Transportation's regulatory standards, must comply with the modified sections adopted by the Department of Transportation that are reprinted in Appendix F to this part.

(b) The accessibility guidelines for buildings and facilities covered by the Architectural Barriers Act are set forth in Appendices C and D to this part. The guidelines serve as the basis for accessibility standards adopted by the General Services Administration, the Department of Defense, the Department of Housing and Urban Development, and the United States Postal Service under the Architectural Barriers Act.

NOTE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (b): 1. Advisory sections and figures that illustrate the technical requirements in Appendix D are available on the Internet at: [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov). The advisory sections provide guidance only and do not contain mandatory requirements.

NOTE 2 TO PARAGRAPH (b): 1. The General Services Administration has adopted by reference Appendices C and D to this part as the regulatory standards for buildings and facilities subject to its regulations under the Architectural Barriers Act. 41 CFR 102–76.65, as added at 70 FR 67786, November 8, 2005; amended at 71 FR 52498, September 6, 2006; and further amended at 72 FR 5942, February 8, 2007. The General Services Administration refers to its regulatory standards as the Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Standard (ABAAS). ABAAS applies to the construction and alteration of facilities commenced after May 8, 2006; to leases awarded for lease construction buildings on or after June 30, 2006; and to all other leases awarded pursuant to solicitations issued after February 6, 2007. Section 3.5 of the Facilities Standards for the Public Building Service PBS—P100 (March 2005) [available on the Internet at: <http://www.gsa.gov/P100>] establishes an additional requirement for General Services Administration owned buildings and lease construction with government option to purchase buildings to provide at least one automatic or power-assisted door complying with section 404.3 of ABAAS at each new or altered accessible entrance required by section F206.4.1 of ABAAS.

NOTE 3 TO PARAGRAPH (b): 2. The United States Postal Service has adopted by reference Appendices C and D to this part, with the exception of the advisory notes, as the regulatory standards for its postal facilities subject to the Architectural Barriers Act, ef-

fective October 1, 2005. 39 CFR 254.1, as added at 70 FR 28213, May 17, 2005.

NOTE 4 TO PARAGRAPH (b): 4. The Department of Defense adopted by reference Appendices B and D to this part as accessibility standards for the new construction and alteration of its facilities subject to the Architectural Barriers Act, effective October 31, 2008. Deputy Secretary of Defense Memorandum dated October 31, 2008, Access for People with Disabilities [available on the Internet at: <http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/buildings-and-sites/about-the-aba-standards/background/dod-memorandum>].

[69 FR 44151, July 23, 2004, as amended at 72 FR 13707, Mar. 23, 2007; 78 FR 59493, Sept. 26, 2013]

#### APPENDIX A TO PART 1191—TABLE OF CONTENTS

##### ADA CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

- 101 Purpose
- 102 Dimensions for Adults and Children
- 103 Equivalent Facilitation
- 104 Conventions
- 105 Referenced Standards
- 106 Definitions

##### ADA CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

- 201 Application
- 202 Existing Buildings and Facilities
- 203 General Exceptions
- 204 Protruding Objects
- 205 Operable Parts
- 206 Accessible Routes
- 207 Accessible Means of Egress
- 208 Parking Spaces
- 209 Passenger Loading Zones and Bus Stops
- 210 Stairways
- 211 Drinking Fountains
- 212 Kitchens, Kitchenettes, and Sinks
- 213 Toilet Facilities and Bathing Facilities
- 214 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers
- 215 Fire Alarm Systems
- 216 Signs
- 217 Telephones
- 218 Transportation Facilities
- 219 Assistive Listening Systems
- 220 Automatic Teller Machines and Fare Machines
- 221 Assembly Areas
- 222 Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms
- 223 Medical Care and Long-Term Care Facilities
- 224 Transient Lodging Guest Rooms
- 225 Storage
- 226 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces
- 227 Sales and Service
- 228 Depositories, Vending Machines, Change Machines, Mail Boxes, and Fuel Dispensers
- 229 Windows
- 230 Two-Way Communication Systems

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## Pt. 1191, App. A

231 Judicial Facilities  
232 Detention Facilities and Correctional Facilities  
233 Residential Facilities  
234 Amusement Rides  
235 Recreational Boating Facilities  
236 Exercise Machines and Equipment  
237 Fishing Piers and Platforms  
238 Golf Facilities  
239 Miniature Golf Facilities  
240 Play Areas  
241 Saunas and Steam Rooms  
242 Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Spas  
243 Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions

### ABA CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

F101 Purpose  
F102 Dimensions for Adults and Children  
F103 Modifications and Waivers  
F104 Conventions  
F105 Referenced Standards  
F106 Definitions

### ABA CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

F201 Application  
F202 Existing Buildings and Facilities  
F203 General Exceptions  
F204 Protruding Objects  
F205 Operable Parts  
F206 Accessible Routes  
F207 Accessible Means of Egress  
F208 Parking Spaces  
F209 Passenger Loading Zones and Bus Stops  
F210 Stairways  
F211 Drinking Fountains  
F212 Kitchens, Kitchenettes, and Sinks  
F213 Toilet Facilities and Bathing Facilities  
F214 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers  
F215 Fire Alarm Systems  
F216 Signs  
F217 Telephones  
F218 Transportation Facilities  
F219 Assistive Listening Systems  
F220 Automatic Teller Machines and Fare Machines  
F221 Assembly Areas  
F222 Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms  
F223 Medical Care and Long-Term Care Facilities  
F224 Transient Lodging Guest Rooms  
F225 Storage  
F226 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces  
F227 Sales and Service  
F228 Depositories, Vending Machines, Change Machines, Mail Boxes, and Fuel Dispensers  
F229 Windows  
F230 Two-Way Communication Systems  
F231 Judicial Facilities  
F232 Detention Facilities and Correctional Facilities  
F233 Residential Facilities  
F234 Amusement Rides  
F235 Recreational Boating Facilities  
F236 Exercise Machines and Equipment

F237 Fishing Piers and Platforms  
F238 Golf Facilities  
F239 Miniature Golf Facilities  
F240 Play Areas  
F241 Saunas and Steam Rooms  
F242 Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Spas  
F243 Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions  
F244 Camping Facilities  
F245 Picnic Facilities  
F246 Viewing Areas  
F247 Trails  
F248 Beach Access Routes

### CHAPTER 3: BUILDING BLOCKS

301 General  
302 Floor or Ground Surfaces  
303 Changes in Level  
304 Turning Space  
305 Clear Floor or Ground Space  
306 Knee and Toe Clearance  
307 Protruding Objects  
308 Reach Ranges  
309 Operable Parts

### CHAPTER 4: ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

401 General  
402 Accessible Routes  
403 Walking Surfaces  
404 Doors, Doorways, and Gates  
405 Ramps  
406 Curb Ramps  
407 Elevators  
408 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators  
409 Private Residence Elevators  
410 Platform Lifts

### CHAPTER 5: GENERAL SITE AND BUILDING ELEMENTS

501 General  
502 Parking Spaces  
503 Passenger Loading Zones  
504 Stairways  
505 Handrails

### CHAPTER 6: PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND FACILITIES

601 General  
602 Drinking Fountains  
603 Toilet and Bathing Rooms  
604 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments  
605 Urinals  
606 Lavatories and Sinks  
607 Bathtubs  
608 Shower Compartments  
609 Grab Bars  
610 Seats  
611 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers  
612 Saunas and Steam Rooms

### CHAPTER 7: COMMUNICATION ELEMENTS AND FEATURES

701 General  
702 Fire Alarm Systems

**Pt. 1191, App. B**

**36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)**

- 703 Signs
- 704 Telephones
- 705 Detectable Warnings
- 706 Assistive Listening Systems
- 707 Automatic Teller Machines and Fare Machines
- 708 Two-Way Communication Systems

**CHAPTER 8: SPECIAL ROOMS, SPACES, AND ELEMENTS**

- 801 General
- 802 Wheelchair Spaces, Companion Seats, and Designated Aisle Seats
- 803 Dressing, Fitting, and Locker Rooms
- 804 Kitchens and Kitchenettes
- 805 Medical Care and Long-Term Care Facilities
- 806 Transient Lodging Guest Rooms
- 807 Holding Cells and Housing Cells
- 808 Courtrooms
- 809 Residential Dwelling Units
- 810 Transportation Facilities
- 811 Storage

**CHAPTER 9: BUILT-IN ELEMENTS**

- 901 General
- 902 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces
- 903 Benches
- 904 Check-Out Aisles and Sales and Service Counters

**CHAPTER 10: RECREATION FACILITIES**

- 1001 General
- 1002 Amusement Rides
- 1003 Recreational Boating Facilities
- 1004 Exercise Machines and Equipment
- 1005 Fishing Piers and Platforms
- 1006 Golf Facilities
- 1007 Miniature Golf Facilities
- 1008 Play Areas
- 1009 Swimming Pools, Wading Pools, and Spas
- 1010 Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions
- 1011 Outdoor Constructed Features
- 1012 Parking Spaces Within Camping Units and Picnic Units and Pull-Up Spaces at Dump Stations
- 1013 Tent Pads and Tent Platforms
- 1014 Camp Shelters
- 1015 Viewing Areas
- 1016 Outdoor Recreation Access Routes
- 1017 Trails
- 1018 Beach Access Routes
- 1019 Conditions for Exceptions

[78 FR 59493, Sept. 26, 2013]

**APPENDIX B TO PART 1191—AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT: SCOPING**

**ADA CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION**

**101 PURPOSE**

101.1 General. This document contains scoping and technical requirements for ac-

cessibility to sites, facilities, buildings, and elements by individuals with disabilities. The requirements are to be applied during the design, construction, additions to, and alteration of sites, facilities, buildings, and elements to the extent required by regulations issued by Federal agencies under the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA).

101.2 Effect on Removal of Barriers in Existing Facilities. This document does not address existing facilities unless altered at the discretion of a covered entity. The Department of Justice has authority over existing facilities that are subject to the requirement for removal of barriers under title III of the ADA. Any determination that this document applies to existing facilities subject to the barrier removal requirement is solely within the discretion of the Department of Justice and is effective only to the extent required by regulations issued by the Department of Justice.

**102 DIMENSIONS FOR ADULTS AND CHILDREN**

102.1 General. The technical requirements are based on adult dimensions and anthropometrics. In addition, this document includes technical requirements based on children's dimensions and anthropometrics for drinking fountains, water closets, toilet compartments, lavatories and sinks, dining surfaces, and work surfaces.

**103 EQUIVALENT FACILITATION**

103.1 General. Nothing in these requirements prevents the use of designs, products, or technologies as alternatives to those prescribed, provided they result in substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability.

**104 CONVENTIONS**

104.1 Dimensions. Dimensions that are not stated as "maximum" or "minimum" are absolute.

104.1.1 Construction and Manufacturing Tolerances. All dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances except where the requirement is stated as a range with specific minimum and maximum end points.

104.2 Calculation of Percentages. Where the required number of elements or facilities to be provided is determined by calculations of ratios or percentages and remainders or fractions result, the next greater whole number of such elements or facilities shall be provided. Where the determination of the required size or dimension of an element or facility involves ratios or percentages, rounding down for values less than one half shall be permitted.

## 105 REFERENCED STANDARDS

105.1 General. The standards listed in 105.2 are incorporated by reference in this document and are part of the requirements to the prescribed extent of each such reference. The Director of the Federal Register has approved these standards for incorporation by reference in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of the referenced standards may be inspected at the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, 1331 F Street NW., Suite 1000, Washington, DC 20004; at the Department of Justice, Civil Rights Division, Disability Rights Section, 1425 New York Avenue NW., Washington, DC 20005; at the Department of Transportation, 1200 New Jersey Avenue SE., Washington, DC 20590; or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call (202) 741-6030, or go to [http://www.archives.gov/federal\\_register/code\\_of\\_federal\\_regulations/ibr\\_locations.html](http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html).

105.2 Referenced Standards. The specific edition of the standards listed below are referenced in this document. Where differences occur between this document and the referenced standards, this document applies.

105.2.1 ANSI/BHMA. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th floor, New York, NY 10017 (<http://www.buildershardware.com>).

ANSI/BHMA A156.10-1999 American National Standard for Power Operated Pedestrian Doors (see 404.3).

ANSI/BHMA A156.19-1997 American National Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors (see 404.3, 408.3.2.1, and 409.3.1).

ANSI/BHMA A156.19-2002 American National Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors (see 404.3, 408.3.2.1, and 409.3.1).

105.2.2 ASME. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, New York 10016 (<http://www.asme.org>).

ASME A17.1-2000 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, including ASME A17.1a-2002 Addenda and ASME A17.1b-2003 Addenda (see 407.1, 408.1, 409.1, and 810.9).

ASME A18.1-1999 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts, including ASME A18.1a-2001 Addenda and ASME A18.1b-2001 Addenda (see 410.1).

ASME A18.1-2003 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts, (see 410.1).

105.2.3 ASTM. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 100 Bar Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania 19428 (<http://www.astm.org>).

ASTM F1292-99 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.2).

ASTM F1292-04 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surfacing Materials Within the Use Zone of Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.2).

ASTM F1487-01 Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use (see 106.5).

ASTM F1951-99 Standard Specification for Determination of Accessibility of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.1).

105.2.4 ICC/IBC. Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from the International Code Council, 500 New Jersey Avenue NW., Washington, DC 20001 ([www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org)).

International Building Code, 2000 Edition (see 207.1, 207.2, 216.4.2, 216.4.3, and 1005.2.1).

International Building Code, 2001 Supplement (see 207.1 and 207.2).

International Building Code, 2003 Edition (see 207.1, 207.2, 216.4.2, 216.4.3, and 1005.2.1).

105.2.5 NFPA. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02169-7471, (<http://www.nfpa.org>).

NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm Code, 1999 Edition (see 702.1, 809.3.1.1, and 809.3.1.2).

NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm Code, 2002 Edition (see 702.1, 809.3.1.1, and 809.3.1.2).

## 106 DEFINITIONS

106.1 General. For the purpose of this document, the terms defined in 106.5 have the indicated meaning.

106.2 Terms Defined in Referenced Standards. Terms not defined in 106.5 or in regulations issued by the Department of Justice and the Department of Transportation to implement the Americans with Disabilities Act, but specifically defined in a referenced standard, shall have the specified meaning from the referenced standard unless otherwise stated.

106.3 Undefined Terms. The meaning of terms not specifically defined in 106.5 or in regulations issued by the Department of Justice and the Department of Transportation to implement the Americans with Disabilities Act or in referenced standards shall be as defined by collegiate dictionaries in the sense that the context implies.

106.4 Interchangeability. Words, terms and phrases used in the singular include the plural and those used in the plural include the singular.

106.5 Defined Terms.

Accessible. A site, building, facility, or portion thereof that complies with this part.

Accessible Means of Egress. A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from

any point in a building or facility that provides an accessible route to an area of refuge, a horizontal exit, or a public way.

**Addition.** An expansion, extension, or increase in the gross floor area or height of a building or facility.

**Administrative Authority.** A governmental agency that adopts or enforces regulations and guidelines for the design, construction, or alteration of buildings and facilities.

**Alteration.** A change to a building or facility that affects or could affect the usability of the building or facility or portion thereof. Alterations include, but are not limited to, remodeling, renovation, rehabilitation, reconstruction, historic restoration, resurfacing of circulation paths or vehicular ways, changes or rearrangement of the structural parts or elements, and changes or rearrangement in the plan configuration of walls and full-height partitions. Normal maintenance, reroofing, painting or wallpapering, or changes to mechanical and electrical systems are not alterations unless they affect the usability of the building or facility.

**Amusement Attraction.** Any facility, or portion of a facility, located within an amusement park or theme park which provides amusement without the use of an amusement device. Amusement attractions include, but are not limited to, fun houses, barrels, and other attractions without seats.

**Amusement Ride.** A system that moves persons through a fixed course within a defined area for the purpose of amusement.

**Amusement Ride Seat.** A seat that is built-in or mechanically fastened to an amusement ride intended to be occupied by one or more passengers.

**Area of Sport Activity.** That portion of a room or space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.

**Assembly Area.** A building or facility, or portion thereof, used for the purpose of entertainment, educational or civic gatherings, or similar purposes. For the purposes of these requirements, assembly areas include, but are not limited to, classrooms, lecture halls, courtrooms, public meeting rooms, public hearing rooms, legislative chambers, motion picture houses, auditoria, theaters, playhouses, dinner theaters, concert halls, centers for the performing arts, amphitheaters, arenas, stadiums, grandstands, or convention centers.

**Assistive Listening System (ALS).** An amplification system utilizing transmitters, receivers, and coupling devices to bypass the acoustical space between a sound source and a listener by means of induction loop, radio frequency, infrared, or direct-wired equipment.

**Boarding Pier.** A portion of a pier where a boat is temporarily secured for the purpose of embarking or disembarking.

**Boat Launch Ramp.** A sloped surface designed for launching and retrieving trailered

boats and other water craft to and from a body of water.

**Boat Slip.** That portion of a pier, main pier, finger pier, or float where a boat is moored for the purpose of berthing, embarking, or disembarking.

**Building.** Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy.

**Catch Pool.** A pool or designated section of a pool used as a terminus for water slide flumes.

**Characters.** Letters, numbers, punctuation marks and typographic symbols.

**Children's Use.** Describes spaces and elements specifically designed for use primarily by people 12 years old and younger.

**Circulation Path.** An exterior or interior way of passage provided for pedestrian travel, including but not limited to, walks, hallways, courtyards, elevators, platform lifts, ramps, stairways, and landings.

**Closed-Circuit Telephone.** A telephone with a dedicated line such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entry to a facility.

**Common Use.** Interior or exterior circulation paths, rooms, spaces, or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.

**Cross Slope.** The slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel (see running slope).

**Curb Ramp.** A short ramp cutting through a curb or built up to it.

**Detectable Warning.** A standardized surface feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn of hazards on a circulation path.

**Element.** An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space, or site.

**Elevated Play Component.** A play component that is approached above or below grade and that is part of a composite play structure consisting of two or more play components attached or functionally linked to create an integrated unit providing more than one play activity.

**Emergency Transportable Housing Unit.** A single or multiple section prefabricated structure that is transportable by a single transport vehicle and that can be set-up and installed on a temporary site in response to an emergency need for temporary housing. Such structures include, but are not limited to, travel trailers, park models, manufactured housing, and other factory-built housing. For the purposes of this document, emergency transportable housing units are considered a type of residential dwelling unit.

**Employee Work Area.** All or any portion of a space used only by employees and used only for work. Corridors, toilet rooms, kitchenettes and break rooms are not employee work areas.

**Entrance.** Any access point to a building or portion of a building or facility used for the purpose of entering. An entrance includes the approach walk, the vertical access leading to the entrance platform, the entrance platform itself, vestibule if provided, the entry door or gate, and the hardware of the entry door or gate.

**Facility.** All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, elements, and pedestrian routes or vehicular ways located on a site.

**Gangway.** A variable-sloped pedestrian walkway that links a fixed structure or land with a floating structure. Gangways that connect to vessels are not addressed by this document.

**Golf Car Passage.** A continuous passage on which a motorized golf car can operate.

**Ground Level Play Component.** A play component that is approached and exited at the ground level.

**Key Station.** Rapid and light rail stations, and commuter rail stations, as defined under criteria established by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR 37.47 and 49 CFR 37.51, respectively.

**Mail Boxes.** Receptacles for the receipt of documents, packages, or other deliverable matter. Mail boxes include, but are not limited to, post office boxes and receptacles provided by commercial mail-receiving agencies, apartment facilities, or schools.

**Marked Crossing.** A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.

**Mezzanine.** An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story with an aggregate floor area of not more than one-third of the area of the room or space in which the level or levels are located. Mezzanines have sufficient elevation that space for human occupancy can be provided on the floor below.

**Occupant Load.** The number of persons for which the means of egress of a building or portion of a building is designed.

**Operable Part.** A component of an element used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, or adjust the element.

**Pictogram.** A pictorial symbol that represents activities, facilities, or concepts.

**Play Area.** A portion of a site containing play components designed and constructed for children.

**Play Component.** An element intended to generate specific opportunities for play, socialization, or learning. Play components are manufactured or natural; and are stand-alone or part of a composite play structure.

**Private Building or Facility.** A place of public accommodation or a commercial building or facility subject to title III of the ADA and 28 CFR part 36 or a transportation building or facility subject to title III of the ADA and 49 CFR 37.45.

**Public Building or Facility.** A building or facility or portion of a building or facility designed, constructed, or altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of a public entity subject to title II of the ADA and 28 CFR part 35 or to title II of the ADA and 49 CFR 37.41 or 37.43.

**Public Entrance.** An entrance that is not a service entrance or a restricted entrance.

**Public Use.** Interior or exterior rooms, spaces, or elements that are made available to the public. Public use may be provided at a building or facility that is privately or publicly owned.

**Public Way.** Any street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a public street, which has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and which has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3050 mm).

**Qualified Historic Building or Facility.** A building or facility that is listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated as historic under an appropriate State or local law.

**Ramp.** A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than 1:20.

**Residential Dwelling Unit.** A unit intended to be used as a residence, that is primarily long-term in nature. Residential dwelling units do not include transient lodging, inpatient medical care, licensed long-term care, and detention or correctional facilities.

**Restricted Entrance.** An entrance that is made available for common use on a controlled basis but not public use and that is not a service entrance.

**Running Slope.** The slope that is parallel to the direction of travel (see cross slope).

**Self-Service Storage.** Building or facility designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.

**Service Entrance.** An entrance intended primarily for delivery of goods or services.

**Site.** A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

**Soft Contained Play Structure.** A play structure made up of one or more play components where the user enters a fully enclosed play environment that utilizes pliable materials, such as plastic, netting, or fabric.

**Space.** A definable area, such as a room, toilet room, hall, assembly area, entrance, storage room, alcove, courtyard, or lobby.

**Story.** That portion of a building or facility designed for human occupancy included between the upper surface of a floor and upper surface of the floor or roof next above. A story containing one or more mezzanines has more than one floor level.

**Structural Frame.** The columns and the girders, beams, and trusses having direct connections to the columns and all other

members that are essential to the stability of the building or facility as a whole.

**Tactile.** An object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.

**Technically Infeasible.** With respect to an alteration of a building or a facility, something that has little likelihood of being accomplished because existing structural conditions would require removing or altering a loadbearing member that is an essential part of the structural frame; or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces, or features that are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements.

**Teeing Ground.** In golf, the starting place for the hole to be played.

**Transfer Device.** Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility aid to and from an amusement ride seat.

**Transient Lodging.** A building or facility containing one or more guest room(s) for sleeping that provides accommodations that are primarily short-term in nature. Transient lodging does not include residential dwelling units intended to be used as a residence, inpatient medical care facilities, licensed long-term care facilities, detention or correctional facilities, or private buildings or facilities that contain not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that are actually occupied by the proprietor as the residence of such proprietor.

**Transition Plate.** A sloping pedestrian walking surface located at the end(s) of a gangway.

**TTY.** An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Machinery that employs interactive text-based communication through the transmission of coded signals across the telephone network. TTYS may include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons) or computers with special modems. TTYS are also called text telephones.

**Use Zone.** The ground level area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure or play equipment that is designated by ASTM F1487 (incorporated by reference, see “Referenced Standards” in Chapter 1) for unrestricted circulation around the play equipment and where it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the play equipment.

**Vehicular Way.** A route provided for vehicular traffic, such as in a street, driveway, or parking facility.

**Walk.** An exterior prepared surface for pedestrian use, including pedestrian areas such as plazas and courts.

**Wheelchair Space.** Space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

**Work Area Equipment.** Any machine, instrument, engine, motor, pump, conveyor, or other apparatus used to perform work. As

used in this document, this term shall apply only to equipment that is permanently installed or built-in in employee work areas. Work area equipment does not include passenger elevators and other accessible means of vertical transportation.

## ADA CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

### 201 APPLICATION

**201.1 Scope.** All areas of newly designed and newly constructed buildings and facilities and altered portions of existing buildings and facilities shall comply with these requirements.

**201.2 Application Based on Building or Facility Use.** Where a site, building, facility, room, or space contains more than one use, each portion shall comply with the applicable requirements for that use.

**201.3 Temporary and Permanent Structures.** These requirements shall apply to temporary and permanent buildings and facilities.

### 202 EXISTING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES

**202.1 General.** Additions and alterations to existing buildings or facilities shall comply with 202.

**202.2 Additions.** Each addition to an existing building or facility shall comply with the requirements for new construction. Each addition that affects or could affect the usability of or access to an area containing a primary function shall comply with 202.4.

**202.3 Alterations.** Where existing elements or spaces are altered, each altered element or space shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 2.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Unless required by 202.4, where elements or spaces are altered and the circulation path to the altered element or space is not altered, an accessible route shall not be required.

2. In alterations, where compliance with applicable requirements is technically infeasible, the alteration shall comply with the requirements to the maximum extent feasible.

3. Residential dwelling units not required to be accessible in compliance with a standard issued pursuant to the Americans with Disabilities Act or Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, shall not be required to comply with 202.3.

**202.3.1 Prohibited Reduction in Access.** An alteration that decreases or has the effect of decreasing the accessibility of a building or facility below the requirements for new construction at the time of the alteration is prohibited.

**202.3.2 Extent of Application.** An alteration of an existing element, space, or area of a building or facility shall not impose a requirement for accessibility greater than required for new construction.

202.4 Alterations Affecting Primary Function Areas. In addition to the requirements of 202.3, an alteration that affects or could affect the usability of or access to an area containing a primary function shall be made so as to ensure that, to the maximum extent feasible, the path of travel to the altered area, including the rest rooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area, are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, unless such alterations are disproportionate to the overall alterations in terms of cost and scope as determined under criteria established by the Attorney General. In existing transportation facilities, an area of primary function shall be as defined under regulations published by the Secretary of the Department of Transportation or the Attorney General.

EXCEPTION: Residential dwelling units shall not be required to comply with 202.4.

202.5 Alterations to Qualified Historic Buildings and Facilities. Alterations to a qualified historic building or facility shall comply with 202.3 and 202.4.

EXCEPTION: Where the State Historic Preservation Officer or Advisory Council on Historic Preservation determines that compliance with the requirements for accessible routes, entrances, or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, the exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities for that element shall be permitted to apply.

### 203 GENERAL EXCEPTIONS

203.1 General. Sites, buildings, facilities, and elements are exempt from these requirements to the extent specified by 203.

203.2 Construction Sites. Structures and sites directly associated with the actual processes of construction, including but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, materials storage, and construction trailers shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. Portable toilet units provided for use exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site shall not be required to comply with 213 or to be on an accessible route.

203.3 Raised Areas. Areas raised primarily for purposes of security, life safety, or fire safety, including but not limited to, observation or lookout galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers, or life guard stands shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.4 Limited Access Spaces. Spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, or very narrow passageways shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.5 Machinery Spaces. Spaces frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair, or occasional monitoring of

equipment shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. Machinery spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits or elevator penthouses; mechanical, electrical or communications equipment rooms; piping or equipment catwalks; water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations; electric substations and transformer vaults; and highway and tunnel utility facilities.

203.6 Single Occupant Structures. Single occupant structures accessed only by passageways below grade or elevated above standard curb height, including but not limited to, toll booths that are accessed only by underground tunnels, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.7 Detention and Correctional Facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, common use areas that are used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel and that do not serve holding cells or housing cells required to comply with 232, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.8 Residential Facilities. In facilities with residential dwelling units, common use areas that do not serve residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 or emergency transportable housing unit pads designed and constructed to accept the installation of units with mobility features complying with 809.2 shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.9 Employee Work Areas. Spaces and elements within employee work areas shall only be required to comply with 206.2.8, 207.1, and 215.3 and shall be designed and constructed so that individuals with disabilities can approach, enter, and exit the employee work area. Employee work areas, or portions of employee work areas, other than raised courtroom stations, that are less than 300 square feet (28 m<sup>2</sup>) and elevated 7 inches (180 mm) or more above the finish floor or ground where the elevation is essential to the function of the space shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.10 Raised Refereeing, Judging, and Scoring Areas. Raised structures used solely for refereeing, judging, or scoring a sport shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.11 Water Slides. Water slides shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.12 Animal Containment Areas. Animal containment areas that are not for public use shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.13 Raised Boxing or Wrestling Rings. Raised boxing or wrestling rings shall not be

required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

203.14 Raised Diving Boards and Diving Platforms. Raised diving boards and diving platforms shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

#### 204 PROTRUDING OBJECTS

204.1 General. Protruding objects on circulation paths shall comply with 307.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Within areas of sport activity, protruding objects on circulation paths shall not be required to comply with 307.

2. Within play areas, protruding objects on circulation paths shall not be required to comply with 307 provided that ground level accessible routes provide vertical clearance in compliance with 1008.2.

#### 205 OPERABLE PARTS

205.1 General. Operable parts on accessible elements, accessible routes, and in accessible rooms and spaces shall comply with 309.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Operable parts that are intended for use only by service or maintenance personnel shall not be required to comply with 309.

2. Electrical or communication receptacles serving a dedicated use shall not be required to comply with 309.

3. Except within emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, where two or more outlets are provided in a kitchen above a length of counter top that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance, one outlet shall not be required to comply with 309.

4. Floor electrical receptacles shall not be required to comply with 309.

5. HVAC diffusers shall not be required to comply with 309.

6. Except for light switches, where redundant controls are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to comply with 309.

7. Cleats and other boat securement devices shall not be required to comply with 309.3.

8. Exercise machines and exercise equipment shall not be required to comply with 309.

9. Operable parts located within residential dwelling units not required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 and transient lodging guest rooms not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall not be required to comply with 309.

10. In emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, operable parts located beneath the unit body shall not be required to comply with 309.

11. Water shut-off valves shall not be required to comply with 309.

#### 206 ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

206.1 General. Accessible routes shall be provided in accordance with 206 and shall comply with Chapter 4.

206.2 Where Required. Accessible routes shall be provided where required by 206.2.

206.2.1 Site Arrival Points. At least one accessible route shall be provided within the site from accessible parking spaces and accessible passenger loading zones; public streets and sidewalks; and public transportation stops to the accessible building or facility entrance they serve.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by 202.5, no more than one accessible route from a site arrival point to an accessible entrance shall be required.

2. An accessible route shall not be required between site arrival points and the building or facility entrance if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.

206.2.2 Within a Site. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements, and accessible spaces that are on the same site.

EXCEPTION: An accessible route shall not be required between accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements, and accessible spaces if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.

206.2.3 Multi-Story Buildings and Facilities. At least one accessible route shall connect each story and mezzanine in multi-story buildings and facilities.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In private buildings or facilities that are less than three stories or that have less than 3000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) per story, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories provided that the building or facility is not a shopping center, a shopping mall, the professional office of a health care provider, a terminal, depot or other station used for specified public transportation, an airport passenger terminal, or another type of facility as determined by the Attorney General.

2. Where a two-story public building or facility has one story with an occupant load of five or fewer persons that does not contain public use space, that story shall not be required to be connected to the story above or below.

3. In detention and correctional facilities, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories where cells with mobility features required to comply with 807.2, all common use areas serving cells with mobility features required to comply with 807.2, and all public use areas are on an accessible route.

4. In facilities with residential dwelling units, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories where residential dwelling units with mobility features required to comply with 809.2, all common use areas serving residential dwelling units with mobility features required to comply with 809.2, and public use areas serving residential dwelling units are on an accessible route.

5. Within multi-story transient lodging guest rooms with mobility features required to comply with 806.2, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories provided that spaces complying with 806.2 are on an accessible route and sleeping accommodations for two persons minimum are provided on a story served by an accessible route.

6. In air traffic control towers, an accessible route shall not be required to serve the cab and the floor immediately below the cab.

7. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by 202.5, an accessible route shall not be required to stories located above or below the accessible story.

**206.2.3.1 Stairs and Escalators in Existing Buildings.** In alterations and additions, where an escalator or stair is provided where none existed previously and major structural modifications are necessary for the installation, an accessible route shall be provided between the levels served by the escalator or stair unless exempted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.

**206.2.4 Spaces and Elements.** At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements within the building or facility which are otherwise connected by a circulation path unless exempted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Raised courtroom stations, including judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, and court reporters' stations shall not be required to provide vertical access provided that the required clear floor space, maneuvering space, and, if appropriate, electrical service are installed at the time of initial construction to allow future installation of a means of vertical access complying with 405, 407, 408, or 410 without requiring substantial reconstruction of the space.

2. In assembly areas with fixed seating required to comply with 221, an accessible route shall not be required to serve fixed seating where wheelchair spaces required to be on an accessible route are not provided.

3. Accessible routes shall not be required to connect mezzanines where buildings or facilities have no more than one story. In addition, accessible routes shall not be required to connect stories or mezzanines where multi-story buildings or facilities are exempted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.

**206.2.5 Restaurants and Cafeterias.** In restaurants and cafeterias, an accessible route

shall be provided to all dining areas, including raised or sunken dining areas, and outdoor dining areas.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. In buildings or facilities not required to provide an accessible route between stories, an accessible route shall not be required to a mezzanine dining area where the mezzanine contains less than 25 percent of the total combined area for seating and dining and where the same decor and services are provided in the accessible area.

2. In alterations, an accessible route shall not be required to existing raised or sunken dining areas, or to all parts of existing outdoor dining areas where the same services and decor are provided in an accessible space usable by the public and not restricted to use by people with disabilities.

3. In sports facilities, tiered dining areas providing seating required to comply with 221 shall be required to have accessible routes serving at least 25 percent of the dining area provided that accessible routes serve seating complying with 221 and each tier is provided with the same services.

**206.2.6 Performance Areas.** Where a circulation path directly connects a performance area to an assembly seating area, an accessible route shall directly connect the assembly seating area with the performance area. An accessible route shall be provided from performance areas to ancillary areas or facilities used by performers unless exempted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.

**206.2.7 Press Boxes.** Press boxes in assembly areas shall be on an accessible route.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. An accessible route shall not be required to press boxes in bleachers that have points of entry at only one level provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet (46 m<sup>2</sup>) maximum.

2. An accessible route shall not be required to free-standing press boxes that are elevated above grade 12 feet (3660 mm) minimum provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet (46 m<sup>2</sup>) maximum.

**206.2.8 Employee Work Areas.** Common use circulation paths within employee work areas shall comply with 402.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Common use circulation paths located within employee work areas that are less than 1000 square feet (93 m<sup>2</sup>) and defined by permanently installed partitions, counters, casework, or furnishings shall not be required to comply with 402.

2. Common use circulation paths located within employee work areas that are an integral component of work area equipment shall not be required to comply with 402.

3. Common use circulation paths located within exterior employee work areas that are fully exposed to the weather shall not be required to comply with 402.

**206.2.9 Amusement Rides.** Amusement rides required to comply with 234 shall provide accessible routes in accordance with

206.2.9. Accessible routes serving amusement rides shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1002.2.

206.2.9.1 Load and Unload Areas. Load and unload areas shall be on an accessible route. Where load and unload areas have more than one loading or unloading position, at least one loading and unloading position shall be on an accessible route.

206.2.9.2 Wheelchair Spaces, Ride Seats Designed for Transfer, and Transfer Devices. When amusement rides are in the load and unload position, wheelchair spaces complying with 1002.4, amusement ride seats designed for transfer complying with 1002.5, and transfer devices complying with 1002.6 shall be on an accessible route.

206.2.10 Recreational Boating Facilities. Boat slips required to comply with 235.2 and boarding piers at boat launch ramps required to comply with 235.3 shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities shall comply with Chapter 4, except as modified by 1003.2.

206.2.11 Bowling Lanes. Where bowling lanes are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one of each type of bowling lane, shall be on an accessible route.

206.2.12 Court Sports. In court sports, at least one accessible route shall directly connect both sides of the court.

206.2.13 Exercise Machines and Equipment. Exercise machines and equipment required to comply with 236 shall be on an accessible route.

206.2.14 Fishing Piers and Platforms. Fishing piers and platforms shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving fishing piers and platforms shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1005.1.

206.2.15 Golf Facilities. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible elements and spaces within the boundary of the golf course. In addition, accessible routes serving golf car rental areas; bag drop areas; course weather shelters complying with 238.2.3; course toilet rooms; and practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds, and teeing stations at driving ranges complying with 238.3 shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1006.2.

EXCEPTION: Golf car passages complying with 1006.3 shall be permitted to be used for all or part of accessible routes required by 206.2.15.

206.2.16 Miniature Golf Facilities. Holes required to comply with 239.2, including the start of play, shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving miniature golf facilities shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1007.2.

206.2.17 Play Areas. Play areas shall provide accessible routes in accordance with 206.2.17. Accessible routes serving play areas shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1008.2.

206.2.17.1 Ground Level and Elevated Play Components. At least one accessible route shall be provided within the play area. The accessible route shall connect ground level play components required to comply with 240.2.1 and elevated play components required to comply with 240.2.2, including entry and exit points of the play components.

206.2.17.2 Soft Contained Play Structures. Where three or fewer entry points are provided for soft contained play structures, at least one entry point shall be on an accessible route. Where four or more entry points are provided for soft contained play structures, at least two entry points shall be on an accessible route.

206.3 Location. Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as general circulation paths. Where circulation paths are interior, required accessible routes shall also be interior.

206.4 Entrances. Entrances shall be provided in accordance with 206.4. Entrance doors, doorways, and gates shall comply with 404 and shall be on an accessible route complying with 402.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where an alteration includes alterations to an entrance, and the building or facility has another entrance complying with 404 that is on an accessible route, the altered entrance shall not be required to comply with 206.4 unless required by 202.4.

2. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by 202.5, no more than one public entrance shall be required to comply with 206.4. Where no public entrance can comply with 206.4 under criteria established in 202.5 Exception, then either an unlocked entrance not used by the public shall comply with 206.4; or a locked entrance complying with 206.4 with a notification system or remote monitoring shall be provided.

206.4.1 Public Entrances. In addition to entrances required by 206.4.2 through 206.4.9, at least 60 percent of all public entrances shall comply with 404.

206.4.2 Parking Structure Entrances. Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a parking structure to a building or facility entrance, each direct access to the building or facility entrance shall comply with 404.

206.4.3 Entrances from Tunnels or Elevated Walkways. Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway to a building or facility, at least one direct entrance to the building or facility from each tunnel or walkway shall comply with 404.

206.4.4 Transportation Facilities. In addition to the requirements of 206.4.2, 206.4.3, and 206.4.5 through 206.4.9, transportation facilities shall provide entrances in accordance with 206.4.4.

206.4.4.1 Location. In transportation facilities, where different entrances serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, at least one public entrance serving each fixed route or group of fixed routes shall comply with 404.

EXCEPTION: Entrances to key stations and existing intercity rail stations retrofitted in accordance with 49 CFR 37.49 or 49 CFR 37.51 shall not be required to comply with 206.4.4.1.

206.4.4.2 Direct Connections. Direct connections to other facilities shall provide an accessible route complying with 404 from the point of connection to boarding platforms and all transportation system elements required to be accessible. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and all transportation system elements required to be accessible.

EXCEPTION: In key stations and existing intercity rail stations, existing direct connections shall not be required to comply with 404.

206.4.4.3 Key Stations and Intercity Rail Stations. Key stations and existing intercity rail stations required by Subpart C of 49 CFR part 37 to be altered, shall have at least one entrance complying with 404.

206.4.5 Tenant Spaces. At least one accessible entrance to each tenancy in a facility shall comply with 404.

EXCEPTION: Self-service storage facilities not required to comply with 225.3 shall not be required to be on an accessible route.

206.4.6 Residential Dwelling Unit Primary Entrance. In residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, at least one primary entrance shall comply with 404. The primary entrance to a residential dwelling unit shall not be to a bedroom.

206.4.7 Restricted Entrances. Where restricted entrances are provided to a building or facility, at least one restricted entrance to the building or facility shall comply with 404.

206.4.8 Service Entrances. If a service entrance is the only entrance to a building or to a tenancy in a facility, that entrance shall comply with 404.

206.4.9 Entrances for Inmates or Detainees. Where entrances used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel are provided at judicial facilities, detention facilities, or correctional facilities, at least one such entrance shall comply with 404.

206.5 Doors, Doorways, and Gates. Doors, doorways, and gates providing user passage shall be provided in accordance with 206.5.

206.5.1 Entrances. Each entrance to a building or facility required to comply with 206.4 shall have at least one door, doorway, or gate complying with 404.

206.5.2 Rooms and Spaces. Within a building or facility, at least one door, doorway, or gate serving each room or space complying

with these requirements shall comply with 404.

206.5.3 Transient Lodging Facilities. In transient lodging facilities, entrances, doors, and doorways providing user passage into and within guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall comply with 404.2.3.

EXCEPTION: Shower and sauna doors in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall not be required to comply with 404.2.3.

206.5.4 Residential Dwelling Units. In residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, all doors and doorways providing user passage shall comply with 404.

206.6 Elevators. Elevators provided for passengers shall comply with 407. Where multiple elevators are provided, each elevator shall comply with 407.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In a building or facility permitted to use the exceptions to 206.2.3 or permitted by 206.7 to use a platform lift, elevators complying with 408 shall be permitted.

2. Elevators complying with 408 or 409 shall be permitted in multi-story residential dwelling units.

206.6.1 Existing Elevators. Where elements of existing elevators are altered, the same element shall also be altered in all elevators that are programmed to respond to the same hall call control as the altered elevator and shall comply with the requirements of 407 for the altered element.

206.7 Platform Lifts. Platform lifts shall comply with 410. Platform lifts shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in new construction in accordance with 206.7. Platform lifts shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in an existing building or facility. In emergency transportable housing units, platform lifts shall not be used at the primary entrance to a unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

206.7.1 Performance Areas and Speakers' Platforms. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to performance areas and speakers' platforms.

206.7.2 Wheelchair Spaces. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to comply with the wheelchair space dispersion and line-of-sight requirements of 221 and 802.

206.7.3 Incidental Spaces. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to incidental spaces which are not public use spaces and which are occupied by five persons maximum.

206.7.4 Judicial Spaces. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to: jury boxes and witness stands; raised courtroom stations including, judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, and court reporters'

stations; and to depressed areas such as the well of a court.

206.7.5 Existing Site Constraints. Platform lifts shall be permitted where existing exterior site constraints make use of a ramp or elevator infeasible.

206.7.6 Guest Rooms and Residential Dwelling Units. Platform lifts shall be permitted to connect levels within transient lodging guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 or residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

206.7.7 Amusement Rides. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to load and unload areas serving amusement rides.

206.7.8 Play Areas. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to play components or soft contained play structures.

206.7.9 Team or Player Seating. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.

206.7.10 Recreational Boating Facilities and Fishing Piers and Platforms. Platform lifts shall be permitted to be used instead of gangways that are part of accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities and fishing piers and platforms.

206.8 Security Barriers. Security barriers, including but not limited to, security bollards and security check points, shall not obstruct a required accessible route or accessible means of egress.

EXCEPTION: Where security barriers incorporate elements that cannot comply with these requirements such as certain metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices, the accessible route shall be permitted to be located adjacent to security screening devices. The accessible route shall permit persons with disabilities passing around security barriers to maintain visual contact with their personal items to the same extent provided others passing through the security barrier.

#### 207 ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

207.1 General. Means of egress shall comply with section 1003.2.13 of the International Building Code (2000 edition and 2001 Supplement) or section 1007 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see “Referenced Standards” in Chapter 1).

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where means of egress are permitted by local building or life safety codes to share a common path of egress travel, accessible means of egress shall be permitted to share a common path of egress travel.

2. Areas of refuge shall not be required in detention and correctional facilities.

207.2 Platform Lifts. Standby power shall be provided for platform lifts permitted by

section 1003.2.13.4 of the International Building Code (2000 edition and 2001 Supplement) or section 1007.5 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see “Referenced Standards” in Chapter 1) to serve as a part of an accessible means of egress.

#### 208 PARKING SPACES

208.1 General. Where parking spaces are provided, parking spaces shall be provided in accordance with 208.

EXCEPTION: Parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks, other delivery vehicles, law enforcement vehicles, or vehicular impound shall not be required to comply with 208 provided that lots accessed by the public are provided with a passenger loading zone complying with 503.

208.2 Minimum Number. Parking spaces complying with 502 shall be provided in accordance with Table 208.2 except as required by 208.2.1, 208.2.2, and 208.2.3. Where more than one parking facility is provided on a site, the number of accessible spaces provided on the site shall be calculated according to the number of spaces required for each parking facility.

TABLE 208.2—PARKING SPACES

| Total number of parking spaces provided in parking facility | Minimum number of required accessible parking spaces     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 25 .....                                               | 1.                                                       |
| 26 to 50 .....                                              | 2.                                                       |
| 51 to 75 .....                                              | 3.                                                       |
| 76 to 100 .....                                             | 4.                                                       |
| 101 to 150 .....                                            | 5.                                                       |
| 151 to 200 .....                                            | 6.                                                       |
| 201 to 300 .....                                            | 7.                                                       |
| 301 to 400 .....                                            | 8.                                                       |
| 401 to 500 .....                                            | 9.                                                       |
| 501 to 1000 .....                                           | 2 percent of total.                                      |
| 1001 and over .....                                         | 20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. |

208.2.1 Hospital Outpatient Facilities. Ten percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve hospital outpatient facilities shall comply with 502.

208.2.2 Rehabilitation Facilities and Outpatient Physical Therapy Facilities. Twenty percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve rehabilitation facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility and outpatient physical therapy facilities shall comply with 502.

208.2.3 Residential Facilities. Parking spaces provided to serve facilities with residential dwelling units shall comply with 208.2.3.

208.2.3.1 Parking for Residents. Where at least one parking space is provided for each

residential dwelling unit, at least one parking space complying with 502 shall be provided for each residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

208.2.3.2 Additional Parking Spaces for Residents. Where the total number of parking spaces provided for each residential dwelling unit exceeds one parking space per residential dwelling unit, 2 percent, but no fewer than one space, of all the parking spaces not covered by 208.2.3.1 shall comply with 502.

208.2.3.3 Parking for Guests, Employees, and Other Non-Residents. Where parking spaces are provided for persons other than residents, parking shall be provided in accordance with Table 208.2.

208.2.4 Van Parking Spaces. For every six or fraction of six parking spaces required by 208.2 to comply with 502, at least one shall be a van parking space complying with 502.

208.3 Location. Parking facilities shall comply with 208.3.

208.3.1 General. Parking spaces complying with 502 that serve a particular building or facility shall be located on the shortest accessible route from parking to an entrance complying with 206.4. Where parking serves more than one accessible entrance, parking spaces complying with 502 shall be dispersed and located on the shortest accessible route to the accessible entrances. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building or facility, parking spaces complying with 502 shall be located on the shortest accessible route to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. All van parking spaces shall be permitted to be grouped on one level within a multi-story parking facility.

2. Parking spaces shall be permitted to be located in different parking facilities if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance or entrances, parking fee, and user convenience.

208.3.2 Residential Facilities. In facilities containing residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, parking spaces provided in accordance with 208.2.3.1 shall be located on the shortest accessible route to the residential dwelling unit entrance they serve. Spaces provided in accordance with 208.2.3.2 shall be dispersed throughout all types of parking provided for the residential dwelling units.

EXCEPTION: Parking spaces provided in accordance with 208.2.3.2 shall not be required to be dispersed throughout all types of parking if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance, parking fee, and user convenience.

## 209 PASSENGER LOADING ZONES AND BUS STOPS

209.1 General. Passenger loading zones shall be provided in accordance with 209.

209.2 Type. Where provided, passenger loading zones shall comply with 209.2.

209.2.1 Passenger Loading Zones. Passenger loading zones, except those required to comply with 209.2.2 and 209.2.3, shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 in every continuous 100 linear feet (30 m) of loading zone space, or fraction thereof.

209.2.2 Bus Loading Zones. In bus loading zones restricted to use by designated or specified public transportation vehicles, each bus bay, bus stop, or other area designated for lift or ramp deployment shall comply with 810.2.

209.2.3 On-Street Bus Stops. On-street bus stops shall comply with 810.2 to the maximum extent practicable.

209.3 Medical Care and Long-Term Care Facilities. At least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 shall be provided at an accessible entrance to licensed medical care and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay exceeds twenty-four hours.

209.4 Valet Parking. Parking facilities that provide valet parking services shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503.

209.5 Mechanical Access Parking Garages. Mechanical access parking garages shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 at vehicle drop-off and vehicle pick-up areas.

## 210 STAIRWAYS

210.1 General. Interior and exterior stairs that are part of a means of egress shall comply with 504.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In detention and correctional facilities, stairs that are not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with 504.

2. In alterations, stairs between levels that are connected by an accessible route shall not be required to comply with 504, except that handrails complying with 505 shall be provided when the stairs are altered.

3. In assembly areas, aisle stairs shall not be required to comply with 504.

4. Stairs that connect play components shall not be required to comply with 504.

## 211 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

211.1 General. Where drinking fountains are provided on an exterior site, on a floor, or within a secured area they shall be provided in accordance with 211.

EXCEPTION: In detention or correctional facilities, drinking fountains only serving

holding or housing cells not required to comply with 232 shall not be required to comply with 211.

211.2 Minimum Number. No fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. One drinking fountain shall comply with 602.1 through 602.6 and one drinking fountain shall comply with 602.7.

EXCEPTION: Where a single drinking fountain complies with 602.1 through 602.6 and 602.7, it shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.

211.3 More Than Minimum Number. Where more than the minimum number of drinking fountains specified in 211.2 are provided, 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with 602.1 through 602.6, and 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with 602.7.

EXCEPTION: Where 50 percent of the drinking fountains yields a fraction, 50 percent shall be permitted to be rounded up or down provided that the total number of drinking fountains complying with 211 equals 100 percent of drinking fountains.

## 212 KITCHENS, KITCHENETTES, AND SINKS

212.1 General. Where provided, kitchens, kitchenettes, and sinks shall comply with 212.

212.2 Kitchens and Kitchenettes. Kitchens and kitchenettes shall comply with 804.

212.3 Sinks. Where sinks are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type provided in each accessible room or space shall comply with 606.

EXCEPTION: Mop or service sinks shall not be required to comply with 212.3.

## 213 TOILET FACILITIES AND BATHING FACILITIES

213.1 General. Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are provided, they shall comply with 213. Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are provided in facilities permitted by 206.2.3 Exceptions 1 and 2 not to connect stories by an accessible route, toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall be provided on a story connected by an accessible route to an accessible entrance.

213.2 Toilet Rooms and Bathing Rooms. Where toilet rooms are provided, each toilet room shall comply with 603. Where bathing rooms are provided, each bathing room shall comply with 603.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In alterations where it is technically infeasible to comply with 603, altering existing toilet or bathing rooms shall not be required where a single unisex toilet room or bathing room complying with 213.2.1 is provided and located in the same area and on the same floor as existing inaccessible toilet or bathing rooms.

2. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are

permitted by 202.5, no fewer than one toilet room for each sex complying with 603 or one unisex toilet room complying with 213.2.1 shall be provided.

3. Where multiple single user portable toilet or bathing units are clustered at a single location, no more than 5 percent of the toilet units and bathing units at each cluster shall be required to comply with 603. Portable toilet units and bathing units complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1.

4. Where multiple single user toilet rooms are clustered at a single location, no more than 50 percent of the single user toilet rooms for each use at each cluster shall be required to comply with 603.

213.2.1 Unisex (Single-Use or Family) Toilet and Unisex Bathing Rooms. Unisex toilet rooms shall contain not more than one lavatory, and two water closets without urinals or one water closet and one urinal. Unisex bathing rooms shall contain one shower or one shower and one bathtub, one lavatory, and one water closet. Doors to unisex toilet rooms and unisex bathing rooms shall have privacy latches.

213.3 Plumbing Fixtures and Accessories. Plumbing fixtures and accessories provided in a toilet room or bathing room required to comply with 213.2 shall comply with 213.3.

213.3.1 Toilet Compartments. Where toilet compartments are provided, at least one toilet compartment shall comply with 604.8.1. In addition to the compartment required to comply with 604.8.1, at least one compartment shall comply with 604.8.2 where six or more toilet compartments are provided, or where the combination of urinals and water closets totals six or more fixtures.

213.3.2 Water Closets. Where water closets are provided, at least one shall comply with 604.

213.3.3 Urinals. Where more than one urinal is provided, at least one shall comply with 605.

213.3.4 Lavatories. Where lavatories are provided, at least one shall comply with 606 and shall not be located in a toilet compartment.

213.3.5 Mirrors. Where mirrors are provided, at least one shall comply with 603.3.

213.3.6 Bathing Facilities. Where bathtubs or showers are provided, at least one bathtub complying with 607 or at least one shower complying with 608 shall be provided.

213.3.7 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet rooms without toilet compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with 603.4. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet compartments, at least one of each type complying with 604.8.3 shall be provided in toilet compartments required to comply with 213.3.1. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in bathing facilities, at least one of

each type complying with 603.4 shall serve fixtures required to comply with 213.3.6.

#### 214 WASHING MACHINES AND CLOTHES DRYERS

214.1 General. Where provided, washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with 214.

214.2 Washing Machines. Where three or fewer washing machines are provided, at least one shall comply with 611. Where more than three washing machines are provided, at least two shall comply with 611.

214.3 Clothes Dryers. Where three or fewer clothes dryers are provided, at least one shall comply with 611. Where more than three clothes dryers are provided, at least two shall comply with 611.

#### 215 FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

215.1 General. Where fire alarm systems provide audible alarm coverage, alarms shall comply with 215.

EXCEPTION: In existing facilities, visible alarms shall not be required except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.

215.2 Public and Common Use Areas. Alarms in public use areas and common use areas shall comply with 702.

215.3 Employee Work Areas. Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the wiring system shall be designed so that visible alarms complying with 702 can be integrated into the alarm system.

215.4 Transient Lodging. Guest rooms required to comply with 224.4 shall provide alarms complying with 702.

215.5 Residential Dwelling Units. Where provided in residential dwelling units required to provide communication features complying with 809.3, alarms shall comply with 702.

#### 216 SIGNS

216.1 General. Signs shall be provided in accordance with 216 and shall comply with 703.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Building directories, menus, seat and row designations in assembly areas, occupant names, building addresses, and company names and logos shall not be required to comply with 216.

2. In parking facilities, signs shall not be required to comply with 216.2, 216.3, and 216.6 through 216.12.

3. Temporary, 7 days or less, signs shall not be required to comply with 216.

4. In detention and correctional facilities, signs not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with 216.

216.2 Designations. Interior and exterior signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with 703.1, 703.2, and 703.5. Where pictograms are provided as des-

ignations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with 703.6 and shall have text descriptors complying with 703.2 and 703.5.

EXCEPTION: Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve shall not be required to comply with 703.2.

216.3 Directional and Informational Signs. Signs that provide direction to or information about interior spaces and facilities of the site shall comply with 703.5.

216.4 Means of Egress. Signs for means of egress shall comply with 216.4.

216.4.1 Exit Doors. Doors at exit passageways, exit discharge, and exit stairways shall be identified by tactile signs complying with 703.1, 703.2, and 703.5.

216.4.2 Areas of Refuge. Signs required by section 1003.2.13.5.4 of the International Building Code (2000 edition) or section 1007.6.4 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) to provide instructions in areas of refuge shall comply with 703.5.

216.4.3 Directional Signs. Signs required by section 1003.2.13.6 of the International Building Code (2000 edition) or section 1007.7 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) to provide directions to accessible means of egress shall comply with 703.5.

216.5 Parking. Parking spaces complying with 502 shall be identified by signs complying with 502.6.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where a total of four or fewer parking spaces, including accessible parking spaces, are provided on a site, identification of accessible parking spaces shall not be required.

2. In residential facilities, where parking spaces are assigned to specific residential dwelling units, identification of accessible parking spaces shall not be required.

216.6 Entrances. Where not all entrances comply with 404, entrances complying with 404 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Directional signs complying with 703.5 that indicate the location of the nearest entrance complying with 404 shall be provided at entrances that do not comply with 404.

216.7 Elevators. Where existing elevators do not comply with 407, elevators complying with 407 shall be clearly identified with the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1.

216.8 Toilet Rooms and Bathing Rooms. Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with 603, directional signs indicating the location of the nearest toilet room or bathing room complying with 603 within the facility shall be provided.

Signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with 603, the toilet rooms or bathing rooms complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where clustered single user toilet rooms or bathing facilities are permitted to use exceptions to 213.2, toilet rooms or bathing facilities complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1 unless all toilet rooms and bathing facilities comply with 603.

216.9 TTYs. Identification and directional signs for public TTYs shall be provided in accordance with 216.9.

216.9.1 Identification Signs. Public TTYs shall be identified by the International Symbol of TTY complying with 703.7.2.2.

216.9.2 Directional Signs. Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest public TTY shall be provided at all banks of public pay telephones not containing a public TTY. In addition, where signs provide direction to public pay telephones, they shall also provide direction to public TTYs. Directional signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of TTY complying with 703.7.2.2.

216.10 Assistive Listening Systems. Each assembly area required by 219 to provide assistive listening systems shall provide signs informing patrons of the availability of the assistive listening system. Assistive listening signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss complying with 703.7.2.4.

EXCEPTION: Where ticket offices or windows are provided, signs shall not be required at each assembly area provided that signs are displayed at each ticket office or window informing patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems.

216.11 Check-Out Aisles. Where more than one check-out aisle is provided, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where check-out aisles are identified by numbers, letters, or functions, signs identifying check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be located in the same location as the checkout aisle identification.

EXCEPTION: Where all check-out aisles serving a single function comply with 904.3, signs complying with 703.7.2.1 shall not be required.

216.12 Amusement Rides. Signs identifying the type of access provided on amusement rides shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. In addition, where accessible unload areas also serve as accessible load areas, signs indicating the location of the accessible load and unload areas

shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines.

## 217 TELEPHONES

217.1 General. Where coin-operated public pay telephones, coinless public pay telephones, public closed-circuit telephones, public courtesy phones, or other types of public telephones are provided, public telephones shall be provided in accordance with 217 for each type of public telephone provided. For purposes of this section, a bank of telephones shall be considered to be two or more adjacent telephones.

217.2 Wheelchair Accessible Telephones. Where public telephones are provided, wheelchair accessible telephones complying with 704.2 shall be provided in accordance with Table 217.2.

EXCEPTION: Drive-up only public telephones shall not be required to comply with 217.2.

TABLE 217.2—WHEELCHAIR ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES

| Number of telephones provided on a floor, level, or exterior site | Minimum number of required wheelchair accessible telephones |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 or more single units .....                                      | 1 per floor, level, and exterior site.                      |
| 1 bank .....                                                      | 1 per floor, level, and exterior site.                      |
| 2 or more banks .....                                             | 1 per bank.                                                 |

217.3 Volume Controls. All public telephones shall have volume controls complying with 704.3.

217.4 TTYs. TTYs complying with 704.4 shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.

217.4.1 Bank Requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided at a bank of telephones, at least one public TTY complying with 704.4 shall be provided at that bank.

EXCEPTION: TTYs shall not be required at banks of telephones located within 200 feet (61 m) of, and on the same floor as, a bank containing a public TTY.

217.4.2 Floor Requirement. TTYs in public buildings shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.2.1. TTYs in private buildings shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.2.2.

217.4.2.1 Public Buildings. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided on a floor of a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.

217.4.2.2 Private Buildings. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a floor of a private building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.

217.4.3 Building Requirement. TTYs in public buildings shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.3.1. TTYs in private buildings shall be provided in accordance with 217.4.3.2.

217.4.3.1 Public Buildings. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a

public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a public use area of a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the public building in a public use area.

217.4.3.2 Private Buildings. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided in a private building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building.

217.4.4 Exterior Site Requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on an exterior site, at least one public TTY shall be provided on the site.

217.4.5 Rest Stops, Emergency Roadside Stops, and Service Plazas. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided at a public rest stop, emergency roadside stop, or service plaza, at least one public TTY shall be provided.

217.4.6 Hospitals. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided serving a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room, or hospital waiting room, at least one public TTY shall be provided at each location.

217.4.7 Transportation Facilities. In transportation facilities, in addition to the requirements of 217.4.1 through 217.4.4, where at least one public pay telephone serves a particular entrance to a bus or rail facility, at least one public TTY shall be provided to serve that entrance. In airports, in addition to the requirements of 217.4.1 through 217.4.4, where four or more public pay telephones are located in a terminal outside the security areas, a concourse within the security areas, or a baggage claim area in a terminal, at least one public TTY shall be provided in each location.

217.4.8 Detention and Correctional Facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, where at least one pay telephone is provided in a secured area used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel, at least one TTY shall be provided in at least one secured area.

217.5 Shelves for Portable TTYs. Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone at the bank shall be provided with a shelf and an electrical outlet in accordance with 704.5.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Secured areas of detention and correctional facilities where shelves and outlets are prohibited for purposes of security or safety shall not be required to comply with 217.5.

2. The shelf and electrical outlet shall not be required at a bank of telephones with a TTY.

#### 218 TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES

218.1 General. Transportation facilities shall comply with 218.

218.2 New and Altered Fixed Guideway Stations. New and altered stations in rapid

rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity rail, high speed rail, and other fixed guideway systems shall comply with 810.5 through 810.10.

218.3 Key Stations and Existing Intercity Rail Stations. Key stations and existing intercity rail stations shall comply with 810.5 through 810.10.

218.4 Bus Shelters. Where provided, bus shelters shall comply with 810.3.

218.5 Other Transportation Facilities. In other transportation facilities, public address systems shall comply with 810.7 and clocks shall comply with 810.8.

#### 219 ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS

219.1 General. Assistive listening systems shall be provided in accordance with 219 and shall comply with 706.

219.2 Required Systems. In each assembly area where audible communication is integral to the use of the space, an assistive listening system shall be provided.

EXCEPTION: Other than in courtrooms, assistive listening systems shall not be required where audio amplification is not provided.

219.3 Receivers. Receivers complying with 706.2 shall be provided for assistive listening systems in each assembly area in accordance with Table 219.3. Twenty-five percent minimum of receivers provided, but no fewer than two, shall be hearing-aid compatible in accordance with 706.3.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where a building contains more than one assembly area and the assembly areas required to provide assistive listening systems are under one management, the total number of required receivers shall be permitted to be calculated according to the total number of seats in the assembly areas in the building provided that all receivers are usable with all systems.

2. Where all seats in an assembly area are served by an induction loop assistive listening system, the minimum number of receivers required by Table 219.3 to be hearing-aid compatible shall not be required to be provided.

TABLE 219.3—RECEIVERS FOR ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS

| Capacity of seating in assembly area | Minimum number of required receivers                | Minimum number of required receivers required to be hearing-aid compatible |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 50 or less .....                     | 2 .....                                             | 2.                                                                         |
| 51 to 200 .....                      | 2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats.               | 2.                                                                         |
| 201 to 500 .....                     | 2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats <sup>1</sup> . | 1 per 4 receivers. <sup>1</sup>                                            |

TABLE 219.3—RECEIVERS FOR ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS—Continued

| Capacity of seating in assembly area | Minimum number of required receivers                   | Minimum number of required receivers required to be hearing-aid compatible |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 501 to 1000 .....                    | 20, plus 1 per 33 seats over 500 seats <sup>1</sup> .  | 1 per 4 receivers. <sup>1</sup>                                            |
| 1001 to 2000 .....                   | 35, plus 1 per 50 seats over 1000 seats <sup>1</sup> . | 1 per 4 receivers. <sup>1</sup>                                            |
| 2001 and over .....                  | 55 plus 1 per 100 seats over 2000 seats <sup>1</sup> . | 1 per 4 receivers. <sup>1</sup>                                            |

<sup>1</sup> Or fraction thereof.

## 220 AUTOMATIC TELLER MACHINES AND FARE MACHINES

220.1 General. Where automatic teller machines or self-service fare vending, collection, or adjustment machines are provided, at least one of each type provided at each location shall comply with 707. Where bins are provided for envelopes, waste paper, or other purposes, at least one of each type shall comply with 811.

## 221 ASSEMBLY AREAS

221.1 General. Assembly areas shall provide wheelchair spaces, companion seats, and designated aisle seats complying with 221 and 802. In addition, lawn seating shall comply with 221.5.

221.2 Wheelchair Spaces. Wheelchair spaces complying with 221.2 shall be provided in assembly areas with fixed seating.

221.2.1 Number and Location. Wheelchair spaces shall be provided complying with 221.2.1.

221.2.1.1 General Seating. Wheelchair spaces complying with 802.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 221.2.1.1.

TABLE 221.2.1.1—NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR SPACES IN ASSEMBLY AREAS

| Number of seats     | Minimum number of required wheelchair spaces                           |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 to 25 .....       | 1.                                                                     |
| 26 to 50 .....      | 2.                                                                     |
| 51 to 150 .....     | 4.                                                                     |
| 151 to 300 .....    | 5.                                                                     |
| 301 to 500 .....    | 6.                                                                     |
| 501 to 5000 .....   | 6, plus 1 for each 150, or fraction thereof, between 501 through 5000. |
| 5001 and over ..... | 36, plus 1 for each 200, or fraction thereof, over 5000.               |

221.2.1.2 Luxury Boxes, Club Boxes, and Suites in Arenas, Stadiums, and Grandstands. In each luxury box, club box, and suite within arenas, stadiums, and grandstands, wheelchair spaces complying with

802.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 221.2.1.1.

221.2.1.3 Other Boxes. In boxes other than those required to comply with 221.2.1.2, the total number of wheelchair spaces required shall be determined in accordance with Table 221.2.1.1. Wheelchair spaces shall be located in not less than 20 percent of all boxes provided. Wheelchair spaces shall comply with 802.1.

221.2.1.4 Team or Player Seating. At least one wheelchair space complying with 802.1 shall be provided in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.

EXCEPTION: Wheelchair spaces shall not be required in team or player seating areas serving bowling lanes not required to comply with 206.2.11.

221.2.2 Integration. Wheelchair spaces shall be an integral part of the seating plan.

221.2.3 Lines of Sight and Dispersion. Wheelchair spaces shall provide lines of sight complying with 802.2 and shall comply with 221.2.3. In providing lines of sight, wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed. Wheelchair spaces shall provide spectators with choices of seating locations and viewing angles that are substantially equivalent to, or better than, the choices of seating locations and viewing angles available to all other spectators. When the number of wheelchair spaces required by 221.2.1 has been met, further dispersion shall not be required.

EXCEPTION: Wheelchair spaces in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with 221.2.3.

221.2.3.1 Horizontal Dispersion. Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed horizontally.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Horizontal dispersion shall not be required in assembly areas with 300 or fewer seats if the companion seats required by 221.3 and wheelchair spaces are located within the 2nd or 3rd quartile of the total row length. Intermediate aisles shall be included in determining the total row length. If the row length in the 2nd and 3rd quartile of a row is insufficient to accommodate the required number of companion seats and wheelchair spaces, the additional companion seats and wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located in the 1st and 4th quartile of the row.

2. In row seating, two wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located side-by-side.

221.2.3.2 Vertical Dispersion. Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed vertically at varying distances from the screen, performance area, or playing field. In addition, wheelchair spaces shall be located in each balcony or mezzanine that is located on an accessible route.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Vertical dispersion shall not be required in assembly areas with 300 or fewer seats if the wheelchair spaces provide

viewing angles that are equivalent to, or better than, the average viewing angle provided in the facility.

2. In bleachers, wheelchair spaces shall not be required to be provided in rows other than rows at points of entry to bleacher seating.

221.3 Companion Seats. At least one companion seat complying with 802.3 shall be provided for each wheelchair space required by 221.2.1.

221.4 Designated Aisle Seats. At least 5 percent of the total number of aisle seats provided shall comply with 802.4 and shall be the aisle seats located closest to accessible routes.

EXCEPTION: Team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with 221.4.

221.5 Lawn Seating. Lawn seating areas and exterior overflow seating areas, where fixed seats are not provided, shall connect to an accessible route.

#### 222 DRESSING, FITTING, AND LOCKER ROOMS

222.1 General. Where dressing rooms, fitting rooms, or locker rooms are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of use in each cluster provided shall comply with 803.

EXCEPTION: In alterations, where it is technically infeasible to provide rooms in accordance with 222.1, one room for each sex on each level shall comply with 803. Where only unisex rooms are provided, unisex rooms shall be permitted.

222.2 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in dressing, fitting or locker rooms without individual compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with 803.5. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in individual compartments at least one of each type complying with 803.5 shall be provided in individual compartments in dressing, fitting, or locker rooms required to comply with 222.1.

#### 223 MEDICAL CARE AND LONG-TERM CARE FACILITIES

223.1 General. In licensed medical care facilities and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay exceeds twenty four hours, patient or resident sleeping rooms shall be provided in accordance with 223.

EXCEPTION: Toilet rooms that are part of critical or intensive care patient sleeping rooms shall not be required to comply with 603.

223.1.1 Alterations. Where sleeping rooms are altered or added, the requirements of 223 shall apply only to the sleeping rooms being altered or added until the number of sleeping rooms complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

223.2 Hospitals, Rehabilitation Facilities, Psychiatric Facilities and Detoxification Facilities. Hospitals, rehabilitation facilities, psychiatric facilities and detoxification facilities shall comply with 223.2.

223.2.1 Facilities Not Specializing in Treating Conditions That Affect Mobility. In facilities not specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, at least 10 percent, but no fewer than one, of the patient sleeping rooms shall provide mobility features complying with 805.

223.2.2 Facilities Specializing in Treating Conditions That Affect Mobility. In facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, 100 percent of the patient sleeping rooms shall provide mobility features complying with 805.

223.3 Long-Term Care Facilities. In licensed long-term care facilities, at least 50 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of resident sleeping room shall provide mobility features complying with 805.

#### 224 TRANSIENT LODGING GUEST ROOMS

224.1 General. Transient lodging facilities shall provide guest rooms in accordance with 224.

224.1.1 Alterations. Where guest rooms are altered or added, the requirements of 224 shall apply only to the guest rooms being altered or added until the number of guest rooms complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

224.1.2 Guest Room Doors and Doorways. Entrances, doors, and doorways providing user passage into and within guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall comply with 404.2.3.

EXCEPTION: Shower and sauna doors in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall not be required to comply with 404.2.3.

224.2 Guest Rooms with Mobility Features. In transient lodging facilities, guest rooms with mobility features complying with 806.2 shall be provided in accordance with Table 224.2.

TABLE 224.2—GUEST ROOMS WITH MOBILITY FEATURES

| Total number of guest rooms provided | Minimum number of required rooms without roll-in showers | Minimum number of required rooms with roll-in showers | Total number of required rooms |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 to 25 .....                        | 1 .....                                                  | 0 .....                                               | 1.                             |
| 26 to 50 .....                       | 2 .....                                                  | 0 .....                                               | 2.                             |
| 51 to 75 .....                       | 3 .....                                                  | 1 .....                                               | 4.                             |
| 76 to 100 .....                      | 4 .....                                                  | 1 .....                                               | 5.                             |
| 101 to 150 .....                     | 5 .....                                                  | 2 .....                                               | 7.                             |

TABLE 224.2—GUEST ROOMS WITH MOBILITY FEATURES—Continued

| Total number of guest rooms provided | Minimum number of required rooms without roll-in showers | Minimum number of required rooms with roll-in showers    | Total number of required rooms                           |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 151 to 200 .....                     | 6 .....                                                  | 2 .....                                                  | 8.                                                       |
| 201 to 300 .....                     | 7 .....                                                  | 3 .....                                                  | 10.                                                      |
| 301 to 400 .....                     | 8 .....                                                  | 4 .....                                                  | 12.                                                      |
| 401 to 500 .....                     | 9 .....                                                  | 4 .....                                                  | 13.                                                      |
| 501 to 1000 .....                    | 2 percent of total .....                                 | 1 percent of total .....                                 | 3 percent of total.                                      |
| 1001 and over .....                  | 20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. | 10, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. | 30, plus 2 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. |

224.3 Beds. In guest rooms having more than 25 beds, 5 percent minimum of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with 806.2.3.

224.4 Guest Rooms with Communication Features. In transient lodging facilities, guest rooms with communication features complying with 806.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table 224.4.

TABLE 224.4—GUEST ROOMS WITH COMMUNICATION FEATURES

| Total number of guest rooms provided | Minimum number of required guest rooms with communication features |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 to 25 .....                        | 2.                                                                 |
| 26 to 50 .....                       | 4.                                                                 |
| 51 to 75 .....                       | 7.                                                                 |
| 76 to 100 .....                      | 9.                                                                 |
| 101 to 150 .....                     | 12.                                                                |
| 151 to 200 .....                     | 14.                                                                |
| 201 to 300 .....                     | 17.                                                                |
| 301 to 400 .....                     | 20.                                                                |
| 401 to 500 .....                     | 22.                                                                |
| 501 to 1000 .....                    | 5 percent of total.                                                |
| 1001 and over .....                  | 50, plus 3 for each 100 over 1000.                                 |

224.5 Dispersion. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 and guest rooms required to provide communication features complying with 806.3 shall be dispersed among the various classes of guest rooms, and shall provide choices of types of guest rooms, number of beds, and other amenities comparable to the choices provided to other guests. Where the minimum number of guest rooms required to comply with 806 is not sufficient to allow for complete dispersion, guest rooms shall be dispersed in the following priority: guest room type, number of beds, and amenities. At least one guest room required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall also provide communication features complying with 806.3. Not more than 10 percent of guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall be used to satisfy the minimum number of guest rooms required to provide communication features complying with 806.3.

## 225 STORAGE

225.1 General. Storage facilities shall comply with 225.

225.2 Storage. Where storage is provided in accessible spaces, at least one of each type shall comply with 811.

225.2.1 Lockers. Where lockers are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one of each type, shall comply with 811.

225.2.2 Self-Service Shelving. Self-service shelves shall be located on an accessible route complying with 402. Self-service shelving shall not be required to comply with 308.

225.3 Self-Service Storage Facilities. Self-service storage facilities shall provide individual self-service storage spaces complying with these requirements in accordance with Table 225.3.

TABLE 225.3—SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITIES

| Total spaces in facility | Minimum number of spaces required to be accessible    |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 200 .....           | 5 percent, but no fewer than 1.                       |
| 201 and over .....       | 10, plus 2 percent of total number of units over 200. |

225.3.1 Dispersion. Individual self-service storage spaces shall be dispersed throughout the various classes of spaces provided. Where more classes of spaces are provided than the number required to be accessible, the number of spaces shall not be required to exceed that required by Table 225.3. Self-service storage spaces complying with Table 225.3 shall not be required to be dispersed among buildings in a multi-building facility.

## 226 DINING SURFACES AND WORK SURFACES

226.1 General. Where dining surfaces are provided for the consumption of food or drink, at least 5 percent of the seating spaces and standing spaces at the dining surfaces shall comply with 902. In addition, where work surfaces are provided for use by other than employees, at least 5 percent shall comply with 902.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Sales counters and service counters shall not be required to comply with 902.

2. Check writing surfaces provided at check-out aisles not required to comply with 904.3 shall not be required to comply with 902.

226.2 Dispersion. Dining surfaces and work surfaces required to comply with 902 shall be dispersed throughout the space or facility containing dining surfaces and work surfaces.

#### 227 SALES AND SERVICE

227.1 General. Where provided, check-out aisles, sales counters, service counters, food service lines, queues, and waiting lines shall comply with 227 and 904.

227.2 Check-Out Aisles. Where check-out aisles are provided, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table 227.2. Where check-out aisles serve different functions, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table 227.2 for each function. Where check-out aisles are dispersed throughout the building or facility, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be dispersed.

EXCEPTION: Where the selling space is under 5000 square feet (465 m<sup>2</sup>) no more than one check-out aisle complying with 904.3 shall be required.

TABLE 227.2—CHECK-OUT AISLES

| Number of check-out aisles of each function | Minimum number of check-out aisles of each function required to comply with 904.3 |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 4 .....                                | 1.                                                                                |
| 5 to 8 .....                                | 2.                                                                                |
| 9 to 15 .....                               | 3.                                                                                |
| 16 and over .....                           | 3, plus 20 percent of additional aisles.                                          |

227.2.1 Altered Check-Out Aisles. Where check-out aisles are altered, at least one of each check-out aisle serving each function shall comply with 904.3 until the number of check-out aisles complies with 227.2.

227.3 Counters. Where provided, at least one of each type of sales counter and service counter shall comply with 904.4. Where counters are dispersed throughout the building or facility, counters complying with 904.4 also shall be dispersed.

227.4 Food Service Lines. Food service lines shall comply with 904.5. Where self-service shelves are provided, at least 50 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type provided shall comply with 308.

227.5 Queues and Waiting Lines. Queues and waiting lines servicing counters or check-out aisles required to comply with 904.3 or 904.4 shall comply with 403.

#### 228 DEPOSITORIES, VENDING MACHINES, CHANGE MACHINES, MAIL BOXES, AND FUEL DISPENSERS

228.1 General. Where provided, at least one of each type of depository, vending machine, change machine, and fuel dispenser shall comply with 309.

EXCEPTION: Drive-up only depositories shall not be required to comply with 309.

228.2 Mail Boxes. Where mail boxes are provided in an interior location, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type shall comply with 309. In facilities with residential dwelling units, where mail boxes are provided for each residential dwelling unit, mail boxes complying with 309 shall be provided for each residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

#### 229 WINDOWS

229.1 General. Where glazed openings are provided in accessible rooms or spaces for operation by occupants, at least one opening shall comply with 309. Each glazed opening required by an administrative authority to be operable shall comply with 309.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Glazed openings in residential dwelling units required to comply with 809 shall not be required to comply with 229.

2. Glazed openings in guest rooms required to provide communication features and in guest rooms required to comply with 206.5.3 shall not be required to comply with 229.

#### 230 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

230.1 General. Where a two-way communication system is provided to gain admittance to a building or facility or to restricted areas within a building or facility, the system shall comply with 708.

#### 231 JUDICIAL FACILITIES

231.1 General. Judicial facilities shall comply with 231.

231.2 Courtrooms. Each courtroom shall comply with 808.

231.3 Holding Cells. Where provided, central holding cells and court-floor holding cells shall comply with 231.3.

231.3.1 Central Holding Cells. Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, one of each type shall comply with 807.2. Where central holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, at least one cell complying with 807.2 shall be provided.

231.3.2 Court-Floor Holding Cells. Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, each courtroom shall be served by one cell of each type complying with 807.2. Where court-floor holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, courtrooms shall be served by at

least one cell complying with 807.2. Cells may serve more than one courtroom.

231.4 Visiting Areas. Visiting areas shall comply with 231.4.

231.4.1 Cubicles and Counters. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with 902 on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with 904.4.2 on both the visitor and detainee sides.

EXCEPTION: The detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells required to comply with 231 shall not be required to comply with 902 or 904.4.2.

231.4.2 Partitions. Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with 904.6.

#### 232 DETENTION FACILITIES AND CORRECTIONAL FACILITIES

232.1 General. Buildings, facilities, or portions thereof, in which people are detained for penal or correction purposes, or in which the liberty of the inmates is restricted for security reasons shall comply with 232.

232.2 General Holding Cells and General Housing Cells. General holding cells and general housing cells shall be provided in accordance with 232.2.

EXCEPTION: Alterations to cells shall not be required to comply except to the extent determined by the Attorney General.

232.2.1 Cells with Mobility Features. At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of cells in a facility shall provide mobility features complying with 807.2.

232.2.1.1 Beds. In cells having more than 25 beds, at least 5 percent of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with 807.2.3.

232.2.2 Cells with Communication Features. At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of general holding cells and general housing cells equipped with audible emergency alarm systems and permanently installed telephones within the cell shall provide communication features complying with 807.3.

232.3 Special Holding Cells and Special Housing Cells. Where special holding cells or special housing cells are provided, at least one cell serving each purpose shall provide mobility features complying with 807.2. Cells subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification, and medical isolation.

EXCEPTION: Alterations to cells shall not be required to comply except to the extent determined by the Attorney General.

232.4 Medical Care Facilities. Patient bedrooms or cells required to comply with 223 shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to comply with 232.3.

232.5 Visiting Areas. Visiting areas shall comply with 232.5.

232.5.1 Cubicles and Counters. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with 902 on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with 904.4.2 on both the visitor and detainee or inmate sides.

EXCEPTION: The inmate or detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells or housing cells required to comply with 232 shall not be required to comply with 902 or 904.4.2.

232.5.2 Partitions. Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees or inmates at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with 904.6.

#### 233 RESIDENTIAL FACILITIES

233.1 General. Facilities with residential dwelling units shall comply with 233.

233.2 Residential Dwelling Units Provided by Entities Subject to HUD Section 504 Regulations.

233.2 Residential Dwelling Units Provided by Entities Subject to HUD Section 504 Regulations. Where facilities with residential dwelling units are provided by entities subject to regulations issued by the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) under section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, such entities shall provide residential dwelling units with mobility features complying with 809.2 in a number required by the applicable HUD regulations. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 shall be on an accessible route as required by 206. In addition, such entities shall provide residential dwelling units with communication features complying with 809.3 in a number required by the applicable HUD regulations. Entities subject to 233.2 shall not be required to comply with 233.3.

233.3 Residential Dwelling Units Provided by Entities Not Subject to HUD Section 504 Regulations. Facilities with residential dwelling units provided by entities not subject to regulations issued by the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) under Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, shall comply with 233.3.

233.3.1 Residential Dwelling Units with Mobility Features. Facilities, other than those containing emergency transportable housing units, shall comply with 233.3.1.1. Facilities containing emergency transportable housing units shall comply with 233.3.1.2.

233.3.1.1 Facilities Other Than Those Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, in the facility shall provide mobility features complying with 809.2

and shall be on an accessible route as required by 206.

EXCEPTION: Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of 233.3.1.1 shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are constructed under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.

233.3.1.2 Facilities Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. Emergency transportable housing units with mobility features shall be provided in accordance with 233.3.1.2.

233.3.1.2.1 Private Sites Provided by Occupant of Unit. Where emergency transportable housing units are installed on private sites provided by the occupant of the unit, entities shall provide emergency transportable housing units with mobility features complying with 809.2 as determined by a needs assessment conducted by the entity providing the emergency transportable housing units.

233.3.1.2.2 Group Sites. Where group sites are developed for the installation of emergency transportable housing units, entities shall comply with 233.3.1.2.2.

233.3.1.2.2.1 Unit Pads. At least 10 percent, but no fewer than one, of the unit pads prepared for the installation of emergency transportable housing units at each group site shall be designed and constructed to accept the installation of emergency transportable housing units with mobility features complying with 809.2 and shall be on an accessible route as required by 206.

233.3.1.2.2.2 Units Installed. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of the emergency transportable housing units installed at each group site shall provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

233.3.2 Residential Dwelling Units with Communication Features. Facilities, other than those containing emergency transportable housing units, shall comply with 233.3.2.1. Facilities containing emergency transportable housing units shall comply with 233.3.2.2.

233.3.2.1 Facilities Other Than Those Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, in the facility shall provide communication features complying with 809.3.

EXCEPTION: Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of 233.3.2.1 shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are constructed under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.

233.3.2.2 Facilities Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. Entities shall

provide emergency transportable housing units with residential dwelling unit smoke alarms complying with 809.3.1 and, where weather alert systems are provided, with weather alert systems complying with 809.3.4 as determined by a needs assessment conducted by the entity providing the emergency transportable housing units.

233.3.3 Residential Dwelling Units for Sale. Residential dwelling units offered for sale shall provide accessible features to the extent required by regulations issued by Federal agencies under the Americans with Disabilities Act or Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended.

233.3.4 Additions. Where an addition to an existing building results in an increase in the number of residential dwelling units, the requirements of 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.2.1 shall apply only to the residential dwelling units that are added until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.2.1. Residential dwelling units required to comply with 233.3.1.1 shall be on an accessible route as required by 206.

233.3.5 Alterations. Alterations shall comply with 233.3.5.

EXCEPTION: Where compliance with 809.2.1, 809.2.3, or 809.2.4 is technically infeasible, or where it is technically infeasible to provide an accessible route to a residential dwelling unit, the entity shall be permitted to alter or construct a comparable residential dwelling unit to comply with 809.2 provided that the minimum number of residential dwelling units required by 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.2.1, as applicable, is satisfied.

233.3.5.1 Alterations to Vacated Buildings. Where a building is vacated for the purposes of alteration, and the altered building contains more than 15 residential dwelling units, at least 5 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with 809.2 and shall be on an accessible route as required by 206. In addition, at least 2 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with 809.3.

233.3.5.2 Alterations to Individual Residential Dwelling Units. In individual residential dwelling units, where a bathroom or a kitchen is substantially altered, and at least one other room is altered, the requirements of 233.3.1 shall apply to the altered residential dwelling units until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.2.1. Residential dwelling units required to comply with 233.3.1.1 shall be on an accessible route as required by 206.

EXCEPTION: Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of 233.3.1.1 and 233.3.2.1 shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are altered under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.

233.3.6 Dispersion. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 and residential dwelling units required to provide communication features complying with 809.3 shall be dispersed among the various types of residential dwelling units in the facility and shall provide choices of residential dwelling units comparable to, and integrated with, those available to other residents.

EXCEPTION 1: Where multi-story residential dwelling units are one of the types of residential dwelling units provided, one-story residential dwelling units shall be permitted as a substitute for multi-story residential dwelling units where equivalent spaces and amenities are provided in the one-story residential dwelling unit.

2. Emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 shall not be required to be dispersed among the various types of residential dwelling units in a facility or to provide choices of residential dwelling units comparable to those available to other residents.

#### 234 AMUSEMENT RIDES

234.1 General. Amusement rides shall comply with 234.

EXCEPTION: Mobile or portable amusement rides shall not be required to comply with 234.

234.2 Load and Unload Areas. Load and unload areas serving amusement rides shall comply with 1002.3.

234.3 Minimum Number. Amusement rides shall provide at least one wheelchair space complying with 1002.4, or at least one amusement ride seat designed for transfer complying with 1002.5, or at least one transfer device complying with 1002.6.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Amusement rides that are controlled or operated by the rider shall not be required to comply with 234.3.

2. Amusement rides designed primarily for children, where children are assisted on and off the ride by an adult, shall not be required to comply with 234.3.

3. Amusement rides that do not provide amusement ride seats shall not be required to comply with 234.3.

234.4 Existing Amusement Rides. Where existing amusement rides are altered, the alteration shall comply with 234.4.

234.4.1 Load and Unload Areas. Where load and unload areas serving existing amusement rides are newly designed and constructed, the load and unload areas shall comply with 1002.3.

234.4.2 Minimum Number. Where the structural or operational characteristics of an amusement ride are altered to the extent that the amusement ride's performance differs from that specified by the manufacturer or the original design, the amusement ride shall comply with 234.3.

#### 235 RECREATIONAL BOATING FACILITIES

235.1 General. Recreational boating facilities shall comply with 235.

235.2 Boat Slips. Boat slips complying with 1003.3.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 235.2. Where the number of boat slips is not identified, each 40 feet (12 m) of boat slip edge provided along the perimeter of the pier shall be counted as one boat slip for the purpose of this section.

TABLE 235.2—BOAT SLIPS

| Total number of boat slips provided in facility | Minimum number of required accessible boat slips          |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 25 .....                                   | 1.                                                        |
| 26 to 50 .....                                  | 2.                                                        |
| 51 to 100 .....                                 | 3.                                                        |
| 101 to 150 .....                                | 4.                                                        |
| 151 to 300 .....                                | 5.                                                        |
| 301 to 400 .....                                | 6.                                                        |
| 401 to 500 .....                                | 7.                                                        |
| 501 to 600 .....                                | 8.                                                        |
| 601 to 700 .....                                | 9.                                                        |
| 701 to 800 .....                                | 10.                                                       |
| 801 to 900 .....                                | 11.                                                       |
| 901 to 1000 .....                               | 12.                                                       |
| 1001 and over .....                             | 12, plus 1 for every 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. |

235.2.1 Dispersion. Boat slips complying with 1003.3.1 shall be dispersed throughout the various types of boat slips provided. Where the minimum number of boat slips required to comply with 1003.3.1 has been met, no further dispersion shall be required.

235.3 Boarding Piers at Boat Launch Ramps. Where boarding piers are provided at boat launch ramps, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the boarding piers shall comply with 1003.3.2.

#### 236 EXERCISE MACHINES AND EQUIPMENT

236.1 General. At least one of each type of exercise machine and equipment shall comply with 1004.

#### 237 FISHING PIERS AND PLATFORMS

237.1 General. Fishing piers and platforms shall comply with 1005.

#### 238 GOLF FACILITIES

238.1 General. Golf facilities shall comply with 238.

238.2 Golf Courses. Golf courses shall comply with 238.2.

238.2.1 Teeing Grounds. Where one teeing ground is provided for a hole, the teeing ground shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground. Where two teeing grounds are provided for a hole, the forward teeing ground shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground. Where three or more teeing grounds are provided for a hole, at least two teeing grounds,

including the forward teeing ground, shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit each teeing ground.

EXCEPTION: In existing golf courses, the forward teeing ground shall not be required to be one of the teeing grounds on a hole designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground where compliance is not feasible due to terrain.

238.2.2 Putting Greens. Putting greens shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the putting green.

238.2.3 Weather Shelters. Where provided, weather shelters shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the weather shelter and shall comply with 1006.4.

238.3 Practice Putting Greens, Practice Teeing Grounds, and Teeing Stations at Driving Ranges. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds, and teeing stations at driving ranges shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds, and teeing stations at driving ranges.

#### 239 MINIATURE GOLF FACILITIES

239.1 General. Miniature golf facilities shall comply with 239.

239.2 Minimum Number. At least 50 percent of holes on miniature golf courses shall comply with 1007.3.

239.3 Miniature Golf Course Configuration. Miniature golf courses shall be configured so that the holes complying with 1007.3 are consecutive. Miniature golf courses shall provide an accessible route from the last hole complying with 1007.3 to the course entrance or exit without requiring travel through any other holes on the course.

EXCEPTION: One break in the sequence of consecutive holes shall be permitted provided that the last hole on the miniature golf course is the last hole in the sequence.

#### 240 PLAY AREAS

240.1 General. Play areas for children ages 2 and over shall comply with 240. Where separate play areas are provided within a site for specific age groups, each play area shall comply with 240.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Play areas located in family child care facilities where the proprietor actually resides shall not be required to comply with 240.

2. In existing play areas, where play components are relocated for the purposes of creating safe use zones and the ground surface is not altered or extended for more than one use zone, the play area shall not be required to comply with 240.

3. Amusement attractions shall not be required to comply with 240.

4. Where play components are altered and the ground surface is not altered, the ground surface shall not be required to comply with 1008.2.6 unless required by 202.4.

240.1.1 Additions. Where play areas are designed and constructed in phases, the requirements of 240 shall apply to each successive addition so that when the addition is completed, the entire play area complies with all the applicable requirements of 240.

240.2 Play Components. Where provided, play components shall comply with 240.2.

240.2.1 Ground Level Play Components. Ground level play components shall be provided in the number and types required by 240.2.1. Ground level play components that are provided to comply with 240.2.1.1 shall be permitted to satisfy the additional number required by 240.2.1.2 if the minimum required types of play components are satisfied. Where two or more required ground level play components are provided, they shall be dispersed throughout the play area and integrated with other play components.

240.2.1.1 Minimum Number and Types. Where ground level play components are provided, at least one of each type shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 1008.4.

240.2.1.2 Additional Number and Types. Where elevated play components are provided, ground level play components shall be provided in accordance with Table 240.2.1.2 and shall comply with 1008.4.

EXCEPTION: If at least 50 percent of the elevated play components are connected by a ramp and at least 3 of the elevated play components connected by the ramp are different types of play components, the play area shall not be required to comply with 240.2.1.2.

TABLE 240.2.1.2—NUMBER AND TYPES OF GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENTS REQUIRED TO BE ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

| Number of elevated play components provided | Minimum number of ground level play components required to be on an accessible route | Minimum number of different types of ground level play components required to be on an accessible route |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 .....                                     | Not applicable .....                                                                 | Not applicable.                                                                                         |
| 2 to 4 .....                                | 1 .....                                                                              | 1.                                                                                                      |
| 5 to 7 .....                                | 2 .....                                                                              | 2.                                                                                                      |
| 8 to 10 .....                               | 3 .....                                                                              | 3.                                                                                                      |
| 11 to 13 .....                              | 4 .....                                                                              | 3.                                                                                                      |
| 14 to 16 .....                              | 5 .....                                                                              | 3.                                                                                                      |
| 17 to 19 .....                              | 6 .....                                                                              | 3.                                                                                                      |

TABLE 240.2.1.2—NUMBER AND TYPES OF GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENTS REQUIRED TO BE ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES—Continued

| Number of elevated play components provided | Minimum number of ground level play components required to be on an accessible route | Minimum number of different types of ground level play components required to be on an accessible route |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 20 to 22 .....                              | 7 .....                                                                              | 4.                                                                                                      |
| 23 to 25 .....                              | 8 .....                                                                              | 4.                                                                                                      |
| 26 and over .....                           | 8, plus 1 for each additional 3, or fraction thereof, over 25.                       | 5.                                                                                                      |

240.2.2 Elevated Play Components. Where elevated play components are provided, at least 50 percent shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 1008.4.

#### 241 SAUNAS AND STEAM ROOMS

241.1 General. Where provided, saunas and steam rooms shall comply with 612.

EXCEPTION: Where saunas or steam rooms are clustered at a single location, no more than 5 percent of the saunas and steam rooms, but no fewer than one, of each type in each cluster shall be required to comply with 612.

#### 242 SWIMMING POOLS, WADING POOLS, AND SPAS

242.1 General. Swimming pools, wading pools, and spas shall comply with 242.

242.2 Swimming Pools. At least two accessible means of entry shall be provided for swimming pools. Accessible means of entry shall be swimming pool lifts complying with 1009.2; sloped entries complying with 1009.3; transfer walls complying with 1009.4; transfer systems complying with 1009.5; and pool stairs complying with 1009.6. At least one accessible means of entry provided shall comply with 1009.2 or 1009.3.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where a swimming pool has less than 300 linear feet (91 m) of swimming pool wall, no more than one accessible means of entry shall be required provided that the accessible means of entry is a swimming pool lift complying with 1009.2 or sloped entry complying with 1009.3.

2. Wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools, and other pools where user access is limited to one area shall not be required to provide more than one accessible means of entry provided that the accessible means of entry is a swimming pool lift complying with 1009.2, a sloped entry complying with 1009.3, or a transfer system complying with 1009.5.

3. Catch pools shall not be required to provide an accessible means of entry provided that the catch pool edge is on an accessible route.

242.3 Wading Pools. At least one accessible means of entry shall be provided for wading pools. Accessible means of entry shall comply with sloped entries complying with 1009.3.

242.4 Spas. At least one accessible means of entry shall be provided for spas. Accessible means of entry shall comply with swimming pool lifts complying with 1009.2; transfer walls complying with 1009.4; or transfer systems complying with 1009.5.

EXCEPTION: Where spas are provided in a cluster, no more than 5 percent, but no fewer than one, spa in each cluster shall be required to comply with 242.4.

#### 243 SHOOTING FACILITIES WITH FIRING POSITIONS

243.1 General. Where shooting facilities with firing positions are designed and constructed at a site, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of firing position shall comply with 1010.

[78 FR 59495, Sept. 26, 2013, as amended at 78 FR 67303, Nov. 12, 2013; 79 FR 26138, May 7, 2014; 79 FR 57804, Sept. 26, 2014]

### APPENDIX C TO PART 1191— ARCHITECTURAL BARRIERS ACT: SCOPING

#### ABA CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

##### F101 PURPOSE

F101.1 General. This document contains scoping and technical requirements for accessibility to sites, facilities, buildings, and elements by individuals with disabilities. The requirements are to be applied during the design, construction, addition to, alteration, and lease of sites, facilities, buildings, and elements to the extent required by regulations issued by Federal agencies under the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968 (ABA).

##### F102 DIMENSIONS FOR ADULTS AND CHILDREN

F102.1 General. The technical requirements are based on adult dimensions and anthropometrics. In addition, this document includes technical requirements based on children's dimensions and anthropometrics for drinking fountains, water closets, toilet compartments, lavatories and sinks, dining surfaces, and work surfaces.

##### F103 MODIFICATIONS AND WAIVERS

F103.1 General. The Architectural Barriers Act authorizes the Administrator of the

General Services Administration, the Secretary of the Department of Housing and Urban Development, the Secretary of the Department of Defense, and the United States Postal Service to modify or waive the accessibility standards for buildings and facilities covered by the Architectural Barriers Act on a case-by-case basis, upon application made by the head of the department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States concerned. The General Services Administration, the Department of Housing and Urban Development, the Department of Defense, and the United States Postal Service may grant a modification or waiver only upon a determination that it is clearly necessary. Section 502(b)(1) of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 authorizes the Access Board to ensure that modifications and waivers are based on findings of fact and are not inconsistent with the Architectural Barriers Act.

#### F104 CONVENTIONS

**F104.1 Dimensions.** Dimensions that are not stated as "maximum" or "minimum" are absolute.

**F104.1.1 Construction and Manufacturing Tolerances.** All dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances except where the requirement is stated as a range with specific minimum and maximum end points.

**F104.2 Calculation of Percentages.** Where the required number of elements or facilities to be provided is determined by calculations of ratios or percentages and remainders or fractions result, the next greater whole number of such elements or facilities shall be provided. Where the determination of the required size or dimension of an element or facility involves ratios or percentages, rounding down for values less than one half shall be permitted.

#### F105 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**F105.1 General.** The standards listed in F105.2 are incorporated by reference in this document and are part of the requirements to the prescribed extent of each such reference. The Director of the Federal Register has approved these standards for incorporation by reference in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of the referenced standards may be inspected at the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, 1331 F Street NW., Suite 1000, Washington, DC 20004; at the Department of Justice, Civil Rights Division, Disability Rights Section, 1425 New York Avenue NW., Washington, DC 20005; at the Department of Transportation, 1200 New Jersey Avenue SE., Washington, DC 20590; or at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call (202) 741-6030, or go to [http://www.archives.gov/federal\\_register/code\\_of\\_federal\\_regulations/ibr\\_locations.html](http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html).

*eral\_register/code\_of\_federal\_regulations/ibr\_locations.html*.

**F105.2 Referenced Standards.** The specific edition of the standards listed below are referenced in this document. Where differences occur between this document and the referenced standards, this document applies.

**F105.2.1 ANSI/BHMA.** Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th floor, New York, NY 10017 (<http://www.buildershardware.com>).

ANSI/BHMA A156.10-1999 American National Standard for Power Operated Pedestrian Doors (see 404.3).

ANSI/BHMA A156.19-1997 American National Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors (see 404.3, 408.3.2.1, and 409.3.1).

ANSI/BHMA A156.19-2002 American National Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors (see 404.3, 408.3.2.1, and 409.3.1).

**F105.2.2 ASME.** Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, New York 10016 (<http://www.asme.org>).

ASME A17.1-2000 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, including ASME A17.1a-2002 Addenda and ASME A17.1b-2003 Addenda (see 407.1, 408.1, 409.1, and 810.9).

ASME A18.1-1999 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts, including ASME A18.1a 2001 Addenda and ASME A18.1b-2001 Addenda (see 410.1).

ASME A18.1-2003 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts, (see 410.1).

**F105.2.3 ASTM.** Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 100 Bar Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania 19428 (<http://www.astm.org>).

ASTM F1292-99 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.2).

ASTM F1292-04 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surfacing Materials Within the Use Zone of Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.2).

ASTM F1487-01 Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use (see F106.5).

ASTM F1951-99 Standard Specification for Determination of Accessibility of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment (see 1008.2.6.1).

**F105.2.4 ICC/IBC.** Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from the International Code Council, 500 New Jersey Avenue NW., Washington, DC 20001 ([www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org)).

International Building Code, 2000 Edition (see F207.1, F207.2, F216.4.2, F216.4.3, and 1005.2.1).

International Building Code, 2001 Supplement (see F207.1 and F207.2).

International Building Code, 2003 Edition (see F207.1, F207.2, F216.4.2, F216.4.3, and 1005.2.1).

F105.2.5 NFPA. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02169-7471, (<http://www.nfpa.org>).

NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm Code, 1999 Edition (see 702.1, 809.3.1.1, and 809.3.1.2).

NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm Code, 2002 Edition (see 702.1, 809.3.1.1, and 809.3.1.2).

#### F106 DEFINITIONS

F106.1 General. For the purpose of this document, the terms defined in F106.5 have the indicated meaning.

F106.2 Terms Defined in Referenced Standard. Terms not defined in F106.5 or in regulations issued by the Administrator of the General Services Administration, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, or the United States Postal Service to implement the Architectural Barriers Act but specifically defined in a referenced standard, shall have the specified meaning from the referenced standard unless otherwise stated.

F106.3 Undefined Terms. The meaning of terms not specifically defined in F106.5 or in regulations issued by the Administrator of the General Services Administration, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, or the United States Postal Service to implement the Architectural Barriers Act or in referenced standards shall be as defined by collegiate dictionaries in the sense that the context implies.

F106.4 Interchangeability. Words, terms and phrases used in the singular include the plural and those used in the plural include the singular.

#### F106.5 Defined Terms.

Accessible. A site, building, facility, or portion thereof that complies with this part.

Accessible Means of Egress. A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from any point in a building or facility that provides an accessible route to an area of refuge, a horizontal exit, or a public way.

Addition. An expansion, extension, or increase in the gross floor area or height of a building or facility.

Administrative Authority. A governmental agency that adopts or enforces regulations and guidelines for the design, construction, or alteration of buildings and facilities.

Alteration. A change to a building or facility that affects or could affect the usability of the building or facility or portion thereof. Alterations include, but are not limited to,

remodeling, renovation, rehabilitation, reconstruction, historic restoration, resurfacing of circulation paths or vehicular ways, changes or rearrangement of the structural parts or elements, and changes or rearrangement in the plan configuration of walls and full-height partitions. Normal maintenance, reroofing, painting or wallpapering, or changes to mechanical and electrical systems are not alterations unless they affect the usability of the building or facility.

Amusement Attraction. Any facility, or portion of a facility, located within an amusement park or theme park which provides amusement without the use of an amusement device. Amusement attractions include, but are not limited to, fun houses, barrels, and other attractions without seats.

Amusement Ride. A system that moves persons through a fixed course within a defined area for the purpose of amusement.

Amusement Ride Seat. A seat that is built-in or mechanically fastened to an amusement ride intended to be occupied by one or more passengers.

Area of Sport Activity. That portion of a room or space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.

Assembly Area. A building or facility, or portion thereof, used for the purpose of entertainment, worship, educational or civic gatherings, or similar purposes. For the purposes of these requirements, assembly areas include, but are not limited to, classrooms, lecture halls, courtrooms, public meeting rooms, public hearing rooms, legislative chambers, motion picture houses, auditoria, theaters, playhouses, dinner theaters, concert halls, centers for the performing arts, amphitheaters, arenas, stadiums, grandstands, or convention centers.

Assistive Listening System (ALS). An amplification system utilizing transmitters, receivers, and coupling devices to bypass the acoustical space between a sound source and a listener by means of induction loop, radio frequency, infrared, or direct-wired equipment.

Boarding Pier. A portion of a pier where a boat is temporarily secured for the purpose of embarking or disembarking.

Boards. Boards include, but are not limited to, wood, plastic, metal, and composite products.

Boat Launch Ramp. A sloped surface designed for launching and retrieving trailered boats and other water craft to and from a body of water.

Boat Slip. That portion of a pier, main pier, finger pier, or float where a boat is moored for the purpose of berthing, embarking, or disembarking.

Building. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy.

Camp Shelter. A partially enclosed structure that provides campers and hikers cover

from weather and that does not contain plumbing fixtures or kitchen appliances. Camp shelters are not transient lodging facilities or residential dwelling units.

**Camping Facility.** A site, or portion of a site, developed for outdoor recreational purposes that contains camping units.

**Camping Unit.** An outdoor space in a camping facility used for camping that contains outdoor constructed features, parking spaces for recreational vehicles or other vehicles, tent pads or tent platforms, or camp shelters.

**Catch Pool.** A pool or designated section of a pool used as a terminus for water slide flumes.

**Characters.** Letters, numbers, punctuation marks and typographic symbols.

**Children's Use.** Describes spaces and elements specifically designed for use primarily by people 12 years old and younger.

**Circulation Path.** An exterior or interior way of passage provided for pedestrian travel, including but not limited to, walks, hallways, courtyards, elevators, platform lifts, ramps, stairways, and landings.

**Closed-Circuit Telephone.** A telephone with a dedicated line such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entry to a facility.

**Common Use.** Interior or exterior circulation paths, rooms, spaces, or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.

**Cross Slope.** The slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel (see running slope).

**Curb Ramp.** A short ramp cutting through a curb or built up to it.

**Detectable Warning.** A standardized surface feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn of hazards on a circulation path.

**Element.** An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space, or site.

**Elevated Play Component.** A play component that is approached above or below grade and that is part of a composite play structure consisting of two or more play components attached or functionally linked to create an integrated unit providing more than one play activity.

**Emergency Transportable Housing Unit.** A single or multiple section prefabricated structure that is transportable by a single transport vehicle and that can be set-up and installed on a temporary site in response to an emergency need for temporary housing. Such structures include, but are not limited to, travel trailers, park models, manufactured housing, and other factory-built housing. For the purposes of this document, emergency transportable housing units are considered a type of residential dwelling unit.

**Employee Work Area.** All or any portion of a space used only by employees and used only for work. Corridors, toilet rooms, kitchenettes and break rooms are not employee work areas.

**Entrance.** Any access point to a building or portion of a building or facility used for the purpose of entering. An entrance includes the approach walk, the vertical access leading to the entrance platform, the entrance platform itself, vestibule if provided, the entry door or gate, and the hardware of the entry door or gate.

**Facility.** All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, elements, and pedestrian routes or vehicular ways located on a site.

**Gangway.** A variable-sloped pedestrian walkway that links a fixed structure or land with a floating structure. Gangways that connect to vessels are not addressed by this document.

**Golf Car Passage.** A continuous passage on which a motorized golf car can operate.

**Ground Level Play Component.** A play component that is approached and exited at the ground level.

**Joint Use.** Interior or exterior rooms, spaces, or elements that are common space available for use by all occupants of the building. Joint use does not include mechanical or custodial rooms, or areas occupied by other tenants.

**Lease.** Any agreement which establishes the relationship of landlord and tenant.

**Mail Boxes.** Receptacles for the receipt of documents, packages, or other deliverable matter. Mail boxes include, but are not limited to, post office boxes and receptacles provided by commercial mail-receiving agencies, apartment facilities, or schools.

**Marked Crossing.** A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.

**Mezzanine.** An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story with an aggregate floor area of not more than one-third of the area of the room or space in which the level or levels are located. Mezzanines have sufficient elevation that space for human occupancy can be provided on the floor below.

**Military Installation.** A base, camp, post, station, yard, center, homeport facility for any ship, or other activity or operation under the jurisdiction of the Department of Defense, including any leased facility. Military installation does not include any facility used primarily for civil works, rivers and harbors projects, or flood control projects. Multiple, contiguous, or collocated bases, camps, posts, stations, yards, centers, or home ports shall not be considered as constituting a single military installation.

**Occupant Load.** The number of persons for which the means of egress of a building or portion of a building is designed.

**Operable Part.** A component of an element used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, or adjust the element.

**Outdoor Constructed Features.** Picnic tables, fire rings, grills, fireplaces, wood stoves, trash and recycling receptacles, water hydrants, utility and sewage hookups, outdoor rinsing showers, benches, and viewing scopes provided at outdoor recreation facilities.

**Picnic Facility.** A site, or portion of a site, developed for outdoor recreational purposes that contains picnic units.

**Picnic Unit.** An outdoor space in a picnic facility used for picnicking that contains outdoor constructed features.

**Pictogram.** A pictorial symbol that represents activities, facilities, or concepts.

**Play Area.** A portion of a site containing play components designed and constructed for children.

**Play Component.** An element intended to generate specific opportunities for play, socialization, or learning. Play components are manufactured or natural; and are stand-alone or part of a composite play structure.

**Public Entrance.** An entrance that is not a service entrance or a restricted entrance.

**Public Use.** Interior or exterior rooms, spaces, or elements that are made available to the public. Public use may be provided at a building or facility that is privately or publicly owned.

**Public Way.** Any street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a public street, which has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use, and which has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3050 mm).

**Qualified Historic Building or Facility.** A building or facility that is listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated as historic under an appropriate State or local law.

**Ramp.** A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than 1:20.

**Residential Dwelling Unit.** A unit intended to be used as a residence, that is primarily long-term in nature. Residential dwelling units do not include transient lodging, inpatient medical care, licensed long-term care, and detention or correctional facilities.

**Restricted Entrance.** An entrance that is made available for common use on a controlled basis but not public use and that is not a service entrance.

**Running Slope.** The slope that is parallel to the direction of travel (see cross slope).

**Self-Service Storage.** Building or facility designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.

**Service Entrance.** An entrance intended primarily for delivery of goods or services.

**Site.** A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

**Soft Contained Play Structure.** A play structure made up of one or more play components where the user enters a fully enclosed play environment that utilizes pliable materials, such as plastic, netting, or fabric.

**Space.** A definable area, such as a room, toilet room, hall, assembly area, entrance, storage room, alcove, courtyard, or lobby.

**Story.** That portion of a building or facility designed for human occupancy included between the upper surface of a floor and upper surface of the floor or roof next above. A story containing one or more mezzanines has more than one floor level.

**Structural Frame.** The columns and the girders, beams, and trusses having direct connections to the columns and all other members that are essential to the stability of the building or facility as a whole.

**Tactile.** An object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.

**Technically Infeasible.** With respect to an alteration of a building or a facility, something that has little likelihood of being accomplished because existing structural conditions would require removing or altering a loadbearing member that is an essential part of the structural frame; or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces, or features that are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements.

**Teeing Ground.** In golf, the starting place for the hole to be played.

**Trail.** A pedestrian route developed primarily for outdoor recreational purposes. A pedestrian route developed primarily to connect elements, spaces, or facilities within a site is not a trail.

**Trailhead.** An outdoor space that is designated by an entity responsible for administering or maintaining a trail to serve as an access point to the trail. The junction of two or more trails or the undeveloped junction of a trail and a road is not a trailhead.

**Transfer Device.** Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility aid to and from an amusement ride seat.

**Transient Lodging.** A building or facility containing one or more guest room(s) for sleeping that provides accommodations that are primarily short-term in nature. Transient lodging does not include residential dwelling units intended to be used as a residence, inpatient medical care facilities, licensed long-term care facilities, detention or correctional facilities, or private buildings or facilities that contain not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that are actually occupied by the proprietor as the residence of such proprietor.

**Transition Plate.** A sloping pedestrian walking surface located at the end(s) of a gangway.

**TTY.** An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Machinery that employs interactive text-based communication through the transmission of coded signals across the telephone network. TTYS may include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons) or computers with special modems. TTYS are also called text telephones.

**Use Zone.** The ground level area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure or play equipment that is designated by ASTM F 1487 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) for unrestricted circulation around the play equipment and where it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the play equipment.

**Vehicular Way.** A route provided for vehicular traffic, such as in a street, driveway, or parking facility.

**Viewing Area.** An outdoor space developed for viewing landscapes, wildlife, or other points of interest.

**Walk.** An exterior prepared surface for pedestrian use, including pedestrian areas such as plazas and courts.

**Wheelchair Space.** Space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

**Work Area Equipment.** Any machine, instrument, engine, motor, pump, conveyor, or other apparatus used to perform work. As used in this document, this term shall apply only to equipment that is permanently installed or built-in in employee work areas subject to the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA). Work area equipment does not include passenger elevators and other accessible means of vertical transportation.

## ABA CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

### F201 APPLICATION

**F201.1 Scope.** All areas of newly designed and newly constructed buildings and facilities and altered or leased portions of existing buildings and facilities shall comply with these requirements.

**F201.2 Application Based on Building or Facility Use.** Where a site, building, facility, room, or space contains more than one use, each portion shall comply with the applicable requirements for that use.

**F201.3 Temporary and Permanent Structures.** These requirements shall apply to temporary and permanent buildings and facilities.

**F201.4 Requirements Apply to Facilities Constructed or Altered by or on Behalf of Federal Agencies.** The requirements in F216.13, F244 through F248, and 1011 through 1019 shall apply only to facilities constructed or altered by federal agencies or by non-federal

entities on federal land on behalf of federal agencies pursuant to a concession contract, partnership agreement, or similar arrangement.

**F201.4.1 Documentation and Notification When Exceptions Used for Trails and Beach Access Routes.** Federal agencies shall document the basis for not fully complying with a specific provision in 1017 or 1018 on a portion of a trail or beach access route based on Exception 1 in 1017 or Exception 1 in 1018, and shall maintain the documentation with the records for the trail or beach project. Federal agencies shall notify the Access Board if an entire trail is exempted from complying with 1017 based on Exception 2 in 1017.1, and if a beach access route is not provided based on Exception 2 in 1018.1.

### F202 EXISTING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES

**F202.1 General.** Additions and alterations to existing buildings or facilities, including leased buildings or facilities, shall comply with F202.

**F202.2 Additions.** Each addition to an existing building or facility shall comply with the requirements for new construction.

**F202.2.1 Accessible Route.** At least one accessible route shall be provided within the site from accessible parking spaces and accessible passenger loading zones; public streets and sidewalks; and public transportation stops to an accessible entrance serving the addition. If the only accessible entrances serving the addition are provided in the existing building or facility, the accessible route shall connect at least one existing entrance to all accessible spaces and elements within the addition. In addition, elements and spaces specified in F202.2.2 through F202.2.5 shall be on an accessible route.

**F202.2.2 Entrance.** Where an entrance is not provided in an addition, at least one entrance in the existing building or facility shall comply with F206.4 and shall serve the addition.

**F202.2.3 Toilet and Bathing Facilities.** Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are not provided in an addition but are provided in the existing building or facility to serve the addition, the toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall comply with F202.2.3.

**EXCEPTION:** In alterations to areas serving additions where it is technically infeasible to comply with 603, altering existing toilet or bathing rooms is not required where a single unisex toilet room or bathing room complying with F213.2.1 is provided to serve the addition.

**F202.2.3.1 Existing Toilet Facility.** Where existing toilet facilities are provided in the existing building or facility, at least one toilet facility for men and at least one toilet facility for women shall comply with F213.2 and F213.3 and shall serve the addition.

EXCEPTION: Where only one toilet facility is provided in the existing building or facility, one toilet facility shall comply with F213.2 and F213.3 and shall serve the addition.

F202.2.3.2 Existing Bathing Facility. Where existing bathing facilities are provided in the existing building or facility, at least one bathing facility for men and at least one bathing facility for women shall comply with F213.2 and F213.3 and shall serve the addition.

EXCEPTION: Where only one bathing facility is provided in the existing building or facility, one bathing facility shall comply with F213.2 and F213.3 and shall serve the addition.

F202.2.4 Public Telephone. Where a public telephone is not provided in an addition but is provided in the existing building or facility to serve the addition, at least one public telephone in the existing building or facility shall comply with F217.

F202.2.5 Drinking Fountain. Where a drinking fountain is not provided in an addition but is provided in the existing building or facility to serve the addition, at least one drinking fountain in the existing building or facility shall comply with 602.1 through 602.6.

F202.3 Alterations. Where existing elements or spaces are altered, each altered element or space shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 2.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Unless required by F202.4, where elements or spaces are altered and the circulation path to the altered element or space is not altered, an accessible route shall not be required.

2. In alterations, where compliance with applicable requirements is technically infeasible, the alteration shall comply with the requirements to the maximum extent feasible.

3. Residential dwelling units not required to be accessible in compliance with a standard issued pursuant to the Architectural Barriers Act or Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, shall not be required to comply with F202.3.

4. Where elements or spaces are altered in camping facilities, picnic facilities, viewing areas, or trailheads and the circulation path to the altered element or space is not altered, the circulation path shall not be required to comply with 1016.

F202.3.1 Prohibited Reduction in Access. An alteration that decreases or has the effect of decreasing the accessibility of a building or facility below the requirements for new construction at the time of the alteration is prohibited.

F202.3.2 Extent of Application. An alteration of an existing element, space, or area of a building or facility shall not impose a requirement for accessibility greater than required for new construction.

F202.4 Alterations Affecting Primary Function Areas. In addition to the requirements of F202.3, an alteration that affects or could affect the usability of or access to an area containing a primary function shall be made so as to ensure that, to the maximum extent feasible, the path of travel to the altered area, including the rest rooms, telephones, and drinking fountains serving the altered area, are readily accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, unless such alterations are disproportionate to the overall alterations in terms of cost and scope as determined under criteria established by the Administrator of the General Services Administration, the Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, or the United States Postal Service.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Residential dwelling units shall not be required to comply with F202.4.

2. Camping facilities, picnic facilities, viewing areas, trailheads, trails, and beach access routes shall not be required to comply with F202.4.

F202.5 Alterations to Qualified Historic Buildings and Facilities. Alterations to a qualified historic building or facility shall comply with F202.3 and F202.4.

EXCEPTION: Where the State Historic Preservation Officer or Advisory Council on Historic Preservation determines that compliance with the requirements for accessible routes, entrances, or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, the exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities for that element shall be permitted to apply.

F202.6 Leases. Buildings or facilities for which new leases are negotiated by the Federal government after the effective date of the revised standards issued pursuant to the Architectural Barriers Act, including new leases for buildings or facilities previously occupied by the Federal government, shall comply with F202.6.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Buildings or facilities leased for use by officials servicing disasters on a temporary, emergency basis shall not be required to comply with F202.6.

2. Buildings or facilities leased for 12 months or less shall not be required to comply with F202.6 provided that the lease may not be extended or renewed.

F202.6.1 Joint Use Areas. Joint use areas serving the leased space shall comply with F202.6.

EXCEPTION: Alterations and additions to joint use areas serving the leased space shall not be required to comply with F202.2, F202.3, and F202.5 provided that the alterations are not undertaken by or on behalf of the Federal government.

F202.6.2 Accessible Route. Primary function areas, as defined by Administrator of the General Services Administration, the

Secretary of Defense, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the United States Postal Service, shall be served by at least one accessible route complying with F206. Elements and spaces required to be accessible by F202.6 shall be on an accessible route complying with F206.

EXCEPTION: Fire alarms required by F202.6.5.2 and assistive listening systems required by F202.6.5.5 shall not be required to be on an accessible route.

F202.6.3 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. Where provided, toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall comply with F202.6.3.

F202.6.3.1 Multiple Facilities. At least one toilet facility or bathing facility for each sex on each floor that has toilet facilities or bathing facilities shall comply with F213.2 and F213.3.

F202.6.3.2 Single Facilities. Where only one toilet or bathing facility is provided in a building or facility for each sex, either one unisex toilet or bathing facility, or one toilet or bathing facility for each sex, shall comply with F213.2 and F213.3.

F202.6.4 Parking. Parking shall comply with F208.

F202.6.5 Other Elements and Spaces. Where provided, the following elements and spaces shall comply with F202.6.5.

F202.6.5.1 Drinking Fountains. Drinking fountains shall comply with F211.

F202.6.5.2 Fire Alarms. Fire alarms shall comply with F215.

EXCEPTION: Fire alarms shall not be required to comply with 702 where existing power sources must be upgraded to meet the requirement.

F202.6.5.3 Public Telephones. Public telephones shall comply with F217.

F202.6.5.4 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces. Dining surfaces and work surfaces shall comply with F226.

F202.6.5.5 Assembly Areas. Assistive listening systems shall comply with F219 and assembly seating shall comply with F221.

F202.6.5.6 Sales and Service Counters. Sales and service counters shall comply with F227.

F202.6.5.7 Depositories, Vending Machines, Change Machines, and Mail Boxes. Depositories, vending machines, change machines, and mail boxes shall comply with F228.

F202.6.5.8 Residential Dwelling Units. Residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, shall comply with F233.

F202.6.5.9 Emergency Transportable Housing Units with Mobility Features. Where emergency transportable housing units are installed on existing commercial sites, entities shall provide emergency transportable housing units with mobility features complying with 809.2 as determined by a needs assessment conducted by the entity pro-

viding the emergency transportable housing units.

F202.6.5.10 Emergency Transportable Housing Units with Communication Features. Where emergency transportable housing units are installed on existing commercial sites, entities shall provide emergency transportable housing units with residential dwelling unit smoke alarms complying with 809.3.1 and, where weather alert systems are provided, with weather alert systems complying with 809.3.4 as determined by a needs assessment conducted by the entity providing the emergency transportable housing units.

#### F203 GENERAL EXCEPTIONS

F203.1 General. Sites, buildings, facilities, and elements are exempt from these requirements to the extent specified by F203.

F203.2 Existing Elements. Elements in compliance with an earlier standard issued pursuant to the Architectural Barriers Act or Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended shall not be required to comply with these requirements unless altered.

F203.3 Construction Sites. Structures and sites directly associated with the actual processes of construction, including but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, materials storage, and construction trailers shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. Portable toilet units provided for use exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site shall not be required to comply with F213 or to be on an accessible route.

F203.4 Raised Areas. Areas raised primarily for purposes of security, life safety, or fire safety, including but not limited to, observation or lookout galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers, or life guard stands shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

F203.5 Limited Access Spaces. Spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, or very narrow passageways shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

F203.6 Machinery Spaces. Spaces frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair, or occasional monitoring of equipment shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. Machinery spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits or elevator penthouses; mechanical, electrical or communications equipment rooms; piping or equipment catwalks; water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations; electric substations and transformer vaults; and highway and tunnel utility facilities.

**F203.7 Single Occupant Structures.** Single occupant structures accessed only by passageways below grade or elevated above standard curb height, including but not limited to, toll booths that are accessed only by underground tunnels, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**F203.8 Detention and Correctional Facilities.** In detention and correctional facilities, common use areas that are used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel and that do not serve holding cells or housing cells required to comply with F232, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**F203.9 Residential Facilities.** In facilities with residential dwelling units, common use areas that do not serve residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 or emergency transportable housing unit pads designed and constructed to accept the installation of units with mobility features complying with 809.2 shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**F203.10 Raised Refereeing, Judging, and Scoring Areas.** Raised structures used solely for refereeing, judging, or scoring a sport shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**F203.11 Water Slides.** Water slides shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**F203.12 Animal Containment Areas.** Animal containment areas that are not for public use shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**F203.13 Raised Boxing or Wrestling Rings.** Raised boxing or wrestling rings shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**F203.14 Raised Diving Boards and Diving Platforms.** Raised diving boards and diving platforms shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

#### **F204 PROTRUDING OBJECTS**

**F204.1 General.** Protruding objects on circulation paths shall comply with 307.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Within areas of sport activity, protruding objects on circulation paths shall not be required to comply with 307.

2. Within play areas, protruding objects on circulation paths shall not be required to comply with 307 provided that ground level accessible routes provide vertical clearance in compliance with 1008.2.

#### **F205 OPERABLE PARTS**

**F205.1 General.** Operable parts on accessible elements, accessible routes, and in accessible rooms and spaces shall comply with 309.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Operable parts that are intended for use only by service or maintenance personnel shall not be required to comply with 309.

2. Electrical or communication receptacles serving a dedicated use shall not be required to comply with 309.

3. Except within emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, where two or more outlets are provided in a kitchen above a length of counter top that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance, one outlet shall not be required to comply with 309.

4. Floor electrical receptacles shall not be required to comply with 309.

5. HVAC diffusers shall not be required to comply with 309.

6. Except for light switches, where redundant controls are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to comply with 309.

7. Cleats and other boat securement devices shall not be required to comply with 309.3.

8. Exercise machines and exercise equipment shall not be required to comply with 309.

9. Operable parts located within residential dwelling units not required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 and transient lodging guest rooms not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall not be required to comply with 309.

10. In emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, operable parts located beneath the unit body shall not be required to comply with 309.

11. Water shut-off valves shall not be required to comply with 309.

#### **F206 ACCESSIBLE ROUTES**

**F206.1 General.** Accessible routes shall be provided in accordance with F206 and shall comply with Chapter 4 except that the exemptions at 403.5, 405.5, and 405.8 shall not apply.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Accessible routes shall not be required where outdoor recreation access routes are provided at camping facilities in accordance with F244.5, picnic facilities in accordance with F245.4, viewing areas in accordance with F246.3, or trailheads in accordance with F247.3.2.

2. Accessible routes shall not be required where camping facilities, picnic facilities, viewing areas, or outdoor constructed features are provided on trails.

3. Accessible routes shall not be required where beach access routes are provided in accordance with F248.

**F206.2 Where Required.** Accessible routes shall be provided where required by F206.2.

**F206.2.1 Site Arrival Points.** At least one accessible route shall be provided within the

site from accessible parking spaces and accessible passenger loading zones; public streets and sidewalks; and public transportation stops to the accessible building or facility entrance they serve.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by F202.5, no more than one accessible route from a site arrival point to an accessible entrance shall be required.

2. An accessible route shall not be required between site arrival points and the building or facility entrance if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.

F206.2.2 Within a Site. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements, and accessible spaces that are on the same site.

EXCEPTION: An accessible route shall not be required between accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements and accessible spaces if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.

F206.2.3 Multi-Story Buildings and Facilities. At least one accessible route shall connect each story and mezzanine in multi-story buildings and facilities.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where a two story building or facility has one story with an occupant load of five or fewer persons that does not contain public use space, that story shall not be required to be connected to the story above or below.

2. In detention and correctional facilities, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories where cells with mobility features required to comply with 807.2, all common use areas serving cells with mobility features required to comply with 807.2, and all public use areas are on an accessible route.

3. In facilities with residential dwelling units, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories where residential dwelling units with mobility features required to comply with 809.2, all common use areas serving residential dwelling units with mobility features required to comply with 809.2, and public use areas serving residential dwelling units are on an accessible route.

4. Within multi-story transient lodging guest rooms with mobility features required to comply with 806.2, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories provided that spaces complying with 806.2 are on an accessible route and sleeping accommodations for two persons minimum are provided on a story served by an accessible route.

5. In air traffic control towers, an accessible route shall not be required to serve the cab and the floor immediately below the cab.

6. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are

permitted by F202.5, an accessible route shall not be required to stories located above or below the accessible story.

F206.2.3.1 Stairs and Escalators in Existing Buildings. In alterations and additions, where an escalator or stair is provided where none existed previously and major structural modifications are necessary for the installation, an accessible route shall be provided between the levels served by the escalator or stair unless exempted by F206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 6.

F206.2.4 Spaces and Elements. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements within the building or facility which are otherwise connected by a circulation path unless exempted by F206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 6.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Raised courtroom stations, including judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, and court reporters' stations shall not be required to provide vertical access provided that the required clear floor space, maneuvering space, and, if appropriate, electrical service are installed at the time of initial construction to allow future installation of a means of vertical access complying with 405, 407, 408, or 410 without requiring substantial reconstruction of the space.

2. In assembly areas with fixed seating required to comply with F221, an accessible route shall not be required to serve fixed seating where wheelchair spaces required to be on an accessible route are not provided.

3. Accessible routes shall not be required to connect mezzanines where buildings or facilities have no more than one story. In addition, accessible routes shall not be required to connect stories or mezzanines where multi-story buildings or facilities are exempted by F206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 6.

F206.2.5 Restaurants and Cafeterias. In restaurants and cafeterias, an accessible route shall be provided to all dining areas, including raised or sunken dining areas, and outdoor dining areas.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In alterations, an accessible route shall not be required to existing raised or sunken dining areas, or to all parts of existing outdoor dining areas where the same services and decor are provided in an accessible space usable by the public and not restricted to use by people with disabilities.

2. In sports facilities, tiered dining areas providing seating required to comply with F221 shall be required to have accessible routes serving at least 25 percent of the dining area provided that accessible routes serve seating complying with F221 and each tier is provided with the same services.

F206.2.6 Performance Areas. Where a circulation path directly connects a performance area to an assembly seating area, an accessible route shall directly connect the assembly seating area with the performance

area. An accessible route shall be provided from performance areas to ancillary areas or facilities used by performers unless exempted by F206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 6.

F206.2.7 Press Boxes. Press boxes in assembly areas shall be on an accessible route.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. An accessible route shall not be required to press boxes in bleachers that have points of entry at only one level provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet (46 m<sup>2</sup>) maximum.

2. An accessible route shall not be required to free-standing press boxes that are elevated above grade 12 feet (3660 mm) minimum provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet (46 m<sup>2</sup>) maximum.

F206.2.8 Amusement Rides. Amusement rides required to comply with F234 shall provide accessible routes in accordance with F206.2.8. Accessible routes serving amusement rides shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1002.2.

F206.2.8.1 Load and Unload Areas. Load and unload areas shall be on an accessible route. Where load and unload areas have more than one loading or unloading position, at least one loading and unloading position shall be on an accessible route.

F206.2.8.2 Wheelchair Spaces, Ride Seats Designed for Transfer, and Transfer Devices. When amusement rides are in the load and unload position, wheelchair spaces complying with 1002.4, amusement ride seats designed for transfer complying with 1002.5, and transfer devices complying with 1002.6 shall be on an accessible route.

F206.2.9 Recreational Boating Facilities. Boat slips required to comply with F235.2 and boarding piers at boat launch ramps required to comply with F235.3 shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1003.2.

F206.2.10 Bowling Lanes. Where bowling lanes are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one of each type of bowling lane, shall be on an accessible route.

F206.2.11 Court Sports. In court sports, at least one accessible route shall directly connect both sides of the court.

F206.2.12 Exercise Machines and Equipment. Exercise machines and equipment required to comply with F236 shall be on an accessible route.

F206.2.13 Fishing Piers and Platforms. Fishing piers and platforms shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving fishing piers and platforms shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1005.1.

F206.2.14 Golf Facilities. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible elements and spaces within the boundary of the golf course. In addition, accessible routes serving golf car rental areas; bag drop areas; course weather shelters complying with F238.2.3; course toilet rooms; and practice

putting greens, practice teeing grounds, and teeing stations at driving ranges complying with F238.3 shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1006.2.

EXCEPTION: Golf car passages complying with 1006.3 shall be permitted to be used for all or part of accessible routes required by F206.2.14.

F206.2.15 Miniature Golf Facilities. Holes required to comply with F239.2, including the start of play, shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving miniature golf facilities shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1007.2.

F206.2.16 Play Areas. Play areas shall provide accessible routes in accordance with F206.2.16. Accessible routes serving play areas shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by 1008.2.

F206.2.16.1 Ground Level and Elevated Play Components. At least one accessible route shall be provided within the play area. The accessible route shall connect ground level play components required to comply with F240.2.1 and elevated play components required to comply with F240.2.2, including entry and exit points of the play components.

F206.2.16.2 Soft Contained Play Structures. Where three or fewer entry points are provided for soft contained play structures, at least one entry point shall be on an accessible route. Where four or more entry points are provided for soft contained play structures, at least two entry points shall be on an accessible route.

F206.3 Location. Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as general circulation paths. Where circulation paths are interior, required accessible routes shall also be interior.

F206.4 Entrances. Entrances shall be provided in accordance with F206.4. Entrance doors, doorways, and gates shall comply with 404 and shall be on an accessible route complying with 402.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where an alteration includes alterations to an entrance, and the building or facility has another entrance complying with 404 that is on an accessible route, the altered entrance shall not be required to comply with F206.4 unless required by F202.4.

2. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by F202.5, no more than one public entrance shall be required to comply with F206.4. Where no public entrance can comply with F206.4 under criteria established in F202.5 Exception, then either an unlocked entrance not used by the public shall comply with F206.4; or a locked entrance complying with F206.4 with a notification system or remote monitoring shall be provided.

F206.4.1 Public Entrances. In addition to entrances required by F206.4.2 through

F206.4.9, at least 60 percent of all public entrances shall comply with 404.

F206.4.2 Parking Structure Entrances. Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a parking structure to a building or facility entrance, each direct access to the building or facility entrance shall comply with 404.

F206.4.3 Entrances from Tunnels or Elevated Walkways. Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway to a building or facility, at least one direct entrance to the building or facility from each tunnel or walkway shall comply with 404.

F206.4.4 Transportation Facilities. In addition to the requirements of F206.4.2, F206.4.3, and F206.4.5 through F206.4.9, transportation facilities shall provide entrances in accordance with F206.4.4.

F206.4.4.1 Location. In transportation facilities, where different entrances serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, at least one public entrance serving each fixed route or group of fixed routes shall comply with 404.

F206.4.4.2 Direct Connections. Direct connections to other facilities shall provide an accessible route complying with 404 from the point of connection to boarding platforms and all transportation system elements required to be accessible. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and all transportation system elements required to be accessible.

F206.4.5 Tenant Spaces. At least one accessible entrance to each tenancy in a facility shall comply with 404.

EXCEPTION: Self-service storage facilities not required to comply with F225.3 shall not be required to be on an accessible route.

F206.4.6 Residential Dwelling Unit Primary Entrance. In residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, at least one primary entrance shall comply with 404. The primary entrance to a residential dwelling unit shall not be to a bedroom.

F206.4.7 Restricted Entrances. Where restricted entrances are provided to a building or facility, at least one restricted entrance to the building or facility shall comply with 404.

F206.4.8 Service Entrances. If a service entrance is the only entrance to a building or to a tenancy in a facility, that entrance shall comply with 404.

F206.4.9 Entrances for Inmates or Detainees. Where entrances used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel are provided at judicial facilities, detention facilities, or correctional facilities, at least one such entrance shall comply with 404.

F206.5 Doors, Doorways, and Gates. Doors, doorways, and gates providing user passage shall be provided in accordance with F206.5.

F206.5.1 Entrances. Each entrance to a building or facility required to comply with F206.4 shall have at least one door, doorway, or gate complying with 404.

F206.5.2 Rooms and Spaces. Within a building or facility, at least one door, doorway, or gate serving each room or space complying with these requirements shall comply with 404.

F206.5.3 Transient Lodging Facilities. In transient lodging facilities, entrances, doors, and doorways providing user passage into and within guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall comply with 404.2.3.

EXCEPTION: Shower and sauna doors in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall not be required to comply with 404.2.3.

F206.5.4 Residential Dwelling Units. In residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, all doors and doorways providing user passage shall comply with 404.

F206.6 Elevators. Elevators provided for passengers shall comply with 407. Where multiple elevators are provided, each elevator shall comply with 407.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In a building or facility permitted to use the exceptions to F206.2.3 or permitted by F206.7 to use a platform lift, elevators complying with 408 shall be permitted.

2. Elevators complying with 408 or 409 shall be permitted in multi-story residential dwelling units.

F206.6.1 Existing Elevators. Where elements of existing elevators are altered, the same element shall also be altered in all elevators that are programmed to respond to the same hall call control as the altered elevator and shall comply with the requirements of 407 for the altered element.

F206.7 Platform Lifts. Platform lifts shall comply with 410. Platform lifts shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in new construction in accordance with F206.7. Platform lifts shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in an existing building or facility. In emergency transportable housing units, platform lifts shall not be used at the primary entrance to a unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

F206.7.1 Performance Areas and Speakers' Platforms. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to performance areas and speakers' platforms.

F206.7.2 Wheelchair Spaces. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to comply with the wheelchair space dispersion and line-of-sight requirements of F221 and 802.

F206.7.3 Incidental Spaces. Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible

route to incidental spaces which are not public use spaces and which are occupied by five persons maximum.

**F206.7.4 Judicial Spaces.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to: jury boxes and witness stands; raised courtroom stations including, judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, and court reporters' stations; and to depressed areas such as the well of a court.

**F206.7.5 Existing Site Constraints.** Platform lifts shall be permitted where existing exterior site constraints make use of a ramp or elevator infeasible.

**F206.7.6 Guest Rooms and Residential Dwelling Units.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to connect levels within transient lodging guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 or residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

**F206.7.7 Amusement Rides.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to load and unload areas serving amusement rides.

**F206.7.8 Play Areas.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to play components or soft contained play structures.

**F206.7.9 Team or Player Seating.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.

**F206.7.10 Recreational Boating Facilities and Fishing Piers and Platforms.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to be used instead of gangways that are part of accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities and fishing piers and platforms.

**F206.8 Security Barriers.** Security barriers, including but not limited to, security bollards and security check points, shall not obstruct a required accessible route or accessible means of egress.

**EXCEPTION:** Where security barriers incorporate elements that cannot comply with these requirements such as certain metal detectors, fluoroscopes, or other similar devices, the accessible route shall be permitted to be located adjacent to security screening devices. The accessible route shall permit persons with disabilities passing around security barriers to maintain visual contact with their personal items to the same extent provided others passing through the security barrier.

#### F207 ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

**F207.1 General.** Means of egress shall comply with section 1003.2.13 of the International Building Code (2000 edition and 2001 Supplement) or section 1007 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Where means of egress are permitted by local building or life safety codes to share a common path of egress travel, accessible means of egress shall be permitted to share a common path of egress travel.

2. Areas of refuge shall not be required in detention and correctional facilities.

**F207.2 Platform Lifts.** Standby power shall be provided for platform lifts permitted by section 1003.2.13.4 of the International Building Code (2000 edition and 2001 Supplement) or section 1007.5 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) to serve as a part of an accessible means of egress.

#### F208 PARKING SPACES

**F208.1 General.** Where parking spaces are provided, parking spaces shall be provided in accordance with F208.

**EXCEPTION:** Parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks, other delivery vehicles, law enforcement vehicles, or vehicular impound shall not be required to comply with F208 provided that lots accessed by the public are provided with a passenger loading zone complying with 503.

**F208.2 Minimum Number.** Parking spaces complying with 502 shall be provided in accordance with Table F208.2 except as required by F208.2.1, F208.2.2, and F208.2.3. Where more than one parking facility is provided on a site, the number of accessible spaces provided on the site shall be calculated according to the number of spaces required for each parking facility.

TABLE F208.2—PARKING SPACES

| Total number of parking spaces provided in parking facility | Minimum number of required accessible parking spaces     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 25 .....                                               | 1.                                                       |
| 26 to 50 .....                                              | 2.                                                       |
| 51 to 75 .....                                              | 3.                                                       |
| 76 to 100 .....                                             | 4.                                                       |
| 101 to 150 .....                                            | 5.                                                       |
| 151 to 200 .....                                            | 6.                                                       |
| 201 to 300 .....                                            | 7.                                                       |
| 301 to 400 .....                                            | 8.                                                       |
| 401 to 500 .....                                            | 9.                                                       |
| 501 to 1000 .....                                           | 2 percent of total.                                      |
| 1001 and over .....                                         | 20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. |

**F208.2.1 Hospital Outpatient Facilities.** Ten percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve hospital outpatient facilities shall comply with 502.

**F208.2.2 Rehabilitation Facilities and Outpatient Physical Therapy Facilities.** Twenty percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve rehabilitation facilities specializing in treating conditions

that affect mobility and outpatient physical therapy facilities shall comply with 502.

**F208.2.3 Residential Facilities.** Parking spaces provided to serve facilities with residential dwelling units shall comply with F208.2.3.

**F208.2.3.1 Parking for Residents.** Where at least one parking space is provided for each residential dwelling unit, at least one parking space complying with 502 shall be provided for each residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

**F208.2.3.2 Additional Parking Spaces for Residents.** Where the total number of parking spaces provided for each residential dwelling unit exceeds one parking space per residential dwelling unit, 2 percent, but no fewer than one space, of all the parking spaces not covered by F208.2.3.1 shall comply with 502.

**F208.2.3.3 Parking for Guests, Employees, and Other Non-Residents.** Where parking spaces are provided for persons other than residents, parking shall be provided in accordance with Table F208.2.

**F208.2.4 Van Parking Spaces.** For every six or fraction of six parking spaces required by F208.2 to comply with 502, at least one shall be a van parking space complying with 502.

**F208.3 Location.** Parking facilities shall comply with F208.3.

**F208.3.1 General.** Parking spaces complying with 502 that serve a particular building or facility shall be located on the shortest accessible route from parking to an entrance complying with F206.4. Where parking serves more than one accessible entrance, parking spaces complying with 502 shall be dispersed and located on the shortest accessible route to the accessible entrances. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building or facility, parking spaces complying with 502 shall be located on the shortest accessible route to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. All van parking spaces shall be permitted to be grouped on one level within a multi-story parking facility.

2. Parking spaces shall be permitted to be located in different parking facilities if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance or entrances, parking fee, and user convenience.

**F208.3.2 Residential Facilities.** In facilities containing residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, parking spaces provided in accordance with F208.2.3.1 shall be located on the shortest accessible route to the residential dwelling unit entrance they serve. Spaces provided in accordance with F208.2.3.2 shall be dispersed throughout all types of parking provided for the residential dwelling units.

**EXCEPTION:** Parking spaces provided in accordance with F208.2.3.2 shall not be required to be dispersed throughout all types of parking if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance, parking fee, and user convenience.

#### **F209 PASSENGER LOADING ZONES AND BUS STOPS**

**F209.1 General.** Passenger loading zones shall be provided in accordance with F209.

**F209.2 Type.** Where provided, passenger loading zones shall comply with F209.2.

**F209.2.1 Passenger Loading Zones.** Passenger loading zones, except those required to comply with F209.2.2 and F209.2.3, shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 in every continuous 100 linear feet (30 m) of loading zone space, or fraction thereof.

**F209.2.2 Bus Loading Zones.** In bus loading zones restricted to use by designated or specified public transportation vehicles, each bus bay, bus stop, or other area designated for lift or ramp deployment shall comply with 810.2.

**F209.2.3 On-Street Bus Stops.** On-street bus stops shall comply with 810.2 to the maximum extent practicable.

**F209.3 Medical Care and Long-Term Care Facilities.** At least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 shall be provided at an accessible entrance to licensed medical care and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay exceeds twenty-four hours.

**F209.4 Valet Parking.** Parking facilities that provide valet parking services shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503.

**F209.5 Mechanical Access Parking Garages.** Mechanical access parking garages shall provide at least one passenger loading zone complying with 503 at vehicle drop-off and vehicle pick-up areas.

#### **F210 STAIRWAYS**

**F210.1 General.** Interior and exterior stairs that are part of a means of egress shall comply with 504.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. In detention and correctional facilities, stairs that are not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with 504.

2. In alterations, stairs between levels that are connected by an accessible route shall not be required to comply with 504, except that handrails complying with 505 shall be provided when the stairs are altered.

3. In assembly areas, aisle stairs shall not be required to comply with 504.

4. Stairs that connect play components shall not be required to comply with 504.

## F211 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

F211.1 General. Where drinking fountains are provided on an exterior site, on a floor, and within a secured area they shall be provided in accordance with F211.

EXCEPTION: In detention or correctional facilities, drinking fountains only serving holding or housing cells not required to comply with F232 shall not be required to comply with F211.

F211.2 Minimum Number. No fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. One drinking fountain shall comply with 602.1 through 602.6 and one drinking fountain shall comply with 602.7.

EXCEPTION: Where a single drinking fountain complies with 602.1 through 602.6 and 602.7, it shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.

F211.3 More Than Minimum Number. Where more than the minimum number of drinking fountains specified in F211.2 are provided, 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with 602.1 through 602.6, and 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with 602.7.

EXCEPTION: Where 50 percent of the drinking fountains yields a fraction, 50 percent shall be permitted to be rounded up or down provided that the total number of drinking fountains complying with F211 equals 100 percent of drinking fountains.

## F212 KITCHENS, KITCHENETTES, AND SINKS

F212.1 General. Where provided, kitchens, kitchenettes, and sinks shall comply with F212.

F212.2 Kitchens and Kitchenettes. Kitchens and kitchenettes shall comply with 804.

F212.3 Sinks. Where sinks are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type provided in each accessible room or space shall comply with 606.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Mop or service sinks shall not be required to comply with F212.3.

2. In camping facilities and picnic facilities, sinks shall not be required to comply with F212.3 where a cooktop or conventional range is not provided.

## F213 TOILET FACILITIES AND BATHING FACILITIES

F213.1 General. Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are provided, they shall comply with F213. Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are provided in facilities permitted by F206.2.3 Exceptions 1 and 2 not to connect stories by an accessible route, toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall be provided on a story connected by an accessible route to an accessible entrance.

EXCEPTION: Pit toilets provided on trails and in camping facilities shall not be required to comply with F213.

F213.2 Toilet Rooms and Bathing Rooms. Where toilet rooms are provided, each toilet room shall comply with 603. Where bathing rooms are provided, each bathing room shall comply with 603.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In alterations where it is technically infeasible to comply with 603, altering existing toilet or bathing rooms shall not be required where a single unisex toilet room or bathing room complying with F213.2.1 is provided and located in the same area and on the same floor as existing inaccessible toilet or bathing rooms.

2. Where exceptions for alterations to qualified historic buildings or facilities are permitted by F202.5 and toilet rooms are provided, no fewer than one toilet room for each sex complying with 603 or one unisex toilet room complying with F213.2.1 shall be provided.

3. Where multiple single user portable toilet or bathing units are clustered at a single location, no more than 5 percent of the toilet units and bathing units at each cluster shall be required to comply with 603. Portable toilet units and bathing units complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1.

4. Where multiple single user toilet rooms are clustered at a single location, no more than 50 percent of the single user toilet rooms for each use at each cluster shall be required to comply with 603.

F213.2.1 Unisex (Single-Use or Family) Toilet and Bathing Rooms. Unisex toilet rooms shall contain not more than one lavatory, and two water closets without urinals or one water closet and one urinal. Unisex bathing rooms shall contain one shower or one shower and one bathtub, one lavatory, and one water closet. Doors to unisex toilet rooms and unisex bathing rooms shall have privacy latches.

F213.3 Plumbing Fixtures and Accessories. Plumbing fixtures and accessories provided in a toilet room or bathing room required to comply with F213.2 shall comply with F213.3.

F213.3.1 Toilet Compartments. Where toilet compartments are provided, at least one toilet compartment shall comply with 604.8.1. In addition to the compartment required to comply with 604.8.1, at least one compartment shall comply with 604.8.2 where six or more toilet compartments are provided, or where the combination of urinals and water closets totals six or more fixtures.

F213.3.2 Water Closets. Where water closets are provided at least one shall comply with 604.

F213.3.3 Urinals. Where more than one urinal is provided, at least one shall comply with 605.

F213.3.4 Lavatories. Where lavatories are provided, at least one shall comply with 606

and shall not be located in a toilet compartment.

F213.3.5 Mirrors. Where mirrors are provided, at least one shall comply with 603.3.

F213.3.6 Bathing Facilities. Where bathtubs or showers are provided, at least one bathtub complying with 607 or at least one shower complying with 608 shall be provided.

F213.3.7 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet rooms without toilet compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with 603.4. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet compartments, at least one of each type complying with 604.8.3 shall be provided in toilet compartments required to comply with F213.3.1. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in bathing facilities, at least one of each type complying with 603.4 shall serve fixtures required to comply with F213.3.6.

#### F214 WASHING MACHINES AND CLOTHES DRYERS

F214.1 General. Where provided, washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with F214.

EXCEPTION: Washing machines and clothes dryers provided in employee work areas shall not be required to comply with F214.

F214.2 Washing Machines. Where three or fewer washing machines are provided, at least one shall comply with 611. Where more than three washing machines are provided, at least two shall comply with 611.

F214.3 Clothes Dryers. Where three or fewer clothes dryers are provided, at least one shall comply with 611. Where more than three clothes dryers are provided, at least two shall comply with 611.

#### F215 FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

F215.1 General. Where fire alarm systems provide audible alarm coverage, alarms shall comply with F215.

EXCEPTION: In existing facilities, visible alarms shall not be required except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.

F215.2 Public and Common Use Areas. Alarms in public use areas and common use areas shall comply with 702.

F215.3 Employee Work Areas. Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the wiring system shall be designed so that visible alarms complying with 702 can be integrated into the alarm system.

F215.4 Transient Lodging. Guest rooms required to comply with F224.4 shall provide alarms complying with 702.

F215.5 Residential Dwelling Units. Where provided in residential dwelling units required to provide communication features complying with 809.3, alarms shall comply with 702.

#### F216 SIGNS

F216.1 General. Signs shall be provided in accordance with F216 and shall comply with 703.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Building directories, menus, seat and row designations in assembly areas, occupant names, building addresses, and company names and logos shall not be required to comply with F216.

2. In parking facilities, signs shall not be required to comply with F216.2, F216.3, and F216.6 through F216.12.

3. Temporary, 7 days or less, signs shall not be required to comply with F216.

4. In detention and correctional facilities, signs not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with F216.

F216.2 Designations. Interior and exterior signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with 703.1, 703.2, and 703.5. Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with 703.6 and shall have text descriptors complying with 703.2 and 703.5.

EXCEPTION: Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve shall not be required to comply with 703.2.

F216.3 Directional and Informational Signs. Signs that provide direction to or information about interior spaces and facilities of the site shall comply with 703.5.

F216.4 Means of Egress. Signs for means of egress shall comply with F216.4.

F216.4.1 Exit Doors. Doors at exit passageways, exit discharge, and exit stairways shall be identified by tactile signs complying with 703.1, 703.2, and 703.5.

F216.4.2 Areas of Refuge. Signs required by section 1003.2.13.5.4 of the International Building Code (2000 edition) or section 1007.6.4 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) to provide instructions in areas of refuge shall comply with 703.5.

F216.4.3 Directional Signs. Signs required by section 1003.2.13.6 of the International Building Code (2000 edition) or section 1007.7 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) to provide directions to accessible means of egress shall comply with 703.5.

F216.5 Parking. Parking spaces complying with 502 shall be identified by signs complying with 502.6.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where a total of four or fewer parking spaces, including accessible parking spaces, are provided on a site, identification of accessible parking spaces shall not be required.

2. In residential facilities, where parking spaces are assigned to specific residential dwelling units, identification of accessible parking spaces shall not be required.

**F216.6 Entrances.** Where not all entrances comply with 404, entrances complying with 404 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Directional signs complying with 703.5 that indicate the location of the nearest entrance complying with 404 shall be provided at entrances that do not comply with 404.

**F216.7 Elevators.** Where existing elevators do not comply with 407, elevators complying with 407 shall be clearly identified with the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1.

**F216.8 Toilet Rooms and Bathing Rooms.** Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with 603, directional signs indicating the location of the nearest toilet room or bathing room complying with 603 within the facility shall be provided. Signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with 603, the toilet rooms or bathing rooms complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where clustered single user toilet rooms or bathing facilities are permitted to use exception to F213.2, toilet rooms or bathing facilities complying with 603 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1 unless all toilet rooms and bathing facilities comply with 603.

**F216.9 TTYs.** Identification and directional signs for public TTYs shall be provided in accordance with F216.9.

**F216.9.1 Identification Signs.** Public TTYs shall be identified by the International Symbol of TTY complying with 703.7.2.2.

**F216.9.2 Directional Signs.** Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest public TTY shall be provided at all banks of public pay telephones not containing a public TTY. In addition, where signs provide direction to public pay telephones, they shall also provide direction to public TTYs. Directional signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of TTY complying with 703.7.2.2.

**F216.10 Assistive Listening Systems.** Each assembly area required by F219 to provide assistive listening systems shall provide signs informing patrons of the availability of the assistive listening system. Assistive listening signs shall comply with 703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss complying with 703.7.2.4.

**EXCEPTION:** Where ticket offices or windows are provided, signs shall not be required at each assembly area provided that signs are displayed at each ticket office or window informing patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems.

**F216.11 Check-Out Aisles.** Where more than one check-out aisle is provided, check-

out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Where check-out aisles are identified by numbers, letters, or functions, signs identifying check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be located in the same location as the check-out aisle identification.

**EXCEPTION:** Where all check-out aisles serving a single function comply with 904.3, signs complying with 703.7.2.1 shall not be required.

**F216.12 Amusement Rides.** Signs identifying the type of access provided on amusement rides shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. In addition, where accessible unload areas also serve as accessible load areas, signs indicating the location of the accessible load and unload areas shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines.

**F216.13 Trailhead Signs.** Where new trail information signs are provided at trailheads on newly constructed or altered trails designed for use by hikers or pedestrians, the signs shall comply with 1017.10.

#### F217 TELEPHONES

**F217.1 General.** Where coin-operated public pay telephones, coinless public pay telephones, public closed-circuit telephones, public courtesy phones, or other types of public telephones are provided, public telephones shall be provided in accordance with F217 for each type of public telephone provided. For purposes of this section, a bank of telephones shall be considered to be two or more adjacent telephones.

**F217.2 Wheelchair Accessible Telephones.** Where public telephones are provided, wheelchair accessible telephones complying with 704.2 shall be provided in accordance with Table F217.2.

**EXCEPTION:** Drive-up only public telephones shall not be required to comply with F217.2.

TABLE F217.2—WHEELCHAIR ACCESSIBLE  
TELEPHONES

| Number of telephones provided on a floor, level, or exterior site | Minimum number of required wheelchair accessible telephones |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 or more single units .....                                      | 1 per floor, level, and exterior site.                      |
| 1 bank .....                                                      | 1 per floor, level, and exterior site.                      |
| 2 or more banks .....                                             | 1 per bank.                                                 |

**F217.3 Volume Controls.** All public telephones shall have volume controls complying with 704.3.

**F217.4 TTYs.** TTYs complying with 704.4 shall be provided in accordance with F217.4.

**F217.4.1 Bank Requirement.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided at a bank of telephones, at least one public TTY

complying with 704.4 shall be provided at that bank.

EXCEPTION: TTYs shall not be required at banks of telephones located within 200 feet (61 m) of, and on the same floor as, a bank containing a public TTY.

F217.4.2 Floor Requirement. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided on a floor of a building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.

F217.4.3 Building Requirement. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a public use area of a building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building in a public use area.

F217.4.4 Exterior Site Requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on an exterior site, at least one public TTY shall be provided on the site.

F217.4.5 Rest Stops, Emergency Roadside Stops, and Service Plazas. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided at a public rest stop, emergency roadside stop, or service plaza, at least one public TTY shall be provided.

F217.4.6 Hospitals. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided serving a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room, or hospital waiting room, at least one public TTY shall be provided at each location.

F217.4.7 Transportation Facilities. In transportation facilities, in addition to the requirements of F217.4.1 through F217.4.4, where at least one public pay telephone serves a particular entrance to a bus or rail facility, at least one public TTY shall be provided to serve that entrance. In airports, in addition to the requirements of F217.4.1 through F217.4.4, where four or more public pay telephones are located in a terminal outside the security areas, a concourse within the security areas, or a baggage claim area in a terminal, at least one public TTY shall be provided in each location.

F217.4.8 Detention and Correctional Facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, where at least one pay telephone is provided in a secured area used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel, at least one TTY shall be provided in at least one secured area.

F217.5 Shelves for Portable TTYs. Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone at the bank shall be provided with a shelf and an electrical outlet in accordance with 704.5.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Secured areas of detention and correctional facilities where shelves and outlets are prohibited for purposes of security or safety shall not be required to comply with F217.5.

2. The shelf and electrical outlet shall not be required at a bank of telephones with a TTY.

#### F218 TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES

F218.1 General. Transportation facilities shall comply with F218.

F218.2 New and Altered Fixed Guideway Stations. New and altered stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity rail, high speed rail, and other fixed guideway systems shall comply with 810.5 through 810.10.

F218.3 Bus Shelters. Where provided, bus shelters shall comply with 810.3 and 810.4.

F218.4 Other Transportation Facilities. In other transportation facilities, public address systems shall comply with 810.7 and clocks shall comply with 810.8.

#### F219 ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS

F219.1 General. Assistive listening systems shall be provided in accordance with F219 and shall comply with 706.

F219.2 Required Systems. In each assembly area where audible communication is integral to the use of the space, an assistive listening system shall be provided.

EXCEPTION: Other than in courtrooms, assistive listening systems shall not be required where audio amplification is not provided.

F219.3 Receivers. Receivers complying with 706.2 shall be provided for assistive listening systems in each assembly area in accordance with Table F219.3. Twenty-five percent minimum of receivers provided, but no fewer than two, shall be hearing-aid compatible in accordance with 706.3.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where a building contains more than one assembly area and the assembly areas required to provide assistive listening systems are under one management, the total number of required receivers shall be permitted to be calculated according to the total number of seats in the assembly areas in the building provided that all receivers are usable with all systems.

2. Where all seats in an assembly area are served by an induction loop assistive listening system, the minimum number of receivers required by Table F219.3 to be hearing-aid compatible shall not be required to be provided.

TABLE F219.3—RECEIVERS FOR ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS

| Capacity of seating in assembly area | Minimum number of required receivers       | Minimum number of required receivers required to be hearing-aid compatible |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 50 or less .....                     | 2 .....                                    | 2.                                                                         |
| 51 to 200 .....                      | 2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats ..... | 2.                                                                         |

TABLE F219.3—RECEIVERS FOR ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS—Continued

| Capacity of seating in assembly area | Minimum number of required receivers                        | Minimum number of required receivers required to be hearing-aid compatible |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 201 to 500 .....                     | 2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats <sup>1</sup> ....      | 1 per 4 receivers. <sup>1</sup>                                            |
| 501 to 1000 .....                    | 20, plus 1 per 33 seats over 500 seats <sup>1</sup> .....   | 1 per 4 receivers. <sup>1</sup>                                            |
| 1001 to 2000 .....                   | 35, plus 1 per 50 seats over 1000 seats <sup>1</sup> .....  | 1 per 4 receivers. <sup>1</sup>                                            |
| 2001 and over .....                  | 55, plus 1 per 100 seats over 2000 seats <sup>1</sup> ..... | 1 per 4 receivers. <sup>1</sup>                                            |

<sup>1</sup> Or fraction thereof.**F220 AUTOMATIC TELLER MACHINES AND FARE MACHINES**

**F220.1 General.** Where automatic teller machines or self-service fare vending, collection, or adjustment machines are provided, at least one of each type provided at each location shall comply with 707. Where bins are provided for envelopes, waste paper, or other purposes, at least one of each type shall comply with 811.

**F221 ASSEMBLY AREAS**

**F221.1 General.** Assembly areas shall provide wheelchair spaces, companion seats, and designated aisle seats complying with F221 and 802. In addition, lawn seating shall comply with F221.5.

**F221.2 Wheelchair Spaces.** Wheelchair spaces complying with F221.2 shall be provided in assembly areas with fixed seating.

**F221.2.1 Number and Location.** Wheelchair spaces shall be provided complying with F221.2.1.

**F221.2.1.1 General Seating.** Wheelchair spaces complying with 802.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table F221.2.1.1.

TABLE F221.2.1.1—NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR SPACES IN ASSEMBLY AREAS

| Number of seats     | Minimum number of required wheelchair spaces                           |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 to 25 .....       | 1.                                                                     |
| 26 to 50 .....      | 2.                                                                     |
| 51 to 150 .....     | 4.                                                                     |
| 151 to 300 .....    | 5.                                                                     |
| 301 to 500 .....    | 6.                                                                     |
| 501 to 5000 .....   | 6, plus 1 for each 150, or fraction thereof, between 501 through 5000. |
| 5001 and over ..... | 36, plus 1 for each 200, or fraction thereof, over 5000.               |

**F221.2.1.2 Luxury Boxes, Club Boxes, and Suites in Arenas, Stadiums, and Grandstands.** In each luxury box, club box, and suite within arenas, stadiums, and grandstands, wheelchair spaces complying with 802.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table F221.2.1.1.

**F221.2.1.3 Other Boxes.** In boxes other than those required to comply with F221.2.1.2, the total number of wheelchair

spaces required shall be determined in accordance with Table F221.2.1.1. Wheelchair spaces shall be located in not less than 20 percent of all boxes provided. Wheelchair spaces shall comply with 802.1.

**F221.2.1.4 Team or Player Seating.** At least one wheelchair space complying with 802.1 shall be provided in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.

**EXCEPTION:** Wheelchair spaces shall not be required in team or player seating areas serving bowling lanes not required to comply with F206.2.10.

**F221.2.2 Integration.** Wheelchair spaces shall be an integral part of the seating plan.

**F221.2.3 Lines of Sight and Dispersion.** Wheelchair spaces shall provide lines of sight complying with 802.2 and shall comply with F221.2.3. In providing lines of sight, wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed. Wheelchair spaces shall provide spectators with choices of seating locations and viewing angles that are substantially equivalent to, or better than, the choices of seating locations and viewing angles available to all other spectators. When the number of wheelchair spaces required by F221.2.1 has been met, further dispersion shall not be required.

**EXCEPTION:** Wheelchair spaces in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with F221.2.3.

**F221.2.3.1 Horizontal Dispersion.** Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed horizontally.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Horizontal dispersion shall not be required in assembly areas with 300 or fewer seats if the companion seats required by F221.3 and wheelchair spaces are located within the 2nd or 3rd quartile of the total row length. Intermediate aisles shall be included in determining the total row length. If the row length in the 2nd and 3rd quartile of a row is insufficient to accommodate the required number of companion seats and wheelchair spaces, the additional companion seats and wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located in the 1st and 4th quartile of the row.

2. In row seating, two wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located side-by-side.

**F221.2.3.2 Vertical Dispersion.** Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed vertically at varying distances from the screen, performance

area, or playing field. In addition, wheelchair spaces shall be located in each balcony or mezzanine that is located on an accessible route.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Vertical dispersion shall not be required in assembly areas with 300 or fewer seats if the wheelchair spaces provide viewing angles that are equivalent to, or better than, the average viewing angle provided in the facility.

2. In bleachers, wheelchair spaces shall not be required to be provided in rows other than rows at points of entry to bleacher seating.

F221.3 Companion Seats. At least one companion seat complying with 802.3 shall be provided for each wheelchair space required by F221.2.1.

F221.4 Designated Aisle Seats. At least 5 percent of the total number of aisle seats provided shall comply with 802.4 and shall be the aisle seats located closest to accessible routes.

EXCEPTION: Team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with F221.4.

F221.5 Lawn Seating. Lawn seating areas and exterior overflow seating areas, where fixed seats are not provided, shall connect to an accessible route.

## F222 DRESSING, FITTING, AND LOCKER ROOMS

F222.1 General. Where dressing rooms, fitting rooms, or locker rooms are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of use in each cluster provided shall comply with 803.

EXCEPTION: In alterations, where it is technically infeasible to provide rooms in accordance with F222.1, one room for each sex on each level shall comply with 803. Where only unisex rooms are provided, unisex rooms shall be permitted.

F222.2 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in dressing, fitting or locker rooms without individual compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with 803.5. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in individual compartments at least one of each type complying with 803.5 shall be provided in individual compartments in dressing, fitting, or locker rooms required to comply with F222.1.

## F223 MEDICAL CARE AND LONG-TERM CARE FACILITIES

F223.1 General. In licensed medical care facilities and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay exceeds twenty-four hours, patient or resident sleeping rooms shall be provided in accordance with F223.

EXCEPTION: Toilet rooms that are part of critical or intensive care patient sleeping rooms shall not be required to comply with 603.

F223.1.1 Alterations. Where sleeping rooms are altered or added, the requirements of F223 shall apply only to the sleeping rooms being altered or added until the number of sleeping rooms complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

F223.2 Hospitals, Rehabilitation Facilities, Psychiatric Facilities and Detoxification Facilities. Hospitals, rehabilitation facilities, psychiatric facilities and detoxification facilities shall comply with F223.2.

F223.2.1 Facilities Not Specializing in Treating Conditions That Affect Mobility. In facilities not specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, at least 10 percent, but no fewer than one, of the patient sleeping rooms shall provide mobility features complying with 805.

F223.2.2 Facilities Specializing in Treating Conditions That Affect Mobility. In facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, 100 percent of the patient sleeping rooms shall provide mobility features complying with 805.

F223.3 Long-Term Care Facilities. In licensed long-term care facilities, at least 50 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of resident sleeping room shall provide mobility features complying with 805.

## F224 TRANSIENT LODGING GUEST ROOMS

F224.1 General. Transient lodging facilities shall provide guest rooms in accordance with F224.

F224.1.1 Alterations. Where guest rooms are altered or added, the requirements of F224 shall apply only to the guest rooms being altered or added until the number of guest rooms complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

F224.1.2 Guest Room Doors and Doorways. Entrances, doors, and doorways providing user passage into and within guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall comply with 404.2.3.

EXCEPTION: Shower and sauna doors in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall not be required to comply with 404.2.3.

F224.2 Guest Rooms with Mobility Features. In transient lodging facilities, guest rooms with mobility features complying with 806.2 shall be provided in accordance with Table F224.2.

TABLE F224.2—GUEST ROOMS WITH MOBILITY FEATURES

| Total number of guest rooms provided | Minimum number of required rooms without roll-in showers | Minimum number of required rooms with roll-in showers    | Total number of required rooms                           |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 25 .....                        | 1 .....                                                  | 0 .....                                                  | 1.                                                       |
| 26 to 50 .....                       | 2 .....                                                  | 0 .....                                                  | 2.                                                       |
| 51 to 75 .....                       | 3 .....                                                  | 1 .....                                                  | 4.                                                       |
| 76 to 100 .....                      | 4 .....                                                  | 1 .....                                                  | 5.                                                       |
| 101 to 150 .....                     | 5 .....                                                  | 2 .....                                                  | 7.                                                       |
| 151 to 200 .....                     | 6 .....                                                  | 2 .....                                                  | 8.                                                       |
| 201 to 300 .....                     | 7 .....                                                  | 3 .....                                                  | 10.                                                      |
| 301 to 400 .....                     | 8 .....                                                  | 4 .....                                                  | 12.                                                      |
| 401 to 500 .....                     | 9 .....                                                  | 4 .....                                                  | 13.                                                      |
| 501 to 1000 .....                    | 2 percent of total .....                                 | 1 percent of total .....                                 | 3 percent of total.                                      |
| 1001 and over .....                  | 20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. | 10, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. | 30, plus 2 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. |

F224.3 Beds. In guest rooms having more than 25 beds, 5 percent minimum of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with 806.2.3.

F224.4 Guest Rooms with Communication Features. In transient lodging facilities, guest rooms with communication features complying with 806.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table F224.4.

TABLE F224.4—GUEST ROOMS WITH COMMUNICATION FEATURES

| Total number of guest rooms provided | Minimum number of required guest rooms with communication features |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 to 25 .....                        | 2.                                                                 |
| 26 to 50 .....                       | 4.                                                                 |
| 51 to 75 .....                       | 7.                                                                 |
| 76 to 100 .....                      | 9.                                                                 |
| 101 to 150 .....                     | 12.                                                                |
| 151 to 200 .....                     | 14.                                                                |
| 201 to 300 .....                     | 17.                                                                |
| 301 to 400 .....                     | 20.                                                                |
| 401 to 500 .....                     | 22.                                                                |
| 501 to 1000 .....                    | 5 percent of total.                                                |
| 1001 and over .....                  | 50, plus 3 for each 100 over 1000.                                 |

F224.5 Dispersion. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 and guest rooms required to provide communication features complying with 806.3 shall be dispersed among the various classes of guest rooms, and shall provide choices of types of guest rooms, number of beds, and other amenities comparable to the choices provided to other guests. Where the minimum number of guest rooms required to comply with 806 is not sufficient to allow for complete dispersion, guest rooms shall be dispersed in the following priority: guest room type, number of beds, and amenities. At least one guest room required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall also provide communication features complying with 806.3. Not more than 10 percent of guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with 806.2 shall be used to satisfy the minimum number of guest

rooms required to provide communication features complying with 806.3.

#### F225 STORAGE

F225.1 General. Storage facilities shall comply with F225.

F225.2 Storage. Where storage is provided in accessible spaces, at least one of each type shall comply with 811.

F225.2.1 Lockers. Where lockers are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one of each type, shall comply with 811.

F225.2.2 Self-Service Shelving. Self-service shelves shall be located on an accessible route complying with 402. Self-service shelving shall not be required to comply with 308.

F225.3 Self-Service Storage Facilities. Self-service storage facilities shall provide individual self-service storage spaces complying with these requirements in accordance with Table F225.3.

TABLE F225.3—SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITIES

| Total spaces in facility | Minimum number of spaces required to be accessible    |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 200 .....           | 5 percent, but no fewer than 1.                       |
| 201 and over .....       | 10, plus 2 percent of total number of units over 200. |

F225.3.1 Dispersion. Individual self-service storage spaces shall be dispersed throughout the various classes of spaces provided. Where more classes of spaces are provided than the number required to be accessible, the number of spaces shall not be required to exceed that required by Table F225.3. Self-service storage spaces complying with Table F225.3 shall not be required to be dispersed among buildings in a multi-building facility.

#### F226 DINING SURFACES AND WORK SURFACES

F226.1 General. Where dining surfaces are provided for the consumption of food or drink, at least 5 percent of the seating spaces and standing spaces at the dining surfaces

shall comply with 902. In addition, where work surfaces are provided, at least 5 percent shall comply with 902.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Sales counters and service counters shall not be required to comply with 902.

2. Check writing surfaces provided at check-out aisles not required to comply with 904.3 shall not be required to comply with 902.

F226.2 Dispersion. Dining surfaces and work surfaces required to comply with 902 shall be dispersed throughout the space or facility containing dining surfaces and work surfaces.

#### F227 SALES AND SERVICE

F227.1 General. Where provided, check-out aisles, sales counters, service counters, food service lines, queues, and waiting lines shall comply with F227 and 904.

F227.2 Check-Out Aisles. Where check-out aisles are provided, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table F227.2. Where check-out aisles serve different functions, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table F227.2 for each function. Where check-out aisles are dispersed throughout the building or facility, check-out aisles complying with 904.3 shall be dispersed.

EXCEPTION: Where the selling space is under 5000 square feet (465 m<sup>2</sup>) no more than one check-out aisle complying with 904.3 shall be required.

TABLE F227.2—CHECK-OUT AISLES

| Number of check-out aisles of each function | Minimum number of check-out aisles of each function required to comply with 904.3 |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 4 .....                                | 1.                                                                                |
| 5 to 8 .....                                | 2.                                                                                |
| 9 to 15 .....                               | 3.                                                                                |
| 16 and over .....                           | 3, plus 20 percent of additional aisles.                                          |

F227.2.1 Altered Check-Out Aisles. Where check-out aisles are altered, at least one of each check-out aisle serving each function shall comply with 904.3 until the number of check-out aisles complies with F227.2.

F227.3 Counters. Where provided, at least one of each type of sales counter and service counter shall comply with 904.4. Where counters are dispersed throughout the building or facility, counters complying with 904.4 also shall be dispersed.

F227.4 Food Service Lines. Food service lines shall comply with 904.5. Where self-service shelves are provided, at least 50 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type provided shall comply with 308.

F227.5 Queues and Waiting Lines. Queues and waiting lines servicing counters or

check-out aisles required to comply with 904.3 or 904.4 shall comply with 403.

#### F228 DEPOSITORIES, VENDING MACHINES, CHANGE MACHINES, MAIL BOXES, AND FUEL DISPENSERS

F228.1 General. Where provided, at least one of each type of depository, vending machine, change machine, and fuel dispenser shall comply with 309.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Drive-up only depositories shall not be required to comply with 309.

2. Fuel dispensers provided for fueling official government vehicles shall not be required to comply with 309.

F228.2 Mail Boxes. Where mail boxes are provided in an interior location, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type shall comply with 309. In facilities with residential dwelling units, where mail boxes are provided for each residential dwelling unit, mail boxes complying with 309 shall be provided for each residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

#### F229 WINDOWS

F229.1 General. Where glazed openings are provided in accessible rooms or spaces for operation by occupants, excluding employees, at least one opening shall comply with 309. In accessible rooms or spaces, each glazed opening required by an administrative authority to be operable shall comply with 309.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Glazed openings in residential dwelling units required to comply with 809 shall not be required to comply with F229.

2. Glazed openings in guest rooms required to provide communication features and in guest rooms required to comply with F206.5.3 shall not be required to comply with F229.

#### F230 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

F230.1 General. Where a two-way communication system is provided to gain admittance to a building or facility or to restricted areas within a building or facility, the system shall comply with 708.

#### F231 JUDICIAL FACILITIES

F231.1 General. Judicial facilities shall comply with F231.

F231.2 Courtrooms. Each courtroom shall comply with 808.

F231.3 Holding Cells. Where provided, central holding cells and court-floor holding cells shall comply with F231.3.

F231.3.1 Central Holding Cells. Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, one of each type shall comply with 807.2. Where central holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or

sex, at least one cell complying with 807.2 shall be provided.

**F231.3.2 Court-Floor Holding Cells.** Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female, or juvenile female, each courtroom shall be served by one cell of each type complying with 807.2. Where court-floor holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, courtrooms shall be served by at least one cell complying with 807.2. Cells may serve more than one courtroom.

**F231.4 Visiting Areas.** Visiting areas shall comply with F231.4.

**F231.4.1 Cubicles and Counters.** At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with 902 on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with 904.4.2 on both the visitor and detainee sides.

**EXCEPTION:** The detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells required to comply with F231 shall not be required to comply with 902 or 904.4.2.

**F231.4.2 Partitions.** Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with 904.6.

#### F232 DETENTION FACILITIES AND CORRECTIONAL FACILITIES

**F232.1 General.** Buildings, facilities, or portions thereof, in which people are detained for penal or correction purposes, or in which the liberty of the inmates is restricted for security reasons shall comply with F232.

**F232.2 General Holding Cells and General Housing Cells.** General holding cells and general housing cells shall be provided in accordance with F232.2.

**EXCEPTION:** Alterations to cells shall not be required to comply except to the extent determined by regulations issued by the appropriate Federal agency having authority under section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973.

**F232.2.1 Cells with Mobility Features.** At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of cells in a facility shall provide mobility features complying with 807.2.

**F232.2.1.1 Beds.** In cells having more than 25 beds, at least 5 percent of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with 807.2.3.

**F232.2.2 Cells with Communication Features.** At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of general holding cells and general housing cells equipped with audible emergency alarm systems and permanently installed telephones within the cell shall provide communication features complying with 807.3.

**F232.3 Special Holding Cells and Special Housing Cells.** Where special holding cells or special housing cells are provided, at least one cell serving each purpose shall provide mobility features complying with 807.2. Cells

subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification, and medical isolation.

**EXCEPTION:** Alterations to cells shall not be required to comply except to the extent determined by regulations issued by the appropriate Federal agency having authority under section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973.

**F232.4 Medical Care Facilities.** Patient bedrooms or cells required to comply with F223 shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to comply with F232.3.

**F232.5 Visiting Areas.** Visiting areas shall comply with F232.5.

**F232.5.1 Cubicles and Counters.** At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with 902 on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with 904.4.2 on both the visitor and detainee or inmate sides.

**EXCEPTION:** The inmate or detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells or housing cells required to comply with F232 shall not be required to comply with 902 or 904.4.2.

**F232.5.2 Partitions.** Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees or inmates at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with 904.6.

#### F233 RESIDENTIAL FACILITIES

**F233.1 General.** Facilities with residential dwelling units shall comply with F233.

**F233.2 Residential Dwelling Units Provided by HUD or Through Grant or Loan Programs Administered by HUD.** Where facilities with residential dwelling units are provided by the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD), or through a grant or loan program administered by HUD, residential dwelling units with mobility features complying with 809.2 shall be provided in a number required by the regulations issued by HUD under Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 shall be on an accessible route as required by F206. In addition, residential dwelling units with communication features complying with 809.3 shall be provided in a number required by the applicable HUD regulations. Residential dwelling units subject to F233.2 shall not be required to comply with F233.3 or F233.4.

**F233.3 Residential Dwelling Units Provided on Military Installations.** Military installations with residential dwelling units shall comply with F233.3. Residential dwelling units on military installations subject to F233.3 shall not be required to comply with F233.2 or F233.4.

F233.3.1 Residential Dwelling Units with Mobility Features. Facilities on military installations containing residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, shall comply with F233.3.1.1. Facilities on military installations containing emergency transportable housing units shall comply with F233.3.1.2.

F233.3.1.1 Facilities Other Than Those Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, in the facility shall provide mobility features complying with 809.2 and shall be on an accessible route as required by F206.

F233.3.1.2 Facilities Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. Entities shall provide emergency transportable housing units with mobility features complying with 809.2 as determined by a needs assessment conducted by the entity providing the emergency transportable housing units.

F233.3.2 Residential Dwelling Units with Communication Features. Facilities on military installations, other than those containing emergency transportable housing units, shall comply with F233.3.2.1. Facilities on military installations containing emergency transportable housing units shall comply with F233.3.2.2.

F233.3.2.1 Facilities Other Than Those Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, in the facility shall provide communication features complying with 809.3.

F233.3.2.2 Facilities Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. Entities shall provide emergency transportable housing units with residential dwelling unit smoke alarms complying with 809.3.1 and, where weather alert systems are provided, with weather alert systems complying with 809.3.4 as determined by a needs assessment conducted by the entity providing the emergency transportable housing units.

F233.3.3 Additions. Where an addition to an existing building results in an increase in the number of residential dwelling units, the requirements of F233.3.1.1 and F233.3.2.1 shall apply only to the residential dwelling units that are added until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by F233.3.1.1 and F233.3.2.1. Residential dwelling units required to comply with F233.3.1.1 shall be on an accessible route as required by F206.

F233.3.4 Alterations. Alterations shall comply with F233.3.4.

EXCEPTION: Where compliance with 809.2.1, 809.2.3, or 809.2.4 is technically infeasible, or where it is technically infeasible to provide an accessible route to a residential

dwelling unit, the entity shall be permitted to alter or construct a comparable residential dwelling unit to comply with 809.2 provided that the minimum number of residential dwelling units required by F233.3.1.1 and F233.3.2.1, as applicable, is satisfied.

F233.3.4.1 Alterations to Vacated Buildings. Where a building is vacated for the purposes of alteration, at least 5 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with 809.2 and shall be on an accessible route as required by 206. In addition, at least 2 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with 809.3.

F233.3.4.2 Alterations to Individual Residential Dwelling Units. In individual residential dwelling units, where a bathroom or a kitchen is substantially altered, and at least one other room is altered, the requirements of F233.3.1 shall apply to the altered residential dwelling units until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by F233.3.1.1 and F233.3.2.1. Residential dwelling units required to comply with F233.3.1.1 shall be on an accessible route as required by 206.

F233.3.5 Dispersion. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 and residential dwelling units required to provide communication features complying with 809.3 shall be dispersed among the various types of residential dwelling units in the facility and shall provide choices of residential dwelling units comparable to, and integrated with, those available to other residents.

2. Emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 shall not be required to be dispersed among the various types of residential dwelling units in a facility or to provide choices of residential dwelling units comparable to those available to other residents.

F233.4 Residential Dwelling Units Provided by Other Federal Agencies or Through Grant or Loan Programs Administered by Other Federal Agencies. Facilities with residential dwelling units provided by other federal agencies or through grant or loan programs administered by other federal agencies shall comply with F233.4. Residential dwelling units subject to F233.4 shall not be required to comply with F233.2 or F233.3.

F233.4.1 Residential Dwelling Units with Mobility Features. Facilities, other than those containing emergency transportable housing units, shall comply with F233.4.1.1. Facilities containing emergency transportable housing units shall comply with F233.4.1.2.

F233.4.1.1 Facilities Other Than Those Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, in the facility shall

provide mobility features complying with 809.2 and shall be on an accessible route as required by F206.

EXCEPTION: Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of F233.4.1.1 shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are constructed under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.

F233.4.1.2 Facilities Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. Emergency transportable housing units with mobility features shall be provided in accordance with F233.4.1.2.

F233.4.1.2.1 Private Sites Provided by Occupant of Unit. Where emergency transportable housing units are installed on private sites provided by the occupant of the unit, entities shall provide emergency transportable housing units with mobility features complying with 809.2 as determined by a needs assessment conducted by the entity providing the emergency transportable housing units.

F233.4.1.2.2 Group Sites. Where group sites are developed for the installation of emergency transportable housing units, entities shall comply with 233.3.1.2.2.

F233.4.1.2.2.1 Unit Pads. At least 10 percent, but no fewer than one, of the unit pads prepared for the installation of emergency transportable housing units at each group site shall be designed and constructed to accept the installation of emergency transportable housing units with mobility features complying with 809.2 and shall be on an accessible route as required by F206.

F233.4.1.2.2.2 Units Installed. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of the emergency transportable housing units installed at each group site shall provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

F233.4.2 Residential Dwelling Units with Communication Features. Facilities, other than those containing emergency transportable housing units, shall comply with F233.4.2.1. Facilities containing emergency transportable housing units shall comply with F233.4.2.2.

F233.4.2.1 Facilities Other Than Those Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, in the facility shall provide communication features complying with 809.3.

EXCEPTION: Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of F233.4.2.1 shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are constructed under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.

F233.4.2.2 Facilities Containing Emergency Transportable Housing Units. Entities shall provide emergency transportable housing units with residential dwelling unit smoke alarms complying with 809.3.1 and, where weather alert systems are provided, with weather alert systems complying with 809.3.4 as determined by a needs assessment conducted by the entity providing the emergency transportable housing units.

F233.4.3 Residential Dwelling Units for Sale. Residential dwelling units offered for sale shall provide accessible features to the extent required by regulations issued by Federal agencies under Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended.

F233.4.4 Additions. Where an addition to an existing building results in an increase in the number of residential dwelling units, the requirements of F233.4.1.1 and F233.4.2.1 shall apply only to the residential dwelling units that are added until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by F233.4.1.1 and F233.4.2.1. Residential dwelling units required to comply with F233.4.1.1 shall be on an accessible route as required by F206.

F233.4.5 Alterations. Alterations shall comply with F233.4.5.

EXCEPTION: Where compliance with 809.2.1, 809.2.2, or 809.2.3 is technically infeasible, or where it is technically infeasible to provide an accessible route to a residential dwelling unit, the entity shall be permitted to alter or construct a comparable residential dwelling unit to comply with 809.2 provided that the minimum number of residential dwelling units required by F233.4.1.1 and F233.4.2.1, as applicable, is satisfied.

F233.4.5.1 Alterations to Vacated Buildings. Where a building is vacated for the purposes of alteration, and the altered building contains more than 15 residential dwelling units, at least 5 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with 809.2 and shall be on an accessible route as required by F206. In addition, at least 2 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with 809.3.

F233.4.5.2 Alterations to Individual Residential Dwelling Units. In individual residential dwelling units, where a bathroom or a kitchen is substantially altered, and at least one other room is altered, the requirements of F233.4.1 shall apply to the altered residential dwelling units until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by F233.4.1.1 and F233.4.2.1. Residential dwelling units required to comply with F233.4.1.1 shall be on an accessible route as required by F206.

EXCEPTION: Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of F233.4.1.1 and F233.4.2.1 shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling

units that are altered under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.

**F233.4.6 Dispersion.** Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 and residential dwelling units required to provide communication features complying with 809.3 shall be dispersed among the various types of residential dwelling units in the facility and shall provide choices of residential dwelling units comparable to, and integrated with, those available to other residents.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Where multi-story residential dwelling units are one of the types of residential dwelling units provided, one-story residential dwelling units shall be permitted as a substitute for multi-story residential dwelling units where equivalent spaces and amenities are provided in the one-story residential dwelling unit.

2. Emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 shall not be required to be dispersed among the various types of residential dwelling units in a facility or to provide choices of residential dwelling units comparable to those available to other residents.

#### F234 AMUSEMENT RIDES

**F234.1 General.** Amusement rides shall comply with F234.

**EXCEPTION:** Mobile or portable amusement rides shall not be required to comply with F234.

**F234.2 Load and Unload Areas.** Load and unload areas serving amusement rides shall comply with 1002.3.

**F234.3 Minimum Number.** Amusement rides shall provide at least one wheelchair space complying with 1002.4, or at least one amusement ride seat designed for transfer complying with 1002.5, or at least one transfer device complying with 1002.6.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Amusement rides that are controlled or operated by the rider shall not be required to comply with F234.3.

2. Amusement rides designed primarily for children, where children are assisted on and off the ride by an adult, shall not be required to comply with F234.3.

3. Amusement rides that do not provide amusement ride seats shall not be required to comply with F234.3.

**F234.4 Existing Amusement Rides.** Where existing amusement rides are altered, the alteration shall comply with F234.4.

**F234.4.1 Load and Unload Areas.** Where load and unload areas serving existing amusement rides are newly designed and constructed, the load and unload areas shall comply with 1002.3.

**F234.4.2 Minimum Number.** Where the structural or operational characteristics of an amusement ride are altered to the extent that the amusement ride's performance dif-

fers from that specified by the manufacturer or the original design, the amusement ride shall comply with F234.3.

#### F235 RECREATIONAL BOATING FACILITIES

**F235.1 General.** Recreational boating facilities shall comply with F235.

**F235.2 Boat Slips.** Boat slips complying with 1003.3.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table F235.2. Where the number of boat slips is not identified, each 40 feet (12 m) of boat slip edge provided along the perimeter of the pier shall be counted as one boat slip for the purpose of this section.

TABLE F235.2—BOAT SLIPS

| Total number of boat slips provided in facility | Minimum number of required accessible boat slips          |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 to 25 .....                                   | 1.                                                        |
| 26 to 50 .....                                  | 2.                                                        |
| 51 to 100 .....                                 | 3.                                                        |
| 101 to 150 .....                                | 4.                                                        |
| 151 to 300 .....                                | 5.                                                        |
| 301 to 400 .....                                | 6.                                                        |
| 401 to 500 .....                                | 7.                                                        |
| 501 to 600 .....                                | 8.                                                        |
| 601 to 700 .....                                | 9.                                                        |
| 701 to 800 .....                                | 10.                                                       |
| 801 to 900 .....                                | 11.                                                       |
| 901 to 1000 .....                               | 12.                                                       |
| 1001 and over .....                             | 12, plus 1 for every 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000. |

**F235.2.1 Dispersion.** Boat slips complying with 1003.3.1 shall be dispersed throughout the various types of boat slips provided. Where the minimum number of boat slips required to comply with 1003.3.1 has been met, no further dispersion shall be required.

**F235.3 Boarding Piers at Boat Launch Ramps.** Where boarding piers are provided at boat launch ramps, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of the boarding piers shall comply with 1003.3.2.

#### F236 EXERCISE MACHINES AND EQUIPMENT

**F236.1 General.** At least one of each type of exercise machine and equipment shall comply with 1004.

#### F237 FISHING PIERS AND PLATFORMS

**F237.1 General.** Fishing piers and platforms shall comply with 1005.

#### F238 GOLF FACILITIES

**F238.1 General.** Golf facilities shall comply with F238.

**F238.2 Golf Courses.** Golf courses shall comply with F238.2.

**F238.2.1 Teeing Grounds.** Where one teeing ground is provided for a hole, the teeing ground shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground. Where two teeing grounds are provided for a hole, the forward teeing ground

shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground. Where three or more teeing grounds are provided for a hole, at least two teeing grounds, including the forward teeing ground, shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit each teeing ground.

EXCEPTION: In existing golf courses, the forward teeing ground shall not be required to be one of the teeing grounds on a hole designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground where compliance is not feasible due to terrain.

F238.2.2 Putting Greens. Putting greens shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the putting green.

F238.2.3 Weather Shelters. Where provided, weather shelters shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the weather shelter and shall comply with 1006.4.

F238.3 Practice Putting Greens, Practice Teeing Grounds, and Teeing Stations at Driving Ranges. At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds, and teeing stations at driving ranges shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the practice putting greens, practice *teeing grounds*, and teeing stations at driving ranges.

#### F239 MINIATURE GOLF FACILITIES

F239.1 General. Miniature golf facilities shall comply with F239.

F239.2 Minimum Number. At least 50 percent of holes on miniature golf courses shall comply with 1007.3.

F239.3 Miniature Golf Course Configuration. Miniature golf courses shall be configured so that the holes complying with 1007.3 are consecutive. Miniature golf courses shall provide an accessible route from the last hole complying with 1007.3 to the course entrance or exit without requiring travel through any other holes on the course.

EXCEPTION: One break in the sequence of consecutive holes shall be permitted provided that the last hole on the miniature golf course is the last hole in the sequence.

#### F240 PLAY AREAS

F240.1 General. Play areas for children ages 2 and over shall comply with F240. Where separate play areas are provided with-

in a site for specific age groups, each play area shall comply with F240.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Play areas located in family child care facilities where the proprietor actually resides shall not be required to comply with F240.

2. In existing play areas, where play components are relocated for the purposes of creating safe use zones and the ground surface is not altered or extended for more than one use zone, the play area shall not be required to comply with F240.

3. Amusement attractions shall not be required to comply with F240.

4. Where play components are altered and the ground surface is not altered, the ground surface shall not be required to comply with 1008.2.6 unless required by F202.4.

F240.1.1 Additions. Where play areas are designed and constructed in phases, the requirements of F240 shall apply to each successive addition so that when the addition is completed, the entire play area complies with all the applicable requirements of F240.

F240.2 Play Components. Where provided, play components shall comply with F240.2.

F240.2.1 Ground Level Play Components. Ground level play components shall be provided in the number and types required by F240.2.1. Ground level play components that are provided to comply with F240.2.1.1 shall be permitted to satisfy the additional number required by F240.2.1.2 if the minimum required types of play components are satisfied. Where two or more required ground level play components are provided, they shall be dispersed throughout the play area and integrated with other play components.

F240.2.1.1 Minimum Number and Types. Where ground level play components are provided, at least one of each type shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 1008.4.

F240.2.1.2 Additional Number and Types. Where elevated play components are provided, ground level play components shall be provided in accordance with Table F240.2.1.2 and shall comply with 1008.4.

EXCEPTION: If at least 50 percent of the elevated play components are connected by a ramp and at least 3 of the elevated play components connected by the ramp are different types of play components, the play area shall not be required to comply with F240.2.1.2.

TABLE F240.2.1.2—NUMBER AND TYPES OF GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENTS REQUIRED TO BE ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

| Number of elevated play components provided | Minimum number of ground level play components required to be on an accessible route | Minimum number of different types of ground level play components required to be on an accessible route |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 .....                                     | Not applicable .....                                                                 | Not applicable.                                                                                         |
| 2 to 4 .....                                | 1 .....                                                                              | 1.                                                                                                      |
| 5 to 7 .....                                | 2 .....                                                                              | 2.                                                                                                      |
| 8 to 10 .....                               | 3 .....                                                                              | 3.                                                                                                      |
| 11 to 13 .....                              | 4 .....                                                                              | 3.                                                                                                      |

TABLE F240.2.1.2—NUMBER AND TYPES OF GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENTS REQUIRED TO BE ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES—Continued

| Number of elevated play components provided | Minimum number of ground level play components required to be on an accessible route | Minimum number of different types of ground level play components required to be on an accessible route |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 14 to 16 .....                              | 5 .....                                                                              | 3.                                                                                                      |
| 17 to 19 .....                              | 6 .....                                                                              | 3.                                                                                                      |
| 20 to 22 .....                              | 7 .....                                                                              | 4.                                                                                                      |
| 23 to 25 .....                              | 8 .....                                                                              | 4.                                                                                                      |
| 26 and over .....                           | 8, plus 1 for each additional 3, or fraction thereof, over 25.                       | 5.                                                                                                      |

**F240.2.2 Elevated Play Components.** Where elevated play components are provided, at least 50 percent shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with 1008.4.

#### F241 SAUNAS AND STEAM ROOMS

**F241.1 General.** Where provided, saunas and steam rooms shall comply with 612.

**EXCEPTION:** Where saunas or steam rooms are clustered at a single location, no more than 5 percent of the saunas and steam rooms, but no fewer than one, of each type in each cluster shall be required to comply with 612.

#### F242 SWIMMING POOLS, WADING POOLS, AND SPAS

**F242.1 General.** Swimming pools, wading pools, and spas shall comply with F242.

**F242.2 Swimming Pools.** At least two accessible means of entry shall be provided for swimming pools. Accessible means of entry shall be swimming pool lifts complying with 1009.2; sloped entries complying with 1009.3; transfer walls complying with 1009.4; transfer systems complying with 1009.5; and pool stairs complying with 1009.6. At least one accessible means of entry provided shall comply with 1009.2 or 1009.3.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Where a swimming pool has less than 300 linear feet (91 m) of swimming pool wall, no more than one accessible means of entry shall be required provided that the accessible means of entry is a swimming pool lift complying with 1009.2 or sloped entry complying with 1009.3.

2. Wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools, and other pools where user access is limited to one area shall not be required to provide more than one accessible means of entry provided that the accessible means of entry is a swimming pool lift complying with 1009.2, a sloped entry complying with 1009.3, or a transfer system complying with 1009.5.

3. Catch pools shall not be required to provide an accessible means of entry provided that the catch pool edge is on an accessible route.

**F242.3 Wading Pools.** At least one accessible means of entry shall be provided for wading pools. Accessible means of entry

shall comply with sloped entries complying with 1009.3.

**F242.4 Spas.** At least one accessible means of entry shall be provided for spas. Accessible means of entry shall comply with swimming pool lifts complying with 1009.2; transfer walls complying with 1009.4; or transfer systems complying with 1009.5.

**EXCEPTION:** Where spas are provided in a cluster, no more than 5 percent, but no fewer than one, spa in each cluster shall be required to comply with F242.4.

#### F243 SHOOTING FACILITIES WITH FIRING POSITIONS

**F243.1 General.** Where shooting facilities with firing positions are designed and constructed at a site, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of firing position shall comply with 1010.

#### F244 CAMPING FACILITIES

**F244.1 General.** Camping facilities, other than camping facilities on trails, shall comply with F244.

**F244.2 Camping Units with Mobility Features.** Camping facilities shall provide camping units with mobility features complying with F244.2 in accordance with Table F244.2. Where a camping facility provides different types of camping units, Table F244.2 shall apply to each type of camping unit provided.

TABLE F244.2—CAMPING UNITS WITH MOBILITY FEATURES

| Total number of camping units provided in camping facility | Minimum number of camping units with mobility features required |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 .....                                                    | 1.                                                              |
| 2 to 25 .....                                              | 2.                                                              |
| 26 to 50 .....                                             | 3.                                                              |
| 51 to 75 .....                                             | 4.                                                              |
| 76 to 100 .....                                            | 5.                                                              |
| 101 to 150 .....                                           | 7.                                                              |
| 151 to 200 .....                                           | 8.                                                              |
| 201 and over .....                                         | 8, plus 2 percent of the number over 200.                       |

**F244.2.1 Alterations and Additions.** Where camping units are altered or added, the requirements of F244.2 shall apply only to the

camping units that are altered or added until the number of camping units with mobility features complies with the minimum number required in Table 244.2.

**EXCEPTION:** Where an entity is implementing a transition plan for program accessibility developed pursuant to regulations issued under section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act that designates specific camping units to provide mobility features complying with F244.2, the entity shall not be required to comply with F244.2 when altering individual elements within camping units that are not designated to provide mobility features complying with F244.2.

**F244.2.2 Dispersion.** Camping units required to provide mobility features complying with F244.2 shall provide choices of camping units comparable to, and integrated with, those available to others.

**F244.2.3 Elements Within Camping Units with Mobility Features.** Elements within camping units required to provide mobility features shall comply with F244.2.3.

**F244.2.3.1 Outdoor Constructed Features.** Where provided, at least one of each type of outdoor constructed features shall comply with 1011. Where more than one of the same type of outdoor constructed features is provided, at least two of the same type of outdoor constructed features shall comply with 1011.

**F244.2.3.2 Parking Spaces.** Where provided, parking spaces shall comply with F244.2.3.2.

**F244.2.3.2.1 Recreational Vehicles.** Where parking spaces are provided for recreational vehicles, at least one parking space shall comply with 1012.2, 1012.4, and 1012.5. Where more than one parking space is provided for recreational vehicles, at least two parking spaces shall comply with 1012.2, 1012.4, and 1012.5.

**F244.2.3.2.2 Vehicles Other Than Recreational Vehicles.** Where parking spaces are provided for vehicles other than recreational vehicles, at least one parking space shall comply with 1012.3, 1012.4, and 1012.5. Where more than one parking space is provided for a vehicle other than a recreational vehicle, at least two parking spaces shall comply with 1012.3, 1012.4, and 1012.5.

**244.2.3.3 Tent Pads and Tent Platforms.** Where provided, at least one tent pad and tent platform shall comply with 1013. Where more than one tent pad and tent platform is provided, at least two tent pads and tent platforms shall comply with 1013.

**F244.2.3.4 Camp Shelters.** Where provided, at least one camp shelter shall comply with 1014. Where more than one camp shelter is provided, at least two camp shelters shall comply with 1014.

**F244.3 Outdoor Constructed Features in Common Use and Public Use Areas.** Where provided in common use and public use areas that serve camping units with mobility fea-

tures, at least 20 percent, but not less than one, of each type of outdoor constructed feature provided at each location shall comply with 1011.

**F244.4 Pull-up Spaces for Recreational Vehicles at Dump Stations.** Where provided, pull-up spaces for recreational vehicles at dump stations shall comply with 1012.2, 1012.4, and 1012.5.

**F244.5 Outdoor Recreation Access Routes.** Camping facilities shall provide outdoor recreation access routes complying with 1016 in accordance with F244.5.

**F244.5.1 Routes Within Camping Units with Mobility Features.** At least one outdoor recreation access route shall connect accessible elements, spaces, and facilities provided within camping units with mobility features.

**F244.5.2 Routes to and Within Common Use and Public Use Areas.** Common use and public use areas serving camping units with mobility features shall provide outdoor recreation access routes in accordance with F244.5.2.

**EXCEPTION:** Outdoor recreation access routes shall not be required to connect camping units with mobility features and recreational vehicle dump stations where a pull-up space complying with 1012.2, 1012.4, and 1012.5 is provided at the dump station for recreational vehicles.

**F244.5.2.1 Routes to Common Use and Public Use Areas.** At least one outdoor recreation access route shall connect each camping unit with mobility features with common use and public use areas serving the unit.

**F244.5.2.2 Routes Within Common Use and Public Use Areas.** At least one outdoor recreation access route shall connect accessible elements, spaces, and facilities provided within common use and public use areas serving camping units with mobility features.

**F244.5.3 Routes to Adjacent Recreation Facilities.** Where a circulation path connects camping facilities and adjacent recreation facilities, at least one outdoor recreation access route shall connect camping units with mobility features to an accessible route serving the adjacent recreation facilities.

**F244.5.4 Location.** Outdoor recreation access routes required by F244.5.2 and F244.5.3 shall coincide with or be located in the same area as general circulation paths.

#### F245 PICNIC FACILITIES

**F245.1 General.** Picnic facilities, other than picnic facilities on trails, shall comply with F245.

**F245.2 Picnic Units with Mobility Features.** Picnic facilities shall provide picnic units with mobility features in accordance with F245.2.

**F245.2.1 Picnic Facilities with Two or Fewer Picnic Units.** Where picnic facilities

contain two or fewer picnic units, each picnic unit shall provide mobility features complying with F245.2.

**F245.2.2 Picnic Facilities with More Than Two Picnic Units.** Where picnic facilities contain more than two picnic units, at least 20 percent, but not less than two, of the picnic units shall provide mobility features complying with F245.2.

**F245.2.3 Alterations and Additions.** Where picnic units are altered or added, the requirements of F245.2 shall apply only to the picnic units that are altered or added until the number of picnic units with mobility features complies with the minimum number required in F245.2.1 or F245.2.2.

**EXCEPTION:** Where an entity is implementing a transition plan for program accessibility developed pursuant to regulations issued under section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act that designates specific picnic units to provide mobility features complying with F245.2, the entity shall not be required to comply with F245.2 when altering individual elements within picnic units that are not designated to provide mobility features complying with F245.2.

**F245.2.4 Dispersion.** Picnic units required to provide mobility features complying with F245.2 shall provide choices of picnic units comparable to, and integrated with, those available to others.

**F245.2.5 Elements Within Picnic Units with Mobility Features.** Elements within picnic units required to provide mobility features shall comply with F245.2.5.

**F245.2.5.1 Outdoor Constructed Features.** Where provided, at least one of each type of outdoor constructed feature shall comply with 1011. Where more than one of the same type of outdoor constructed feature is provided, at least two of the same type of outdoor constructed features shall comply with 1011.

**F245.2.5.2 Parking Spaces.** Where provided, at least one parking space shall comply with 1012.3, 1012.4, and 1012.5. Where more than one parking space is provided, at least two parking spaces shall comply with 1012.3, 1012.4, and 1012.5.

**F245.3 Outdoor Constructed Features in Common Use and Public Use Areas.** Where provided in common use and public use areas that serve picnic units with mobility features, at least 20 percent, but not less than one, of each type of outdoor constructed feature provided at each location shall comply with 1011.

**F245.4 Outdoor Recreation Access Routes.** Picnic facilities shall provide outdoor recreation access routes complying with 1016 in accordance with F245.4.

**F245.4.1 Routes Within Picnic Units with Mobility Features.** At least one outdoor recreation access route shall connect accessible elements, spaces, and facilities pro-

vided within picnic units with mobility features.

**F245.4.2 Routes to and Within Common Use and Public Use Areas.** Common use and public use areas serving picnic units with mobility features shall provide outdoor recreation access routes in accordance with F245.4.2.

**F245.4.2.1 Routes to Common Use and Public Use Areas.** At least one outdoor recreation access route shall connect each picnic unit with mobility features with common use and public use areas serving that unit.

**F245.4.2.2 Routes Within Common Use and Public Use Areas.** At least one outdoor recreation access route shall connect accessible elements, spaces, and facilities provided within common use and public use areas serving picnic units with mobility features.

**F245.4.3 Routes to Adjacent Recreation Facilities.** Where a circulation path connects picnic facilities and adjacent recreation facilities, at least one outdoor recreation access route shall connect picnic units with mobility features to an accessible route serving the adjacent recreation facilities.

**F245.4.4 Location.** Outdoor recreation access routes required by F245.4.2 and F245.4.3 shall coincide with or be located in the same area as general circulation paths.

#### F246 VIEWING AREAS

**F246.1 General.** Viewing areas, other than viewing areas on trails, shall comply with F246.1.

**F246.2 Distinct Viewing Locations.** Each distinct viewing location within a viewing area shall comply with 1015.

**F246.3 Outdoor Constructed Features.** Where provided within viewing areas, at least 20 percent, but not less than one, of each type of outdoor constructed feature shall comply with 1011.

**F246.4 Outdoor Recreation Access Routes.** At least one outdoor recreation access route complying with 1016 shall connect accessible parking spaces or other arrival points serving the viewing area with accessible elements, spaces, and facilities provided within the viewing area.

#### F247 TRAILS

**F247.1 General.** Where a trail is designed for use by hikers or pedestrians and directly connects to a trailhead or another trail that substantially meets the requirements in 1017, the trail shall comply with 1017.

**F247.2 Existing Trails.** Where the original design, function, or purpose of an existing trail is changed and the altered portion of the trail directly connects to a trailhead or another trail that substantially meets the requirements in 1017, the altered portion of the trail shall comply with 1017.

**F247.3 Trailheads.** Trailheads shall comply with F247.3.

**F247.3.1 Outdoor Constructed Features.** Where provided within trailheads, at least 20 percent, but not less than one, of each type of outdoor constructed feature shall comply with 1011.

**F247.3.2 Outdoor Recreation Access Routes.** At least one outdoor recreation access route complying with 1016 shall connect the following:

1. Accessible parking spaces or other arrival points serving the trailhead;
2. Starting point of the trail; and
3. Accessible elements, spaces, and facilities provided within the trailhead.

**F247.4 Trail Facilities.** Where provided on trails, facilities shall comply with F247.4.

**F247.4.1 Camping Facilities.** Camping facilities provided on trails shall comply with F244.2 and F244.3.

**F247.4.2 Picnic Facilities.** Picnic facilities provided on trails shall comply with F245.2 and F245.3.

**F247.4.3 Viewing Areas.** Viewing areas provided on trails shall comply with F246.2 and F246.3.

**F247.4.4 Routes.** Routes that connect trails complying with 1017 to camping facilities, picnic facilities, viewing areas, pit toilets, and accessible elements provided within the facilities shall comply with 1017.

**F247.5 Outdoor Constructed Features.** Where outdoor constructed features are provided on trails, other than within facilities specified in F247.4, at least 20 percent, but not less than one, of each type of outdoor constructed feature at each location shall comply with 1011.

#### F248 BEACH ACCESS ROUTES

**F248.1 General.** Beach access routes complying with 1018 shall be provided in accordance with F248.1. Beach access routes shall be permanent or removable.

**EXCEPTION:** Beach access routes shall not be required where pedestrian access to the beach is not permitted.

**F248.1.1 Facilities Serving Beaches.** Beach access routes shall be provided in a number complying with F248.2 where the entity that administers or manages a beach constructs or alters any of the following facilities to serve the beach:

1. Circulation paths;
2. Parking facilities;
3. Toilet facilities; or
4. Bathing facilities.

**EXCEPTION:** The entity shall not be required to expend more than 20 percent of the costs of constructing or altering the facilities to provide beach access routes.

**F248.1.2 Beach Nourishment.** Beach access routes shall be provided in a number complying with F248.2 where the entity that administers or manages a beach undertakes a beach nourishment project.

**EXCEPTION:** The entity shall not be required to expend more than 20 percent of the

costs of a beach nourishment project to provide beach access routes.

**F248.2 Minimum Number.** Where beach access routes are required by F248.1, at least one beach access route shall be provided for each ½ mile (0.8 km) of beach shoreline administered or managed by the entity.

**EXCEPTION:** The number of beach access routes shall not be required to exceed the number of pedestrian access points provided by the entity to a beach.

**F248.3 Location.** Beach access routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as pedestrian access points to the beach.

[78 FR 59509, Sept. 26, 2013, as amended at 78 FR 67303, Nov. 12, 2013; 79 FR 26139, May 7, 2014; 79 FR 57805, Sept. 26, 2014]

**EDITORIAL NOTE:** At 79 FR 26139, May 7, 2014, Appendix C to part 1191 was amended; however, several actions could not be incorporated due to inaccurate amendatory instruction.

#### APPENDIX D TO PART 1191—TECHNICAL

##### CHAPTER 3: BUILDING BLOCKS

##### 301 GENERAL

**301.1 Scope.** The provisions of Chapter 3 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.

##### 302 FLOOR OR GROUND SURFACES

**302.1 General.** Floor and ground surfaces shall be stable, firm, and slip resistant and shall comply with 302.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Within animal containment areas, floor and ground surfaces shall not be required to be stable, firm, and slip resistant.

2. Areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with 302.

**302.2 Carpet.** Carpet or carpet tile shall be securely attached and shall have a firm cushion, pad, or backing or no cushion or pad. Carpet or carpet tile shall have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile, or level cut/uncut pile texture. Pile height shall be ½ inch (13 mm) maximum. Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and shall have trim on the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with 303.

**302.3 Openings.** Openings in floor or ground surfaces shall not allow passage of a sphere more than ½ inch (13 mm) diameter except as allowed in 407.4.3, 409.4.3, 410.4, 810.5.3 and 810.10. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel.

## 303 CHANGES IN LEVEL

303.1 General. Where changes in level are permitted in floor or ground surfaces, they shall comply with 303.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Animal containment areas shall not be required to comply with 303.

2. Areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with 303.

303.2 Vertical. Changes in level of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) high maximum shall be permitted to be vertical.

303.3 Beveled. Changes in level between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) high minimum and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) high maximum shall be beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.

303.4 Ramps. Changes in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) high shall be ramped, and shall comply with 405 or 406.

## 304 TURNING SPACE

304.1 General. Turning space shall comply with 304.

304.2 Floor or Ground Surfaces. Floor or ground surfaces of a turning space shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted.

EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

304.3 Size. Turning space shall comply with 304.3.1 or 304.3.2.

304.3.1 Circular Space. The turning space shall be a space of 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter minimum. The space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with 306.

304.3.2 T-Shaped Space. The turning space shall be a T-shaped space within a 60 inch (1525 mm) square minimum with arms and base 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum. Each arm of the T shall be clear of obstructions 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in each direction and the base shall be clear of obstructions 24 inches (610 mm) minimum. The space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with 306 only at the end of either the base or one arm.

304.4 Door Swing. Doors shall be permitted to swing into turning spaces.

## 305 CLEAR FLOOR OR GROUND SPACE

305.1 General. Clear floor or ground space shall comply with 305.

305.2 Floor or Ground Surfaces. Floor or ground surfaces of a clear floor or ground space shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted.

EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

305.3 Size. The clear floor or ground space shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

305.4 Knee and Toe Clearance. Unless otherwise specified, clear floor or ground space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with 306.

305.5 Position. Unless otherwise specified, clear floor or ground space shall be positioned for either forward or parallel approach to an element.

305.6 Approach. One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space shall adjoin an accessible route or adjoin another clear floor or ground space.

305.7 Maneuvering Clearance. Where a clear floor or ground space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearance shall be provided in accordance with 305.7.1 and 305.7.2.

305.7.1 Forward Approach. Alcoves shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum where the depth exceeds 24 inches (610 mm).

305.7.2 Parallel Approach. Alcoves shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum where the depth exceeds 15 inches (380 mm).

## 306 KNEE AND TOE CLEARANCE

306.1 General. Where space beneath an element is included as part of clear floor or ground space or turning space, the space shall comply with 306. Additional space shall not be prohibited beneath an element but shall not be considered as part of the clear floor or ground space or turning space.

306.2 Toe Clearance.

306.2.1 General. Space under an element between the finish floor or ground and 9 inches (230 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall be considered toe clearance and shall comply with 306.2.

306.2.2 Maximum Depth. Toe clearance shall extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element.

306.2.3 Minimum Required Depth. Where toe clearance is required at an element as part of a clear floor space, the toe clearance shall extend 17 inches (430 mm) minimum under the element.

306.2.4 Additional Clearance. Space extending greater than 6 inches (150 mm) beyond the available knee clearance at 9 inches (230 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall not be considered toe clearance.

306.2.5 Width. Toe clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum.

306.3 Knee Clearance.

306.3.1 General. Space under an element between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall be considered knee clearance and shall comply with 306.3.

306.3.2 Maximum Depth. Knee clearance shall extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element at 9 inches (230 mm) above the finish floor or ground.

306.3.3 Minimum Required Depth. Where knee clearance is required under an element as part of a clear floor space, the knee clearance shall be 11 inches (280 mm) deep minimum at 9 inches (230 mm) above the finish floor or ground, and 8 inches (205 mm) deep

minimum at 27 inches (685 mm) above the finish floor or ground.

306.3.4 Clearance Reduction. Between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the finish floor or ground, the knee clearance shall be permitted to reduce at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for each 6 inches (150 mm) in height.

306.3.5 Width. Knee clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum.

### 307 PROTRUDING OBJECTS

307.1 General. Protruding objects shall comply with 307.

307.2 Protrusion Limits. Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall protrude 4 inches (100 mm) maximum horizontally into the circulation path.

EXCEPTION: Handrails shall be permitted to protrude 4½ inches (115 mm) maximum.

307.3 Post-Mounted Objects. Freestanding objects mounted on posts or pylons shall overhang circulation paths 12 inches (305 mm) maximum when located 27 inches (685 mm) minimum and 80 inches (2030 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Where a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons and the clear distance between the posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the lowest edge of such sign or obstruction shall be 27 inches (685 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

EXCEPTION: The sloping portions of handrails serving stairs and ramps shall not be required to comply with 307.3.

307.4 Vertical Clearance. Vertical clearance shall be 80 inches (2030 mm) high minimum. Guardrails or other barriers shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2030 mm) high. The leading edge of such guardrail or barrier shall be located 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

EXCEPTION: Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

307.5 Required Clear Width. Protruding objects shall not reduce the clear width required for accessible routes.

### 308 REACH RANGES

308.1 General. Reach ranges shall comply with 308.

#### 308.2 Forward Reach.

308.2.1 Unobstructed. Where a forward reach is unobstructed, the high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low forward reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

308.2.2 Obstructed High Reach. Where a high forward reach is over an obstruction, the clear floor space shall extend beneath

the element for a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction. The high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum where the reach depth is 20 inches (510 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 20 inches (510 mm), the high forward reach shall be 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum and the reach depth shall be 25 inches (635 mm) maximum.

#### 308.3 Side Reach.

308.3.1 Unobstructed. Where a clear floor or ground space allows a parallel approach to an element and the side reach is unobstructed, the high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low side reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. An obstruction shall be permitted between the clear floor or ground space and the element where the depth of the obstruction is 10 inches (255 mm) maximum.

2. Operable parts of fuel dispensers shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum measured from the surface of the vehicular way where fuel dispensers are installed on existing curbs.

308.3.2 Obstructed High Reach. Where a clear floor or ground space allows a parallel approach to an element and the high side reach is over an obstruction, the height of the obstruction shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum and the depth of the obstruction shall be 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. The high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 10 inches (255 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 10 inches (255 mm), the high side reach shall be 46 inches (1170 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. The top of washing machines and clothes dryers shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

2. Operable parts of fuel dispensers shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum measured from the surface of the vehicular way where fuel dispensers are installed on existing curbs.

### 309 OPERABLE PARTS

309.1 General. Operable parts shall comply with 309.

309.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided.

309.3 Height. Operable parts shall be placed within one or more of the reach ranges specified in 308.

309.4 Operation. Operable parts shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

EXCEPTION: Gas pump nozzles shall not be required to provide operable parts that have

an activating force of 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

#### CHAPTER 4: ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

##### 401 GENERAL

401.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 4 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.

##### 402 ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

402.1 General. Accessible routes shall comply with 402.

402.2 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components: walking surfaces with a running slope not steeper than 1:20, doorways, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, elevators, and platform lifts. All components of an accessible route shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 4.

##### 403 WALKING SURFACES

403.1 General. Walking surfaces that are a part of an accessible route shall comply with 403.

403.2 Floor or Ground Surface. Floor or ground surfaces shall comply with 302.

403.3 Slope. The running slope of walking surfaces shall not be steeper than 1:20. The cross slope of walking surfaces shall not be steeper than 1:48.

403.4 Changes in Level. Changes in level shall comply with 303.

403.5 Clearances. Walking surfaces shall provide clearances complying with 403.5.

EXCEPTION: Within employee work areas, clearances on common use circulation paths shall be permitted to be decreased by work area equipment provided that the decrease is essential to the function of the work being performed.

403.5.1 Clear Width. Except as provided in 403.5.2 and 403.5.3, the clear width of walking surfaces shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: The clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum.

403.5.2 Clear Width at Turn. Where the accessible route makes a 180 degree turn around an element which is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) wide, clear width shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum at the turn and 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum leaving the turn.

EXCEPTION: Where the clear width at the turn is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum compliance with 403.5.2 shall not be required.

403.5.3 Passing Spaces. An accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either: a space 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum; or, an intersection of two walking surfaces providing a T-shaped space complying with 304.3.2 where the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.

403.6 Handrails. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with running slopes not steeper than 1:20 they shall comply with 505.

##### 404 DOORS, DOORWAYS, AND GATES

404.1 General. Doors, doorways, and gates that are part of an accessible route shall comply with 404.

EXCEPTION: Doors, doorways, and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel shall not be required to comply with 404.2.7, 404.2.8, 404.2.9, 404.3.2 and 404.3.4 through 404.3.7.

404.2 Manual Doors, Doorways, and Manual Gates. Manual doors and doorways and manual gates intended for user passage shall comply with 404.2.

404.2.1 Revolving Doors, Gates, and Turnstiles. Revolving doors, revolving gates, and turnstiles shall not be part of an accessible route.

404.2.2 Double-Leaf Doors and Gates. At least one of the active leaves of doorways with two leaves shall comply with 404.2.3 and 404.2.4.

404.2.3 Clear Width. Door openings shall provide a clear width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum. Clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees. Openings more than 24 inches (610 mm) deep shall provide a clear opening of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. There shall be no projections into the required clear opening width lower than 34 inches (865 mm) above the finish floor or ground. Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (865 mm) and 80 inches (2030 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (100 mm).

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In alterations, a projection of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (16 mm) maximum into the required clear width shall be permitted for the latch side stop.

2. Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

404.2.4 Maneuvering Clearances. Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors and gates shall comply with 404.2.4. Maneuvering clearances shall extend the full width of the doorway and the required latch side or hinge side clearance.

EXCEPTION: Entry doors to hospital patient rooms shall not be required to provide the clearance beyond the latch side of the door.

404.2.4.1 Swinging Doors and Gates. Swinging doors and gates shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.4.1.

TABLE 404.2.4.1—MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT MANUAL SWINGING DOORS AND GATES

| Type of use           |                   | Minimum maneuvering clearance          |                                                      |
|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Approach direction    | Door or gate side | Perpendicular to doorway               | Parallel to doorway (beyond latch side unless noted) |
| From front .....      | Pull .....        | 60 inches (1525 mm) .....              | 18 inches (455 mm).                                  |
| From front .....      | Push .....        | 48 inches (1220 mm) .....              | 0 inches (0 mm). <sup>1</sup>                        |
| From hinge side ..... | Pull .....        | 60 inches (1525 mm) .....              | 36 inches (915 mm).                                  |
| From hinge side ..... | Push .....        | 54 inches (1370 mm) .....              | 42 inches (1065 mm).                                 |
| From latch side ..... | Pull .....        | 42 inches (1065 mm) <sup>2</sup> ..... | 22 inches (560 mm). <sup>3</sup>                     |
| From latch side ..... | Push .....        | 48 inches (1220 mm) <sup>4</sup> ..... | 24 inches (610 mm).                                  |
| From latch side ..... | Push .....        | 42 inches (1065 mm) <sup>4</sup> ..... | 24 inches (610 mm).                                  |

<sup>1</sup>Add 12 inches (305 mm) if closer and latch are provided.

<sup>2</sup>Add 6 inches (150 mm) if closer and latch are provided.

<sup>3</sup>Beyond hinge side.

<sup>4</sup>Add 6 inches (150 mm) if closer is provided.

404.2.4.2 Doorways without Doors or Gates, Sliding Doors, and Folding Doors. Doorways less than 36 inches (915 mm) wide

without doors or gates, sliding doors, or folding doors shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.4.2.

TABLE 404.2.4.2—MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT DOORWAYS WITHOUT DOORS OR GATES, MANUAL SLIDING DOORS, AND MANUAL FOLDING DOORS

| Approach direction           | Minimum maneuvering clearance |                                                           |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
|                              | Perpendicular to doorway      | Parallel to doorway (beyond stop/latch side unless noted) |
| From Front .....             | 48 inches (1220 mm) .....     | 0 inches (0 mm).                                          |
| From side <sup>1</sup> ..... | 42 inches (1065 mm) .....     | 0 inches (0 mm).                                          |
| From pocket/hinge side ..... | 42 inches (1065 mm) .....     | 22 inches (560 mm). <sup>2</sup>                          |
| From stop/latch side .....   | 42 inches (1065 mm) .....     | 24 inches (610 mm).                                       |

<sup>1</sup>Doorway with no door only.

<sup>2</sup>Beyond pocket/hinge side.

404.2.4.3 Recessed Doors and Gates. Maneuvering clearances for forward approach shall be provided when any obstruction within 18 inches (455 mm) of the latch side of a doorway projects more than 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the face of the door, measured perpendicular to the face of the door or gate.

404.2.4.4 Floor or Ground Surface. Floor or ground surface within required maneuvering clearances shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

2. Changes in level at thresholds complying with 404.2.5 shall be permitted.

404.2.5 Thresholds. Thresholds, if provided at doorways, shall be ½ inch (13 mm) high maximum. Raised thresholds and changes in level at doorways shall comply with 302 and 303.

EXCEPTION: Existing or altered thresholds ¾ inch (19 mm) high maximum that have a beveled edge on each side with a slope not

steeper than 1:2 shall not be required to comply with 404.2.5.

404.2.6 Doors in Series and Gates in Series. The distance between two hinged or pivoted doors in series and gates in series shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum plus the width of doors or gates swinging into the space.

404.2.7 Door and Gate Hardware. Handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operable parts on doors and gates shall comply with 309.4. Operable parts of such hardware shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Existing locks shall be permitted in any location at existing glazed doors without stiles, existing overhead rolling doors or grilles, and similar existing doors or grilles that are designed with locks that are activated only at the top or bottom rail.

2. Access gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas, and hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground provided the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices and operated by means of a key, electronic opener, or integral combination lock.

404.2.8 Closing Speed. Door and gate closing speed shall comply with 404.2.8.

404.2.8.1 Door Closers and Gate Closers. Door closers and gate closers shall be adjusted so that from an open position of 90 degrees, the time required to move the door to a position of 12 degrees from the latch is 5 seconds minimum.

404.2.8.2 Spring Hinges. Door and gate spring hinges shall be adjusted so that from the open position of 70 degrees, the door or gate shall move to the closed position in 1.5 seconds minimum.

404.2.9 Door and Gate Opening Force. Fire doors shall have a minimum opening force allowable by the appropriate administrative authority. The force for pushing or pulling open a door or gate other than fire doors shall be as follows:

1. Interior hinged doors and gates: 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

2. Sliding or folding doors: 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door or gate in a closed position.

404.2.10 Door and Gate Surfaces. Swinging door and gate surfaces within 10 inches (255 mm) of the finish floor or ground measured vertically shall have a smooth surface on the push side extending the full width of the door or gate. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in these surfaces shall be within  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other. Cavities created by added kick plates shall be capped.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Sliding doors shall not be required to comply with 404.2.10.

2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or shoe with the top leading edge tapered at 60 degrees minimum from the horizontal shall not be required to meet the 10 inch (255 mm) bottom smooth surface height requirement.

3. Doors and gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (255 mm) of the finish floor or ground shall not be required to comply with 404.2.10.

4. Existing doors and gates without smooth surfaces within 10 inches (255 mm) of the finish floor or ground shall not be required to provide smooth surfaces complying with 404.2.10 provided that if added kick plates are installed, cavities created by such kick plates are capped.

404.2.11 Vision Lights. Doors, gates, and side lights adjacent to doors or gates, con-

taining one or more glazing panels that permit viewing through the panels shall have the bottom of at least one glazed panel located 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

EXCEPTION: Vision lights with the lowest part more than 66 inches (1675 mm) from the finish floor or ground shall not be required to comply with 404.2.11.

404.3 Automatic and Power-Assisted Doors and Gates. Automatic doors and automatic gates shall comply with 404.3. Full-powered automatic doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.10 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Low-energy and power-assisted doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 (1997 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).

404.3.1 Clear Width. Doorways shall provide a clear opening of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum in power-on and power-off mode. The minimum clear width for automatic door systems in a doorway shall be based on the clear opening provided by all leaves in the open position.

404.3.2 Maneuvering Clearance. Clearances at power-assisted doors and gates shall comply with 404.2.4. Clearances at automatic doors and gates without standby power and serving an accessible means of egress shall comply with 404.2.4.

EXCEPTION: Where automatic doors and gates remain open in the power-off condition, compliance with 404.2.4 shall not be required.

404.3.3 Thresholds. Thresholds and changes in level at doorways shall comply with 404.2.5.

404.3.4 Doors in Series and Gates in Series. Doors in series and gates in series shall comply with 404.2.6.

404.3.5 Controls. Manually operated controls shall comply with 309. The clear floor space adjacent to the control shall be located beyond the arc of the door swing.

404.3.6 Break Out Opening. Where doors and gates without standby power are a part of a means of egress, the clear break out opening at swinging or sliding doors and gates shall be 32 inches (815 mm) minimum when operated in emergency mode.

EXCEPTION: Where manual swinging doors and gates comply with 404.2 and serve the same means of egress compliance with 404.3.6 shall not be required.

404.3.7 Revolving Doors, Revolving Gates, and Turnstiles. Revolving doors, revolving gates, and turnstiles shall not be part of an accessible route.

#### 405 RAMPS

405.1 General. Ramps on accessible routes shall comply with 405.

EXCEPTION: In assembly areas, aisle ramps adjacent to seating and not serving elements

required to be on an accessible route shall not be required to comply with 405.

405.2 Slope. Ramp runs shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In existing sites, buildings, and facilities, ramps shall be permitted to have running slopes steeper than 1:12 complying with Table 405.2 where such slopes are necessary due to space limitations.

2. For emergency transportable housing units installed on private sites provided by the occupant of the unit, where existing physical or site constraints prohibit the installation of an entry ramp complying with 405.2, ramps shall be permitted to provide a single ramp run with a slope no steeper than 1:10 provided that the maximum rise of all ramp runs serving the unit entrance is not greater than 36 inches (915 mm).

TABLE 405.2—MAXIMUM RAMP SLOPE AND RISE FOR EXISTING SITES, BUILDINGS, AND FACILITIES

| Slope <sup>1</sup>                           | Maximum rise       |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Steeper than 1:10 but not steeper than 1:8.  | 3 inches (75 mm).  |
| Steeper than 1:12 but not steeper than 1:10. | 6 inches (150 mm). |

<sup>1</sup> A slope steeper than 1:8 is prohibited.

405.3 Cross Slope. Cross slope of ramp runs shall not be steeper than 1:48.

405.4 Floor or Ground Surfaces. Floor or ground surfaces of ramp runs shall comply with 302. Changes in level other than the running slope and cross slope are not permitted on ramp runs.

405.5 Clear Width. The clear width of a ramp run and, where handrails are provided, the clear width between handrails shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: Within employee work areas, the required clear width of ramps that are a part of common use circulation paths shall be permitted to be decreased by work area equipment provided that the decrease is essential to the function of the work being performed.

405.6 Rise. The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (760 mm) maximum.

EXCEPTION: For emergency transportable housing units installed on private sites provided by the occupant of the unit, where existing physical or site constraints prohibit the installation of an entry ramp complying with 405.6, ramps shall be permitted to provide a single ramp run with a rise 36 inches (915 mm) maximum.

405.7 Landings. Ramps shall have landings at the top and the bottom of each ramp run. Landings shall comply with 405.7.

405.7.1 Slope. Landings shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted.

EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

405.7.2 Width. The landing clear width shall be at least as wide as the widest ramp run leading to the landing.

405.7.3 Length. The landing clear length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum.

405.7.4 Change in Direction. Ramps that change direction between runs at landings shall have a clear landing 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

405.7.5 Doorways. Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required by 404.2.4 and 404.3.2 shall be permitted to overlap the required landing area.

405.8 Handrails. Ramp runs with a rise greater than 6 inches (150 mm) shall have handrails complying with 505.

EXCEPTION: Within employee work areas, handrails shall not be required where ramps that are part of common use circulation paths are designed to permit the installation of handrails complying with 505. Ramps not subject to the exception to 405.5 shall be designed to maintain a 36 inch (915 mm) minimum clear width when handrails are installed.

405.9 Edge Protection. Edge protection complying with 405.9.1 or 405.9.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Edge protection shall not be required on ramps that are not required to have handrails and have sides complying with 406.3.

2. Edge protection shall not be required on the sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway.

3. Edge protection shall not be required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical drop-off of ½ inch (13 mm) maximum within 10 inches (255 mm) horizontally of the minimum landing area specified in 405.7.

405.9.1 Extended Floor or Ground Surface. The floor or ground surface of the ramp run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a handrail complying with 505.

405.9.2 Curb or Barrier. A curb or barrier shall be provided that prevents the passage of a 4 inch (100 mm) diameter sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (100 mm) of the finish floor or ground surface.

405.10 Wet Conditions. Landings subject to wet conditions shall be designed to prevent the accumulation of water.

#### 406 CURB RAMPS

406.1 General. Curb ramps on accessible routes shall comply with 406, 405.2 through 405.5, and 405.10.

406.2 Counter Slope. Counter slopes of adjoining gutters and road surfaces immediately adjacent to the curb ramp shall not be steeper than 1:20. The adjacent surfaces at

transitions at curb ramps to walks, gutters, and streets shall be at the same level.

406.3 Sides of Curb Ramps. Where provided, curb ramp flares shall not be steeper than 1:10.

406.4 Landings. Landings shall be provided at the tops of curb ramps. The landing clear length shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. The landing clear width shall be at least as wide as the curb ramp, excluding flared sides, leading to the landing.

EXCEPTION: In alterations, where there is no landing at the top of curb ramps, curb ramp flares shall be provided and shall not be steeper than 1:12.

406.5 Location. Curb ramps and the flared sides of curb ramps shall be located so that they do not project into vehicular traffic lanes, parking spaces, or parking access aisles. Curb ramps at marked crossings shall be wholly contained within the markings, excluding any flared sides.

406.6 Diagonal Curb Ramps. Diagonal or corner type curb ramps with returned curbs or other well-defined edges shall have the edges parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have a clear space 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum outside active traffic lanes of the roadway. Diagonal curb ramps provided at marked crossings shall provide the 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum clear space within the markings. Diagonal curb ramps with flared sides shall have a segment of curb 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing.

406.7 Islands. Raised islands in crossings shall be cut through level with the street or have curb ramps at both sides. Each curb ramp shall have a level area 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum by 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum at the top of the curb ramp in the part of the island intersected by the crossings. Each 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum by 36 inch (915 mm) minimum area shall be oriented so that the 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum length is in the direction of the running slope of the curb ramp it serves. The 48 inch (1220 mm) minimum by 36 inch (915 mm) minimum areas and the accessible route shall be permitted to overlap.

#### 407 ELEVATORS

407.1 General. Elevators shall comply with 407 and with ASME A17.1 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

407.2 Elevator Landing Requirements. Elevator landings shall comply with 407.2.

407.2.1 Call Controls. Where elevator call buttons or keypads are provided, they shall comply with 407.2.1 and 309.4. Call buttons shall be raised or flush.

EXCEPTION: Existing elevators shall be permitted to have recessed call buttons.

407.2.1.1 Height. Call buttons and keypads shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.

EXCEPTION: Existing call buttons and existing keypads shall be permitted to be located at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.

407.2.1.2 Size. Call buttons shall be ¾ inch (19 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension.

EXCEPTION: Existing elevator call buttons shall not be required to comply with 407.2.1.2.

407.2.1.3 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided at call controls.

407.2.1.4 Location. The call button that designates the up direction shall be located above the call button that designates the down direction.

EXCEPTION: Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.1.4.

407.2.1.5 Signals. Call buttons shall have visible signals to indicate when each call is registered and when each call is answered.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.1.5 provided that visible and audible signals complying with 407.2.2 indicating which elevator car to enter are provided.

2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.1.5.

407.2.1.6 Keypads. Where keypads are provided, keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and shall comply with 407.4.7.2.

407.2.2 Hall Signals. Hall signals, including in-car signals, shall comply with 407.2.2.

407.2.2.1 Visible and Audible Signals. A visible and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call and the car's direction of travel. Where in-car signals are provided, they shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call buttons.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Visible and audible signals shall not be required at each destination-oriented elevator where a visible and audible signal complying with 407.2.2 is provided indicating the elevator car designation information.

2. In existing elevators, a signal indicating the direction of car travel shall not be required.

407.2.2.2 Visible Signals. Visible signal fixtures shall be centered at 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground. The visible signal elements shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) minimum measured along the vertical centerline of the element. Signals shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call button.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall be permitted to have signals

visible from the floor area adjacent to the hoistway entrance.

2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.2.2.

407.2.2.3 Audible Signals. Audible signals shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction, or shall have verbal annunciators that indicate the direction of elevator car travel. Audible signals shall have a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum. Verbal annunciators shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3000 Hz maximum. The audible signal and verbal annunciator shall be 10 dB minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured at the hall call button.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.2.2.3 provided that the audible tone and verbal announcement is the same as those given at the call button or call button keypad.

2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with the requirements for frequency and dB range of audible signals.

407.2.2.4 Differentiation. Each destination-oriented elevator in a bank of elevators shall have audible and visible means for differentiation.

407.2.3 Hoistway Signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with 407.2.3.

407.2.3.1 Floor Designation. Floor designations complying with 703.2 and 703.4.1 shall be provided on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. Floor designations shall be provided in both tactile characters and braille. Tactile characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high minimum. A tactile star shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level.

407.2.3.2 Car Designations. Destination-oriented elevators shall provide tactile car identification complying with 703.2 on both jambs of the hoistway immediately below the floor designation. Car designations shall be provided in both tactile characters and braille. Tactile characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high minimum.

407.3 Elevator Door Requirements. Hoistway and car doors shall comply with 407.3.

407.3.1 Type. Elevator doors shall be the horizontal sliding type. Car gates shall be prohibited.

407.3.2 Operation. Elevator hoistway and car doors shall open and close automatically.

EXCEPTION: Existing manually operated hoistway swing doors shall be permitted provided that they comply with 404.2.3 and 404.2.9. Car door closing shall not be initiated until the hoistway door is closed.

407.3.3 Reopening Device. Elevator doors shall be provided with a reopening device complying with 407.3.3 that shall stop and reopen a car door and hoistway door automatically if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person.

EXCEPTION: Existing elevators with manually operated doors shall not be required to comply with 407.3.3.

407.3.3.1 Height. The device shall be activated by sensing an obstruction passing through the opening at 5 inches (125 mm) nominal and 29 inches (735 mm) nominal above the finish floor.

407.3.3.2 Contact. The device shall not require physical contact to be activated, although contact is permitted to occur before the door reverses.

407.3.3.3 Duration. Door reopening devices shall remain effective for 20 seconds minimum.

407.3.4 Door and Signal Timing. The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call or notification of the car assigned at the means for the entry of destination information until the doors of that car start to close shall be calculated from the following equation:  $T = D/(1.5 \text{ ft/s})$  or  $T = D/(455 \text{ mm/s}) = 5$  seconds minimum where T equals the total time in seconds and D equals the distance (in feet or millimeters) from the point in the lobby or corridor 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. For cars with in-car lanterns, T shall be permitted to begin when the signal is visible from the point 60 inches (1525 mm) directly in front of the farthest hall call button and the audible signal is sounded.

2. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.3.4.

407.3.5 Door Delay. Elevator doors shall remain fully open in response to a car call for 3 seconds minimum.

407.3.6 Width. The width of elevator doors shall comply with Table 407.4.1.

EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, a power-operated car door complying with 404.2.3 shall be permitted.

407.4 Elevator Car Requirements. Elevator cars shall comply with 407.4.

407.4.1 Car Dimensions. Inside dimensions of elevator cars and clear width of elevator doors shall comply with Table 407.4.1.

EXCEPTION: Existing elevator car configurations that provide a clear floor area of 16 square feet (1.5 m<sup>2</sup>) minimum and also provide an inside clear depth 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum and a clear width 36 inches (915 mm) minimum shall be permitted.

TABLE 407.4.1—ELEVATOR CAR DIMENSIONS

| Door location             | Minimum dimensions                  |                                  |                                       |                                              |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
|                           | Door clear width                    | Inside car, side to side         | Inside car, back wall to front return | Inside car, back wall to inside face of door |
| Centered .....            | 42 inches (1065 mm) ...             | 80 inches (2030 mm) ...          | 51 inches (1295 mm) ...               | 54 inches (1370 mm).                         |
| Side (off-centered) ..... | 36 inches (915 mm) <sup>1</sup> ... | 68 inches (1725 mm) ...          | 51 inches (1295 mm) ...               | 54 inches (1370 mm).                         |
| Any .....                 | 36 inches (915 mm) <sup>1</sup> ... | 54 inches (1370 mm) ...          | 80 inches (2030 mm) ...               | 80 inches (2030 mm).                         |
| Any .....                 | 36 inches (915 mm) <sup>1</sup> ..  | 60 inches (1525 mm) <sup>2</sup> | 60 inches (1525 mm) <sup>2</sup>      | 60 inches (1525 mm). <sup>2</sup>            |

<sup>1</sup> A tolerance of minus 5/8 inch (16 mm) is permitted.

<sup>2</sup> Other car configurations that provide a turning space complying with 304 with the door closed shall be permitted.

407.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with 302 and 303.

407.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing shall be 1¼ inch (32 mm) maximum.

407.4.4 Leveling. Each car shall be equipped with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring and maintain the car at floor landings within a tolerance of ½ inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.

407.4.5 Illumination. The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, car threshold and car landing sill shall be 5 foot candles (54 lux) minimum.

407.4.6 Elevator Car Controls. Where provided, elevator car controls shall comply with 407.4.6 and 309.4.

EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with 407.4.6 is provided, existing car operating panels shall not be required to comply with 407.4.6.

407.4.6.1 Location. Controls shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where the elevator panel serves more than 16 openings and a parallel approach is provided, buttons with floor designations shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

2. In existing elevators, car control buttons with floor designations shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor where a parallel approach is provided.

407.4.6.2 Buttons. Car control buttons with floor designations shall comply with 407.4.6.2 and shall be raised or flush.

EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, buttons shall be permitted to be recessed.

407.4.6.2.1 Size. Buttons shall be ¾ inch (19 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.

407.4.6.2.2 Arrangement. Buttons shall be arranged with numbers in ascending order. When two or more columns of buttons are provided they shall read from left to right.

407.4.6.3 Keypads. Car control keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and shall comply with 407.4.7.2.

407.4.6.4 Emergency Controls. Emergency controls shall comply with 407.4.6.4.

407.4.6.4.1 Height. Emergency control buttons shall have their centerlines 35 inches (890 mm) minimum above the finish floor.

407.4.6.4.2 Location. Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm, shall be grouped at the bottom of the panel.

407.4.7 Designations and Indicators of Car Controls. Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with 407.4.7.

EXCEPTION: In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with 407.4.7 is provided, existing car operating panels shall not be required to comply with 407.4.7.

407.4.7.1 Buttons. Car control buttons shall comply with 407.4.7.1.

407.4.7.1.1 Type. Control buttons shall be identified by tactile characters complying with 703.2.

407.4.7.1.2 Location. Raised character and braille designations shall be placed immediately to the left of the control button to which the designations apply.

EXCEPTION: Where space on an existing car operating panel precludes tactile markings to the left of the controls, markings shall be placed as near to the control as possible.

407.4.7.1.3 Symbols. The control button for the emergency stop, alarm, door open, door close, main entry floor, and phone shall be identified with tactile symbols as shown in Figure 407.4.7.1.3 at the end of this document.

407.4.7.1.4 Visible Indicators. Buttons with floor designations shall be provided with visible indicators to show that a call has been registered. The visible indication shall extinguish when the car arrives at the designated floor.

407.4.7.2 Keypads. Keypads shall be identified by characters complying with 703.5 and shall be centered on the corresponding keypad button. The number five key shall have a single raised dot. The dot shall be 0.118 inch (3 mm) to 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) base diameter and in other aspects comply with Table 703.3.1.

407.4.8 Car Position Indicators. Audible and visible car position indicators shall be provided in elevator cars.

407.4.8.1 Visible Indicators. Visible indicators shall comply with 407.4.8.1.

407.4.8.1.1 Size. Characters shall be ½ inch (13 mm) high minimum.

407.4.8.1.2 Location. Indicators shall be located above the car control panel or above the door.

407.4.8.1.3 Floor Arrival. As the car passes a floor and when a car stops at a floor served by the elevator, the corresponding character shall illuminate.

EXCEPTION: Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with 407.4.8.1.3 provided that the visible indicators extinguish when the call has been answered.

407.4.8.1.4 Destination Indicator. In destination-oriented elevators, a display shall be provided in the car with visible indicators to show car destinations.

407.4.8.2 Audible Indicators. Audible indicators shall comply with 407.4.8.2.

407.4.8.2.1 Signal Type. The signal shall be an automatic verbal annunciator which announces the floor at which the car is about to stop.

EXCEPTION: For elevators other than destination-oriented elevators that have a rated speed of 200 feet per minute (1 m/s) or less, a non-verbal audible signal with a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum which sounds as the car passes or is about to stop at a floor served by the elevator shall be permitted.

407.4.8.2.2 Signal Level. The verbal annunciator shall be 10 dB minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured at the annunciator.

407.4.8.2.3 Frequency. The verbal annunciator shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum to 3000 Hz maximum.

407.4.9 Emergency Communication. Emergency two-way communication systems shall comply with 308. Tactile symbols and characters shall be provided adjacent to the device and shall comply with 703.2.

#### 408 LIMITED-USE/LIMITED-APPLICATION ELEVATORS

408.1 GENERAL, LIMITED-USE/LIMITED-APPLICATION ELEVATORS SHALL COMPLY WITH 408 AND WITH ASME A17.1 (INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE, SEE “REFERENCED STANDARDS” IN CHAPTER 1). THEY SHALL BE PASSENGER ELEVATORS AS CLASSIFIED BY ASME A17.1. ELEVATOR OPERATION SHALL BE AUTOMATIC.

408.2 Elevator Landings. Landings serving limited-use/limited-application elevators shall comply with 408.2.

408.2.1 Call Buttons. Elevator call buttons and keypads shall comply with 407.2.1.

408.2.2 Hall Signals. Hall signals shall comply with 407.2.2.

408.2.3 Hoistway Signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with 407.2.3.1.

408.3 Elevator Doors. Elevator hoistway doors shall comply with 408.3.

408.3.1 Sliding Doors. Sliding hoistway and car doors shall comply with 407.3.1 through 407.3.3 and 408.4.1.

408.3.2 Swinging Doors. Swinging hoistway doors shall open and close auto-

matically and shall comply with 404, 407.3.2 and 408.3.2.

408.3.2.1 Power Operation. Swinging doors shall be power-operated and shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 (1997 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see “Referenced Standards” in Chapter 1).

408.3.2.2 Duration. Power-operated swinging doors shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.

408.4 Elevator Cars. Elevator cars shall comply with 408.4.

408.4.1 Car Dimensions and Doors. Elevator cars shall provide a clear width 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum and a clear depth 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum. Car doors shall be positioned at the narrow ends of cars and shall provide 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear width.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Cars that provide a clear width 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum shall be permitted to provide a clear depth 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum provided that car doors provide a clear opening 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum.

2. Existing elevator cars shall be permitted to provide a clear width 36 inches (915 mm) minimum, clear depth 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum, and a net clear platform area 15 square feet (1.4 m<sup>2</sup>) minimum.

408.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with 302 and 303.

408.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The platform to hoistway clearance shall comply with 407.4.3.

408.4.4 Leveling. Elevator car leveling shall comply with 407.4.4.

408.4.5 Illumination. Elevator car illumination shall comply with 407.4.5.

408.4.6 Car Controls. Elevator car controls shall comply with 407.4.6. Control panels shall be centered on a side wall.

408.4.7 Designations and Indicators of Car Controls. Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with 407.4.7.

408.4.8 Emergency Communications. Car emergency signaling devices complying with 407.4.9 shall be provided.

#### 409 PRIVATE RESIDENCE ELEVATORS

409.1 General. Private residence elevators that are provided within a residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2 shall comply with 409 and with ASME A17.1 (incorporated by reference, see “Referenced Standards” in Chapter 1). They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

409.2 Call Buttons. Call buttons shall be ¾ inch (19 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension and shall comply with 309.

409.3 Elevator Doors. Hoistway doors, car doors, and car gates shall comply with 409.3 and 404.

EXCEPTION: Doors shall not be required to comply with the maneuvering clearance requirements in 404.2.4.1 for approaches to the push side of swinging doors.

409.3.1 Power Operation. Elevator car and hoistway doors and gates shall be power operated and shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 (1997 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Power operated doors and gates shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.

EXCEPTION: In elevator cars with more than one opening, hoistway doors and gates shall be permitted to be of the manual-open, self-close type.

409.3.2 Location. Elevator car doors or gates shall be positioned at the narrow end of the clear floor spaces required by 409.4.1.

409.4 Elevator Cars. Private residence elevator cars shall comply with 409.4.

409.4.1 Inside Dimensions of Elevator Cars. Elevator cars shall provide a clear floor space of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum and shall comply with 305.

409.4.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with 302 and 303.

409.4.3 Platform to Hoistway Clearance. The clearance between the car platform and the edge of any landing sill shall be 1½ inch (38 mm) maximum.

409.4.4 Leveling. Each car shall automatically stop at a floor landing within a tolerance of ½ inch (13 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.

409.4.5 Illumination Levels. Elevator car illumination shall comply with 407.4.5.

409.4.6 Car Controls. Elevator car control buttons shall comply with 409.4.6, 309.3, 309.4, and shall be raised or flush.

409.4.6.1 Size. Control buttons shall be ¾ inch (19 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.

409.4.6.2 Location. Control panels shall be on a side wall, 12 inches (305 mm) minimum from any adjacent wall.

409.4.7 Emergency Communications. Emergency two-way communication systems shall comply with 409.4.7.

409.4.7.1 Type. A telephone and emergency signal device shall be provided in the car.

409.4.7.2 Operable Parts. The telephone and emergency signaling device shall comply with 309.3 and 309.4.

409.4.7.3 Compartment. If the telephone or device is in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware shall comply with 309.

409.4.7.4 Cord. The telephone cord shall be 29 inches (735 mm) long minimum.

#### 410 PLATFORM LIFTS

410.1 General. Platform lifts shall comply with ASME A18.1 (1999 edition or 2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Platform

lifts shall not be attendant operated and shall provide unassisted entry and exit from the lift.

410.2 Floor Surfaces. Floor surfaces in platform lifts shall comply with 302 and 303.

410.3 Clear Floor Space. Clear floor space in platform lifts shall comply with 305.

410.4 Platform to Runway Clearance. The clearance between the platform sill and the edge of any runway landing shall be 1¼ inch (32 mm) maximum.

410.5 Operable Parts. Controls for platform lifts shall comply with 309.

410.6 Doors and Gates. Platform lifts shall have low-energy power operated doors or gates complying with 404.3. Doors shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum. End doors and gates shall provide a clear width 32 inches (815 mm) minimum. Side doors and gates shall provide a clear width 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: Platform lifts serving two landings maximum and having doors or gates on opposite sides shall be permitted to have self-closing manual doors or gates.

#### CHAPTER 5: GENERAL SITE AND BUILDING ELEMENTS

##### 501 GENERAL

501.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 5 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.

##### 502 PARKING SPACES

502.1 General. Car and van parking spaces shall comply with 502. Where parking spaces are marked with lines, width measurements of parking spaces and access aisles shall be made from the centerline of the markings.

EXCEPTION: Where parking spaces or access aisles are not adjacent to another parking space or access aisle, measurements shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the parking space or access aisle.

502.2 Vehicle Spaces. Car parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum and van parking spaces shall be 132 inches (3350 mm) wide minimum, shall be marked to define the width, and shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with 502.3.

EXCEPTION: Van parking spaces shall be permitted to be 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum where the access aisle is 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum.

502.3 Access Aisle. Access aisles serving parking spaces shall comply with 502.3. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Two parking spaces shall be permitted to share a common access aisle.

502.3.1 Width. Access aisles serving car and van parking spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.

502.3.2 Length. Access aisles shall extend the full length of the parking spaces they serve.

502.3.3 Marking. Access aisles shall be marked so as to discourage parking in them.

502.3.4 Location. Access aisles shall not overlap the vehicular way. Access aisles shall be permitted to be placed on either side of the parking space except for angled van parking spaces which shall have access aisles located on the passenger side of the parking spaces.

502.4 Floor or Ground Surfaces. Parking spaces and access aisles serving them shall comply with 302. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the parking spaces they serve. Changes in level are not permitted.

EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

502.5 Vertical Clearance. Parking spaces for vans and access aisles and vehicular routes serving them shall provide a vertical clearance of 98 inches (2490 mm) minimum.

502.6 Identification. Parking space identification signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with 703.7.2.1. Signs identifying van parking spaces shall contain the designation “van accessible.” Signs shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface measured to the bottom of the sign.

502.7 Relationship to Accessible Routes. Parking spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that cars and vans, when parked, cannot obstruct the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes.

#### 503 PASSENGER LOADING ZONES

503.1 General. Passenger loading zones shall comply with 503.

503.2 Vehicle Pull-Up Space. Passenger loading zones shall provide a vehicular pull-up space 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum and 20 feet (6100 mm) long minimum.

503.3 Access Aisle. Passenger loading zones shall provide access aisles complying with 503 adjacent to the vehicle pull-up space. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route and shall not overlap the vehicular way.

503.3.1 Width. Access aisles serving vehicle pull-up spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.

503.3.2 Length. Access aisles shall extend the full length of the vehicle pull-up spaces they serve.

503.3.3 Marking. Access aisles shall be marked so as to discourage parking in them.

503.4 Floor and Ground Surfaces. Vehicle pull-up spaces and access aisles serving them shall comply with 302. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the vehicle pull-up space they serve. Changes in level are not permitted.

EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

503.5 Vertical Clearance. Vehicle pull-up spaces, access aisles serving them, and a vehicular route from an entrance to the passenger loading zone, and from the passenger loading zone to a vehicular exit shall provide a vertical clearance of 114 inches (2895 mm) minimum.

#### 504 STAIRWAYS

504.1 General. Stairs shall comply with 504.

504.2 Treads and Risers. All steps on a flight of stairs shall have uniform riser heights and uniform tread depths. Risers shall be 4 inches (100 mm) high minimum and 7 inches (180 mm) high maximum. Treads shall be 11 inches (280 mm) deep minimum.

504.3 Open Risers. Open risers are not permitted.

504.4 Tread Surface. Stair treads shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted.

EXCEPTION: Treads shall be permitted to have a slope not steeper than 1:48.

504.5 Nosings. The radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be ½ inch (13 mm) maximum. Nosings that project beyond risers shall have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled. Risers shall be permitted to slope under the tread at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical. The permitted projection of the nosing shall extend 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum over the tread below.

504.6 Handrails. Stairs shall have handrails complying with 505.

504.7 Wet Conditions. Stair treads and landings subject to wet conditions shall be designed to prevent the accumulation of water.

#### 505 HANDRAILS

505.1 General. Handrails provided along walking surfaces complying with 403, required at ramps complying with 405, and required at stairs complying with 504 shall comply with 505.

505.2 Where Required. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of stairs and ramps.

EXCEPTION: In assembly areas, handrails shall not be required on both sides of aisle ramps where a handrail is provided at either side or within the aisle width.

505.3 Continuity. Handrails shall be continuous within the full length of each stair flight or ramp run. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg stairs and ramps shall be continuous between flights or runs.

EXCEPTION: In assembly areas, handrails on ramps shall not be required to be continuous in aisles serving seating.

505.4 Height. Top of gripping surfaces of handrails shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum vertically above walking surfaces, stair nosings, and ramp surfaces. Handrails shall

be at a consistent height above walking surfaces, stair nosings, and ramp surfaces.

505.5 Clearance. Clearance between handrail gripping surfaces and adjacent surfaces shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum.

505.6 Gripping Surface. Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length. Where provided, horizontal projections shall occur 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail gripping surface.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.

2. The distance between horizontal projections and the bottom of the gripping surface shall be permitted to be reduced by ¼ inch (3.2 mm) for each ½ inch (13 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension that exceeds 4 inches (100 mm).

505.7 Cross Section. Handrail gripping surfaces shall have a cross section complying with 505.7.1 or 505.7.2.

505.7.1 Circular Cross Section. Handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1¼ inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

505.7.2 Non-Circular Cross Sections. Handrail gripping surfaces with a noncircular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6¼ inches (160 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of 2¼ inches (57 mm) maximum.

505.8 Surfaces. Handrail gripping surfaces and any surfaces adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges.

505.9 Fittings. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

505.10 Handrail Extensions. Handrail gripping surfaces shall extend beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs in accordance with 505.10.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Extensions shall not be required for continuous handrails at the inside turn of switchback or dogleg stairs and ramps.

2. In assembly areas, extensions shall not be required for ramp handrails in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within aisles.

3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails shall not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration.

505.10.1 Top and Bottom Extension at Ramps. Ramp handrails shall extend hori-

zontally above the landing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp run.

505.10.2 Top Extension at Stairs. At the top of a stair flight, handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beginning directly above the first riser nosing. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.

505.10.3 Bottom Extension at Stairs. At the bottom of a stair flight, handrails shall extend at the slope of the stair flight for a horizontal distance at least equal to one tread depth beyond the last riser nosing. Extension shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.

#### CHAPTER 6: PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND FACILITIES

##### 601 GENERAL

601.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 6 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.

##### 602 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

602.1 General. Drinking fountains shall comply with 307 and 602.

602.2 Clear Floor Space. Units shall have a clear floor or ground space complying with 305 positioned for a forward approach and centered on the unit. Knee and toe clearance complying with 306 shall be provided.

EXCEPTION: A parallel approach complying with 305 shall be permitted at units for children's use where the spout is 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground and is 3½ inches (90 mm) maximum from the front edge of the unit, including bumpers.

602.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309.

602.4 Spout Height. Spout outlets shall be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

602.5 Spout Location. The spout shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum from the vertical support and 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front edge of the unit, including bumpers.

602.6 Water Flow. The spout shall provide a flow of water 4 inches (100 mm) high minimum and shall be located 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front of the unit. The angle of the water stream shall be measured horizontally relative to the front face of the unit. Where spouts are located less than 3 inches (75 mm) of the front of the unit, the angle of the water stream shall be 30 degrees maximum. Where spouts are located between

3 inches (75 mm) and 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front of the unit, the angle of the water stream shall be 15 degrees maximum.

602.7 Drinking Fountains for Standing Persons. Spout outlets of drinking fountains for standing persons shall be 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

#### 603 TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.1 General. Toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with 603.

603.2 Clearances. Clearances shall comply with 603.2.

603.2.1 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the room.

603.2.2 Overlap. Required clear floor spaces, clearance at fixtures, and turning space shall be permitted to overlap.

603.2.3 Door Swing. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance required for any fixture. Doors shall be permitted to swing into the required turning space.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Doors to a toilet room or bathing room for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space or clearance provided the swing of the door can be reversed to comply with 603.2.3.

2. Where the toilet room or bathing room is for individual use and a clear floor space complying with 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing, doors shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space or clearance required for any fixture.

603.3 Mirrors. Mirrors located above lavatories or countertops shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Mirrors not located above lavatories or countertops shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 35 inches (890 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

603.4 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308. Shelves shall be located 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

#### 604 WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.1 General. Water closets and toilet compartments shall comply with 604.2 through 604.8.

EXCEPTION: Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use shall be permitted to comply with 604.9.

604.2 Location. The water closet shall be positioned with a wall or partition to the

rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum to 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition, except that the water closet shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment specified in 604.8.2. Water closets shall be arranged for a left-hand or right-hand approach.

604.3 Clearance. Clearances around water closets and in toilet compartments shall comply with 604.3.

604.3.1 Size. Clearance around a water closet shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall.

604.3.2 Overlap. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, dispensers, sanitary napkin disposal units, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space and clearances required at other fixtures, and the turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.

EXCEPTION: In residential dwelling units, a lavatory complying with 606 shall be permitted on the rear wall 18 inches (455 mm) minimum from the water closet centerline where the clearance at the water closet is 66 inches (1675 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall.

604.4 Seats. The seat height of a water closet above the finish floor shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. A water closet in a toilet room for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall not be required to comply with 604.4.

2. In residential dwelling units, the height of water closets shall be permitted to be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the seat.

604.5 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets shall comply with 609. Grab bars shall be provided on the side wall closest to the water closet and on the rear wall.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a toilet room for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 604.5.

2. In residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in toilet or bathrooms provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 604.5.

3. In detention or correction facilities, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in housing or holding cells that are specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

604.5.1 Side Wall. The side wall grab bar shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) long minimum, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extending 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum from the rear wall.

604.5.2 Rear Wall. The rear wall grab bar shall be 36 inches (915 mm) long minimum and extend from the centerline of the water closet 12 inches (305 mm) minimum on one side and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on the other side.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a length of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet.

2. Where an administrative authority requires flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, then the rear grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.

604.6 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with 309. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet except in ambulatory accessible compartments complying with 604.8.2.

604.7 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with 309.4 and shall be 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor and shall not be located behind grab bars. Dispensers shall not be of a type that controls delivery or that does not allow continuous paper flow.

604.8 Toilet Compartments. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall meet the requirements of 604.8.1 and 604.8.3. Compartments containing more than one plumbing fixture shall comply with 603. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with 604.8.2 and 604.8.3.

604.8.1 Wheelchair Accessible Compartments. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with 604.8.1.

604.8.1.1 Size. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 56 inches (1420 mm) deep minimum for wall hung water closets and 59 inches (1500 mm) deep minimum for floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall. Wheelchair accessible compartments for children's use shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 59 inches (1500 mm) deep minimum for wall hung and floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall.

604.8.1.2 Doors. Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with 404 except that if the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. Doors shall be located in the front partition or in the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the front partition, the door opening shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the side wall or partition, the door opening shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front partition. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with 404.2.7 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the minimum required compartment area.

604.8.1.3 Approach. Compartments shall be arranged for left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.

604.8.1.4 Toe Clearance. The front partition and at least one side partition shall provide a toe clearance of 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the finish floor and 6 inches (150 mm) deep minimum beyond the compartment-side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members. Compartments for children's use shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the finish floor.

EXCEPTION: Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a compartment greater than 62 inches (1575 mm) deep with a wall-hung water closet or 65 inches (1650 mm) deep with a floor-mounted water closet. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a compartment greater than 66 inches (1675 mm) wide. Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a compartment for children's use that is greater than 65 inches (1650 mm) deep.

604.8.1.5 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with 609. A sidewall grab bar complying with 604.5.1 shall be provided and shall be located on the wall closest to the water closet. In addition, a rear-wall grab bar complying with 604.5.2 shall be provided.

604.8.2 Ambulatory Accessible Compartments. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with 604.8.2.

604.8.2.1 Size. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall have a depth of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum and a width of 35 inches (890 mm) minimum and 37 inches (940 mm) maximum.

604.8.2.2 Doors. Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with 404, except that if the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with 404.2.7 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the minimum required compartment area.

604.8.2.3 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with 609. A sidewall grab bar complying with 604.5.1 shall be provided on both sides of the compartment.

604.8.3 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308. Shelves shall be located 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

604.9 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments for Children's Use. Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use shall comply with 604.9.

604.9.1 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition, except that the water closet shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment specified in 604.8.2. Compartments shall be arranged for left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.

604.9.2 Clearance. Clearance around a water closet shall comply with 604.3.

604.9.3 Height. The height of water closets shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) maximum measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

604.9.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars for water closets shall comply with 604.5.

604.9.5 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with 309.2 and 309.4 and shall be installed 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet except in ambulatory accessible compartments complying with 604.8.2.

604.9.6 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with 309.4 and shall be 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The

outlet of the dispenser shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finish floor. There shall be a clearance of 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum below the grab bar. Dispensers shall not be of a type that controls delivery or that does not allow continuous paper flow.

604.9.7 Toilet Compartments. Toilet compartments shall comply with 604.8.

#### 605 URINALS

605.1 General. Urinals shall comply with 605.

605.2 Height and Depth. Urinals shall be the stall-type or the wall-hung type with the rim 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Urinals shall be 13½ inches (345 mm) deep minimum measured from the outer face of the urinal rim to the back of the fixture.

605.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 positioned for forward approach shall be provided.

605.4 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with 309.

#### 606 LAVATORIES AND SINKS

606.1 General. Lavatories and sinks shall comply with 606.

606.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with 305, positioned for a forward approach, and knee and toe clearance complying with 306 shall be provided.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. A parallel approach complying with 305 shall be permitted to a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided and to wet bars.

2. A lavatory in a toilet room or bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall not be required to provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306.

3. In residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, cabinetry shall be permitted under lavatories and kitchen sinks provided that all of the following conditions are met:

(a) The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the fixture;

(b) The finish floor extends under the cabinetry; and

(c) The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.

4. A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children 6 through 12 years where the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

5. A parallel approach complying with 305 shall be permitted to lavatories and sinks used primarily by children 5 years and younger.

6. The dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.

7. No more than one bowl of a multi-bowl sink shall be required to provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306.

606.3 Height. Lavatories and sinks shall be installed with the front of the higher of the rim or counter surface 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. A lavatory in a toilet or bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall not be required to comply with 606.3.

2. In residential dwelling unit kitchens, sinks that are adjustable to variable heights, 29 inches (735 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum, shall be permitted where rough-in plumbing permits connections of supply and drain pipes for sinks mounted at the height of 29 inches (735 mm).

606.4 Faucets and water spray units. Controls for faucets shall comply with 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum. Faucets and Water Spray Units. A water spray unit shall be provided at the kitchen sink in emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2.

606.5 Exposed Pipes and Surfaces. Water supply and drain pipes under lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories and sinks.

#### 607 BATHTUBS

607.1 General. Bathtubs shall comply with 607.

607.2 Clearance. Clearance in front of bathtubs shall extend the length of the bathtub and shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum. A lavatory complying with 606 shall be permitted at the control end of the clearance. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

607.3 Seat. A permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats shall comply with 610.

607.4 Grab Bars. Grab bars for bathtubs shall comply with 609 and shall be provided in accordance with 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathtub located in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use provided that reinforcement has been installed in

walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 607.4.

2. In residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in bathtubs located in bathing facilities provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 607.4.

607.4.1 Bathtubs With Permanent Seats. For bathtubs with permanent seats, grab bars shall be provided in accordance with 607.4.1.

607.4.1.1 Back Wall. Two grab bars shall be installed on the back wall, one located in accordance with 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be installed 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the head end wall and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.1.2 Control End Wall. A grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

607.4.2 Bathtubs Without Permanent Seats. For bathtubs without permanent seats, grab bars shall comply with 607.4.2.

607.4.2.1 Back Wall. Two grab bars shall be installed on the back wall, one located in accordance with 609.4 and other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum and shall be installed 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.2.2 Control End Wall. A grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

607.4.2.3 Head End Wall. A grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be located on an end wall. Controls shall be between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with 309.4.

607.6 Shower Spray Unit and Water. A shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum that can be used both as a fixed-position shower head and as a handheld shower shall be provided. The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to

obstruct the use of grab bars. Bathtub shower spray units shall deliver water that is 120 °F (49 °C) maximum.

607.7 Bathtub Enclosures. Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the open face of the bathtub.

#### 608 SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.1 General. Shower compartments shall comply with 608.

608.2 Size and Clearances for Shower Compartments. Shower compartments shall have sizes and clearances complying with 608.2.

608.2.1 Transfer Type Shower Compartments. Transfer type shower compartments shall be 36 inches (915 mm) by 36 inches (915 mm) clear inside dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides and shall have a 36 inch (915 mm) wide minimum entry on the face of the shower compartment. Clearance of 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum measured from the control wall shall be provided.

608.2.2 Standard Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. Standard roll-in type shower compartments shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) deep minimum clear inside dimensions measured at center points of opposing sides and shall have a 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum entry on the face of the shower compartment.

608.2.2.1 Clearance. A 30 inch (760 mm) wide minimum by 60 inch (1525 mm) long minimum clearance shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the shower compartment.

EXCEPTION: A lavatory complying with 606 shall be permitted on one 30 inch (760 mm) wide minimum side of the clearance provided that it is not on the side of the clearance adjacent to the controls or, where provided, not the side of the clearance adjacent to the shower seat.

608.2.3 Alternate Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. Alternate roll-in type shower compartments shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep minimum clear inside dimensions measured at center points of opposing sides. A 36 inch (915 mm) wide minimum entry shall be provided at one end of the long side of the compartment.

608.3 Grab Bars. Grab bars shall comply with 609 and shall be provided in accordance with 608.3. Where multiple grab bars are used, required horizontal grab bars shall be installed at the same height above the finish floor.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a shower located in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office, and

not for common use or public use provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 608.3.

2. In residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in showers located in bathing facilities provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with 608.3.

608.3.1 Transfer Type Shower Compartments. In transfer type compartments, grab bars shall be provided across the control wall and back wall to a point 18 inches (455 mm) from the control wall.

608.3.2 Standard Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. Where a seat is provided in standard roll-in type shower compartments, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the side wall opposite the seat. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Where a seat is not provided in standard roll-in type shower compartments, grab bars shall be provided on three walls. Grab bars shall be installed 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.

608.3.3 Alternate Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. In alternate roll-in type shower compartments, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the side wall farthest from the compartment entry. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Grab bars shall be installed 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.

608.4 Seats. A folding or non-folding seat shall be provided in transfer type shower compartments. A folding seat shall be provided in roll-in type showers required in transient lodging guest rooms with mobility features complying with 806.2 and in roll-in type showers provided in emergency transportable housing units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2. Seats shall comply with 610.

EXCEPTION: In residential dwelling units, other than emergency transportable housing units, seats shall not be required in transfer type shower compartments provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls so as to permit the installation of seats complying with 608.4.

608.5 Controls. Controls, faucets, and shower spray units shall comply with 309.4.

608.5.1 Transfer Type Shower Compartments. In transfer type shower compartments, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be installed on the side wall opposite the seat 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and shall be located on the control wall 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the shower opening.

608.5.2 Standard Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. In standard roll-in type shower compartments, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the shower floor. Where a seat is provided, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be installed on the back wall adjacent to the seat wall and shall be located 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the seat wall.

608.5.3 Alternate Roll-In Type Shower Compartments. In alternate roll-in type shower compartments, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the shower floor. Where a seat is provided, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be located on the side wall adjacent to the seat 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the side wall behind the seat or shall be located on the back wall opposite the seat 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, left or right, of the centerline of the seat. Where a seat is not provided, the controls, faucets, and shower spray unit shall be installed on the side wall farthest from the compartment entry.

608.6 Shower Spray Unit and Water. A shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum that can be used both as a fixed-position shower head and as a handheld shower shall be provided. The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable-height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. Shower spray units shall deliver water that is 120 °F (49 °C) maximum.

EXCEPTION: A fixed shower head located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor shall be permitted instead of a hand-held spray unit in facilities that are not medical care facilities, long-term care facilities, transient lodging guest rooms, or residential dwelling units.

608.7 Thresholds. Thresholds in roll-in type shower compartments shall be ½ inch (13 mm) high maximum in accordance with 303. In transfer type shower compartments, thresholds ½ inch (13 mm) high maximum shall be beveled, rounded, or vertical.

EXCEPTION: A threshold 2 inches (51 mm) high maximum shall be permitted in transfer type shower compartments in existing facilities where provision of a ½ inch (13 mm) high threshold would disturb the structural reinforcement of the floor slab.

608.8 Shower Enclosures. Enclosures for shower compartments shall not obstruct controls, faucets, and shower spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats.

#### 609 GRAB BARS

609.1 General. Grab bars in toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall comply with 609.

609.2 Cross Section. Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.

609.2.1 Circular Cross Section. Grab bars with circular cross sections shall have an outside diameter of 1¼ inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

609.2.2 Non-Circular Cross Section. Grab bars with non-circular cross sections shall have a cross-section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above shall be permitted to be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum.

609.4 Position of Grab Bars. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface, except that at water closets for children's use complying with 604.9, grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. The height of the lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.

609.5 Surface Hazards. Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges.

609.6 Fittings. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.

609.7 Installation. Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the specified locations and that does not obstruct the required clear floor space.

609.8 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener, mounting device, or supporting structure.

#### 610 SEATS

610.1 General. Seats in bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with 610.

610.2 Bathtub Seats. The top of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom finish floor. The depth of a removable in-tub seat shall be 15 inches (380 mm)

minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum. The seat shall be capable of secure placement. Permanent seats at the head end of the bathtub shall be 15 inches (380 mm) deep minimum and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub.

610.3 Shower Compartment Seats. Where a seat is provided in a standard roll-in shower compartment, it shall be a folding type, shall be installed on the side wall adjacent to the controls, and shall extend from the back wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Where a seat is provided in an alternate roll-in type shower compartment, it shall be a folding type, shall be installed on the front wall opposite the back wall, and shall extend from the adjacent side wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In transfer-type showers, the seat shall extend from the back wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. The top of the seat shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom finish floor. Seats shall comply with 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.

610.3.1 Rectangular Seats. The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the adjacent wall.

610.3.2 L-Shaped Seats. The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the “L” portion of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the “L” shall be 22 inches (560 mm) minimum and 23 inches maximum (585 mm) from the main seat wall.

610.4 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener, mounting device, or supporting structure.

#### 611 WASHING MACHINES AND CLOTHES DRYERS

611.1 General. Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with 611.

611.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 positioned for parallel approach shall be provided. The clear floor or ground space shall be centered on the appliance.

611.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts, including doors, lint screens, and detergent and bleach compartments shall comply with 309.

611.4 Height. Top loading machines shall have the door to the laundry compartment located 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Front loading machines shall have the bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

#### 612 SAUNAS AND STEAM ROOMS

612.1 General. Saunas and steam rooms shall comply with 612.

612.2 Bench. Where seating is provided in saunas and steam rooms, at least one bench shall comply with 903. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space required by 903.2.

EXCEPTION: A readily removable bench shall be permitted to obstruct the turning space required by 612.3 and the clear floor or ground space required by 903.2.

612.3 Turning Space. A turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within saunas and steam rooms.

#### CHAPTER 7: COMMUNICATION ELEMENTS AND FEATURES

##### 701 GENERAL

701.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 7 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.

##### 702 FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

702.1 General. Fire alarm systems shall have permanently installed audible and visible alarms complying with NFPA 72 (1999 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see “Referenced Standards” in Chapter 1), except that the maximum allowable sound level of audible notification appliances complying with section 4-3.2.1 of NFPA 72 (1999 edition) shall have a sound level no more than 110 dB at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance. In addition, alarms in guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with sections 4-3 and 4-4 of NFPA 72 (1999 edition) or sections 7.4 and 7.5 of NFPA 72 (2002 edition).

EXCEPTION: Fire alarm systems in medical care facilities shall be permitted to be provided in accordance with industry practice.

##### 703 SIGNS

703.1 General. Signs shall comply with 703. Where both visual and tactile characters are required, either one sign with both visual and tactile characters, or two separate signs, one with visual, and one with tactile characters, shall be provided.

703.2 Raised Characters. Raised characters shall comply with 703.2 and shall be duplicated in braille complying with 703.3. Raised characters shall be installed in accordance with 703.4.

703.2.1 Depth. Raised characters shall be  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.8 mm) minimum above their background.

703.2.2 Case. Characters shall be uppercase.

703.2.3 Style. Characters shall be sans serif. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual forms.

703.2.4 Character Proportions. Characters shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".

703.2.5 Character Height. Character height measured vertically from the baseline of the character shall be  $\frac{5}{16}$  inch (16 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum based on the height of the uppercase letter "I".

EXCEPTION: Where separate raised and visual characters with the same information are provided, raised character height shall be permitted to be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) minimum.

703.2.6 Stroke Thickness. Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be 15 percent maximum of the height of the character.

703.2.7 Character Spacing. Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent raised characters within a message, excluding word spaces. Where characters have rectangular cross sections, spacing between individual raised characters shall be  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum. Where characters have other cross sections, spacing between individual raised characters shall be  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum at the base of the cross sections, and  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum at the top of the cross sections. Characters shall be separated from raised borders and decorative elements  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum.

703.2.8 Line Spacing. Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of raised characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the raised character height.

703.3 Braille. Braille shall be contracted (Grade 2) and shall comply with 703.3 and 703.4.

703.3.1 Dimensions and Capitalization. Braille dots shall have a domed or rounded shape and shall comply with Table 703.3.1. The indication of an uppercase letter or letters shall only be used before the first word of sentences, proper nouns and names, individual letters of the alphabet, initials, and acronyms.

TABLE 703.3.1—BRAILLE DIMENSIONS

| Measurement range                                                               | Minimum in inches<br>Maximum in inches |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Dot base diameter .....                                                         | 0.059 (1.5 mm) to 0.063 (1.6 mm).      |
| Distance between two dots in the same cell <sup>1</sup> .                       | 0.090 (2.3 mm) to 0.100 (2.5 mm).      |
| Distance between corresponding dots in adjacent cells <sup>1</sup> .            | 0.241 (6.1 mm) to 0.300 (7.6 mm).      |
| Dot height .....                                                                | 0.025 (0.6 mm) to 0.037 (0.9 mm).      |
| Distance between corresponding dots from one cell directly below <sup>1</sup> . | 0.395 (10 mm) to 0.400 (10.2 mm).      |

<sup>1</sup> Measured center to center.

703.3.2 Position. Braille shall be positioned below the corresponding text. If text is multi-lined, braille shall be placed below the entire text. Braille shall be separated  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum from any other tactile characters and  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements.

EXCEPTION: Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) minimum and shall be located either directly below or adjacent to the corresponding raised characters or symbols.

703.4 Installation Height and Location. Signs with tactile characters shall comply with 703.4.

703.4.1 Height Above Finish Floor or Ground. Tactile characters on signs shall be located 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the lowest tactile character and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the highest tactile character.

EXCEPTION: Tactile characters for elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with 703.4.1.

703.4.2 Location. Where a tactile sign is provided at a door, the sign shall be located alongside the door at the latch side. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with one active leaf, the sign shall be located on the inactive leaf. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with two active leaves, the sign shall be located to the right of the right hand door. Where there is no wall space at the latch side of a single door or at the right side of double doors, signs shall be located on the nearest adjacent wall. Signs containing tactile characters shall be located so that a clear floor space of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum by 18 inches (455 mm) minimum, centered on the tactile characters, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 degree open position.

EXCEPTION: Signs with tactile characters shall be permitted on the push side of doors with closers and without hold-open devices.

703.5 Visual Characters. Visual characters shall comply with 703.5.

EXCEPTION: Where visual characters comply with 703.2 and are accompanied by braille complying with 703.3, they shall not be required to comply with 703.5.2 through 703.5.9.

703.5.1 Finish and Contrast. Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

703.5.2 Case. Characters shall be uppercase or lowercase or a combination of both.

703.5.3 Style. Characters shall be conventional in form. Characters shall not be italic,

oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual forms.

703.5.4 Character Proportions. Characters shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter “O” is 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter “I”.

703.5.5 Character Height. Minimum character height shall comply with Table 703.5.5. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the sign. Character height shall be based on the uppercase letter “I”.

TABLE 703.5.5—VISUAL CHARACTER HEIGHT

| Height to finish floor or ground from baseline of character                     | Horizontal viewing distance       | Minimum character height                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 40 inches (1015 mm) to less than or equal to 70 inches (1780 mm).               | less than 72 inches (1830 mm).    | 5⁄8 inch (16 mm).                                                                                          |
| Greater than 70 inches (1780 mm) to less than or equal to 120 inches (3050 mm). | 72 inches (1830 mm) and greater.  | 5⁄8 inch (16 mm), plus 1⁄8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 72 inches (1830 mm).  |
|                                                                                 | less than 180 inches (4570 mm).   | 2 inches (51 mm).                                                                                          |
| Greater than 120 inches (3050 mm).                                              | 180 inches (4570 mm) and greater. | 2 inches (51 mm), plus 1⁄8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 180 inches (4570 mm). |
|                                                                                 | less than 21 feet (6400 mm) ...   | 3 inches (75 mm).                                                                                          |
|                                                                                 | 21 feet (6400 mm) and greater     | 3 inches (75 mm), plus 1⁄8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 21 feet (6400 mm).    |

703.5.6 Height From Finish Floor or Ground. Visual characters shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

EXCEPTION: Visual characters indicating elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with 703.5.6.

703.5.7 Stroke Thickness. Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter “I” shall be 10 percent minimum and 30 percent maximum of the height of the character.

703.5.8 Character Spacing. Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual characters shall be 10 percent minimum and 35 percent maximum of character height.

703.5.9 Line Spacing. Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the character height.

703.6 Pictograms. Pictograms shall comply with 703.6.

703.6.1 Pictogram Field. Pictograms shall have a field height of 6 inches (150 mm) minimum. Characters and braille shall not be located in the pictogram field.

703.6.2 Finish and Contrast. Pictograms and their field shall have a non-glare finish. Pictograms shall contrast with their field

with either a light pictogram on a dark field or a dark pictogram on a light field.

703.6.3 Text Descriptors. Pictograms shall have text descriptors located directly below the pictogram field. Text descriptors shall comply with 703.2, 703.3 and 703.4.

703.7 Symbols of Accessibility. Symbols of accessibility shall comply with 703.7.

703.7.1 Finish and Contrast. Symbols of accessibility and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Symbols of accessibility shall contrast with their background with either a light symbol on a dark background or a dark symbol on a light background.

703.7.2 Symbols.

703.7.2.1 International Symbol of Accessibility. The International Symbol of Accessibility shall comply with Figure 703.7.2.1 at the end of this document.

703.7.2.2 International Symbol of TTY. The International Symbol of TTY shall comply with Figure 703.7.2.2 at the end of this document.

703.7.2.3 Volume Control Telephones. Telephones with a volume control shall be identified by a pictogram of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves.

703.7.2.4 Assistive Listening Systems. Assistive listening systems shall be identified by the International Symbol of Access for

Hearing Loss complying with Figure 703.7.2.4 at the end of this document.

#### 704 TELEPHONES

704.1 General. Public telephones shall comply with 704.

704.2 Wheelchair Accessible Telephones. Wheelchair accessible telephones shall comply with 704.2.

704.2.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided. The clear floor or ground space shall not be obstructed by bases, enclosures, or seats.

704.2.1.1 Parallel Approach. Where a parallel approach is provided, the distance from the edge of the telephone enclosure to the face of the telephone unit shall be 10 inches (255 mm) maximum.

704.2.1.2 Forward Approach. Where a forward approach is provided, the distance from the front edge of a counter within the telephone enclosure to the face of the telephone unit shall be 20 inches (510 mm) maximum.

704.2.2 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309. Telephones shall have pushbutton controls where such service is available.

704.2.3 Telephone Directories. Telephone directories, where provided, shall be located in accordance with 309.

704.2.4 Cord Length. The cord from the telephone to the handset shall be 29 inches (735 mm) long minimum.

704.3 Volume Control Telephones. Public telephones required to have volume controls shall be equipped with a receive volume control that provides a gain adjustable up to 20 dB minimum. For incremental volume control, provide at least one intermediate step of 12 dB of gain minimum. An automatic reset shall be provided.

704.4 TTYs. TTYs required at a public pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within, or adjacent to, the telephone enclosure. Where an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the TTY and the telephone receiver.

704.4.1 Height. When in use, the touch surface of TTY keypads shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum above the finish floor.

EXCEPTION: Where seats are provided, TTYs shall not be required to comply with 704.4.1.

704.5 TTY Shelf. Public pay telephones required to accommodate portable TTYs shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommodating a TTY and shall have 6 inches (150 mm) minimum vertical clearance above the area where the TTY is to be placed.

#### 705 DETECTABLE WARNINGS

705.1 General. Detectable warnings shall consist of a surface of truncated domes and shall comply with 705.

705.1.1 Dome Size. Truncated domes in a detectable warning surface shall have a base diameter of 0.9 inch (23 mm) minimum and 1.4 inches (36 mm) maximum, a top diameter of 50 percent of the base diameter minimum to 65 percent of the base diameter maximum, and a height of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm).

705.1.2 Dome Spacing. Truncated domes in a detectable warning surface shall have a center-to-center spacing of 1.6 inches (41 mm) minimum and 2.4 inches (61 mm) maximum, and a base-to-base spacing of 0.65 inch (17 mm) minimum, measured between the most adjacent domes on a square grid.

705.1.3 Contrast. Detectable warning surfaces shall contrast visually with adjacent walking surfaces either light-on-dark, or dark-on-light.

705.2 Platform Edges. Detectable warning surfaces at platform boarding edges shall be 24 inches (610 mm) wide and shall extend the full length of the public use areas of the platform.

#### 706 ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS

706.1 General. Assistive listening systems required in assembly areas shall comply with 706.

706.2 Receiver Jacks. Receivers required for use with an assistive listening system shall include a 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) standard mono jack.

706.3 Receiver Hearing-Aid Compatibility. Receivers required to be hearing-aid compatible shall interface with telecoils in hearing aids through the provision of neckloops.

706.4 Sound Pressure Level. Assistive listening systems shall be capable of providing a sound pressure level of 110 dB minimum and 118 dB maximum with a dynamic range on the volume control of 50 dB.

706.5 Signal-to-Noise Ratio. The signal-to-noise ratio for internally generated noise in assistive listening systems shall be 18 dB minimum.

706.6 Peak Clipping Level. Peak clipping shall not exceed 18 dB of clipping relative to the peaks of speech.

#### 707 AUTOMATIC TELLER MACHINES AND FARE MACHINES

707.1 General. Automatic teller machines and fare machines shall comply with 707.

707.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided.

EXCEPTION: Clear floor or ground space shall not be required at drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines.

707.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309. Unless a clear or correct key is provided, each operable part shall be

able to be differentiated by sound or touch, without activation.

EXCEPTION: Drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines shall not be required to comply with 309.2 and 309.3.

707.4 Privacy. Automatic teller machines shall provide the opportunity for the same degree of privacy of input and output available to all individuals.

707.5 Speech Output. Machines shall be speech enabled. Operating instructions and orientation, visible transaction prompts, user input verification, error messages, and all displayed information for full use shall be accessible to and independently usable by individuals with vision impairments. Speech shall be delivered through a mechanism that is readily available to all users, including but not limited to, an industry standard connector or a telephone handset. Speech shall be recorded or digitized human, or synthesized.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Audible tones shall be permitted instead of speech for visible output that is not displayed for security purposes, including but not limited to, asterisks representing personal identification numbers.

2. Advertisements and other similar information shall not be required to be audible unless they convey information that can be used in the transaction being conducted.

3. Where speech synthesis cannot be supported, dynamic alphabetic output shall not be required to be audible.

707.5.1 User Control. Speech shall be capable of being repeated or interrupted. Volume control shall be provided for the speech function.

EXCEPTION: Speech output for any single function shall be permitted to be automatically interrupted when a transaction is selected.

707.5.2 Receipts. Where receipts are provided, speech output devices shall provide audible balance inquiry information, error messages, and all other information on the printed receipt necessary to complete or verify the transaction.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Machine location, date and time of transaction, customer account number, and the machine identifier shall not be required to be audible.

2. Information on printed receipts that duplicates information available on-screen shall not be required to be presented in the form of an audible receipt.

3. Printed copies of bank statements and checks shall not be required to be audible.

707.6 Input. Input devices shall comply with 707.6.

707.6.1 Input Controls. At least one tactilely discernible input control shall be provided for each function. Where provided, key surfaces not on active areas of display screens, shall be raised above surrounding surfaces. Where membrane keys are the only method of input, each shall be tactilely dis-

cernible from surrounding surfaces and adjacent keys.

707.6.2 Numeric Keys. Numeric keys shall be arranged in a 12-key ascending or descending telephone keypad layout. The number five key shall be tactilely distinct from the other keys.

707.6.3 Function Keys. Function keys shall comply with 707.6.3.

707.6.3.1 Contrast. Function keys shall contrast visually from background surfaces. Characters and symbols on key surfaces shall contrast visually from key surfaces. Visual contrast shall be either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

EXCEPTION: Tactile symbols required by 707.6.3.2 shall not be required to comply with 707.6.3.1.

707.6.3.2 Tactile Symbols. Function key surfaces shall have tactile symbols as follows: Enter or Proceed key: raised circle; Clear or Correct key: raised left arrow; Cancel key: raised letter ex; Add Value key: raised plus sign; Decrease Value key: raised minus sign.

707.7 Display Screen. The display screen shall comply with 707.7.

EXCEPTION: Drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines shall not be required to comply with 707.7.1.

707.7.1 Visibility. The display screen shall be visible from a point located 40 inches (1015 mm) above the center of the clear floor space in front of the machine.

707.7.2 Characters. Characters displayed on the screen shall be in a sans serif font. Characters shall be  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) high minimum based on the uppercase letter ‘I’. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

707.8 Braille Instructions. Braille instructions for initiating the speech mode shall be provided. Braille shall comply with 703.3.

## 708 TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

708.1 General. Two-way communication systems shall comply with 708.

708.2 Audible and Visual Indicators. The system shall provide both audible and visual signals.

708.3 Handsets. Handset cords, if provided, shall be 29 inches (735 mm) long minimum.

708.4 Residential Dwelling Unit Communication Systems. Communications systems between a residential dwelling unit and a site, building, or floor entrance shall comply with 708.4.

708.4.1 Common Use or Public Use System Interface. The common use or public use system interface shall include the capability of supporting voice and TTY communication with the residential dwelling unit interface.

708.4.2 Residential Dwelling Unit Interface. The residential dwelling unit system

interface shall include a telephone jack capable of supporting voice and TTY communication with the common use or public use system interface.

#### CHAPTER 8: SPECIAL ROOMS, SPACES, AND ELEMENTS

##### 801 GENERAL

801.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 8 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.

##### 802 WHEELCHAIR SPACES, COMPANION SEATS, AND DESIGNATED AISLE SEATS

802.1 Wheelchair Spaces. Wheelchair spaces shall comply with 802.1.

802.1.1 Floor or Ground Surface. The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall comply with 302. Changes in level are not permitted.

EXCEPTION: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

802.1.2 Width. A single wheelchair space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum. Where two adjacent wheelchair spaces are provided, each wheelchair space shall be 33 inches (840 mm) wide minimum.

802.1.3 Depth. Where a wheelchair space can be entered from the front or rear, the wheelchair space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) deep minimum. Where a wheelchair space can be entered only from the side, the wheelchair space shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) deep minimum.

802.1.4 Approach. Wheelchair spaces shall adjoin accessible routes. Accessible routes shall not overlap wheelchair spaces.

802.1.5 Overlap. Wheelchair spaces shall not overlap circulation paths.

802.2 Lines of Sight. Lines of sight to the screen, performance area, or playing field for spectators in wheelchair spaces shall comply with 802.2.

802.2.1 Lines of Sight Over Seated Spectators. Where spectators are expected to remain seated during events, spectators in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight complying with 802.2.1.

802.2.1.1 Lines of Sight Over Heads. Where spectators are provided lines of sight over the heads of spectators seated in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of seated spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.

802.2.1.2 Lines of Sight Between Heads. Where spectators are provided lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of spectators seated in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of seated spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.

802.2.2 Lines of Sight Over Standing Spectators. Where spectators are expected to stand during events, spectators in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight complying with 802.2.2.

802.2.2.1 Lines of Sight Over Heads. Where standing spectators are provided lines of sight over the heads of spectators standing in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of standing spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.

802.2.2.2 Lines of Sight Between Heads. Where standing spectators are provided lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of spectators standing in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of standing spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.

802.3 Companion Seats. Companion seats shall comply with 802.3.

802.3.1 Alignment. In row seating, companion seats shall be located to provide shoulder alignment with adjacent wheelchair spaces. The shoulder alignment point of the wheelchair space shall be measured 36 inches (915 mm) from the front of the wheelchair space. The floor surface of the companion seat shall be at the same elevation as the floor surface of the wheelchair space.

802.3.2 Type. Companion seats shall be equivalent in size, quality, comfort, and amenities to the seating in the immediate area. Companion seats shall be permitted to be movable.

802.4 Designated Aisle Seats. Designated aisle seats shall comply with 802.4.

802.4.1 Armrests. Where armrests are provided on the seating in the immediate area, folding or retractable armrests shall be provided on the aisle side of the seat.

802.4.2 Identification. Each designated aisle seat shall be identified by a sign or marker.

##### 803 DRESSING, FITTING, AND LOCKER ROOMS

803.1 General. Dressing, fitting, and locker rooms shall comply with 803.

803.2 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the room.

803.3 Door Swing. Doors shall not swing into the room unless a clear floor or ground space complying with 305.3 is provided beyond the arc of the door swing.

803.4 Benches. A bench complying with 903 shall be provided within the room.

803.5 Coat Hooks and Shelves. Coat hooks provided within the room shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in 308. Shelves shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

## 804 KITCHENS AND KITCHENETTES

804.1 General. Kitchens and kitchenettes shall comply with 804.

804.2 Clearance. Where a pass through kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with 804.2.1. Where a U-shaped kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with 804.2.2.

EXCEPTION: Spaces that do not provide a cooktop or conventional range shall not be required to comply with 804.2.

804.2.1 Pass Through Kitchen. In pass through kitchens where counters, appliances or cabinets are on two opposing sides, or where counters, appliances or cabinets are opposite a parallel wall, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum. Pass through kitchens shall have two entries.

804.2.2 U-Shaped. In U-shaped kitchens enclosed on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

804.3 Kitchen Work Surface. In residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with 809.2, at least one 30 inch (760 mm) wide minimum section of counter shall provide a kitchen work surface that complies with 804.3.

EXCEPTION: In emergency transportable housing units, a work surface complying with 804.3 shall not be required provided that the following criteria are met:

- (a) A kitchen table complying with 902 is provided within the kitchen;
- (b) An electrical outlet is provided at a location within reach of the table; and
- (c) All kitchen countertops are 34 inches high maximum.

804.3.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. The clear floor or ground space shall be centered on the kitchen work surface and shall provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306.

EXCEPTION: Cabinetry shall be permitted under the kitchen work surface provided that all of the following conditions are met:

- (a) The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the kitchen work surface;
- (b) the finish floor extends under the cabinetry; and
- (c) the walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.

804.3.2 Height. The kitchen work surface shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

EXCEPTION: A counter that is adjustable to provide a kitchen work surface at variable heights, 29 inches (735 mm) minimum and 36

inches (915 mm) maximum, shall be permitted.

804.3.3 Exposed Surfaces. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under the work surface counters.

804.4 Sinks. Sinks shall comply with 606.

804.5 Storage. At least 50 percent of shelf space in storage facilities shall comply with 811.

804.6 Appliances. Where provided, kitchen appliances shall comply with 804.6.

804.6.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided at each kitchen appliance. Clear floor or ground spaces shall be permitted to overlap.

804.6.2 Operable Parts. All appliance controls shall comply with 309.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Appliance doors and door latching devices shall not be required to comply with 309.4.

2. Bottom-hinged appliance doors, when in the open position, shall not be required to comply with 309.3.

804.6.3 Dishwasher. Clear floor or ground space shall be positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door. The dishwasher door, in the open position, shall not obstruct the clear floor or ground space for the dishwasher or the sink.

804.6.4 Range or Cooktop. Where a forward approach is provided, the clear floor or ground space shall provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306. Where knee and toe space is provided, the underside of the range or cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to prevent burns, abrasions, or electrical shock. The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.

804.6.5 Oven. Ovens shall comply with 804.6.5.

804.6.5.1 Side-Hinged Door Ovens. Side-hinged door ovens shall have the work surface required by 804.3 positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door.

804.6.5.2 Bottom-Hinged Door Ovens. Bottom-hinged door ovens shall have the work surface required by 804.3 positioned adjacent to one side of the door.

804.6.5.3 Controls. Ovens shall have controls on front panels.

804.6.6 Refrigerator/Freezer. Combination refrigerators and freezers shall have at least 50 percent of the freezer space 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. The clear floor or ground space shall be positioned for a parallel approach to the space dedicated to a refrigerator/freezer with the centerline of the clear floor or ground space offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the dedicated space.

## 805 MEDICAL CARE AND LONG-TERM CARE FACILITIES

805.1 General. Medical care facility and long-term care facility patient or resident

sleeping rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with 805.

805.2 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the room.

805.3 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 shall be provided on each side of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

805.4 Toilet and Bathing Rooms. Toilet and bathing rooms that are provided as part of a patient or resident sleeping room shall comply with 603. Where provided, no fewer than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with the applicable requirements of 603 through 610.

#### 806 TRANSIENT LODGING GUEST ROOMS

806.1 General. Transient lodging guest rooms shall comply with 806. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with 806.2. Guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with 806.3.

806.2 Guest Rooms with Mobility Features. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with 806.2.

806.2.1 Living and Dining Areas. Living and dining areas shall be accessible.

806.2.2 Exterior Spaces. Exterior spaces, including patios, terraces and balconies, that serve the guest room shall be accessible.

806.2.3 Sleeping Areas. At least one sleeping area shall provide a clear floor space complying with 305 on both sides of a bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

EXCEPTION: Where a single clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for parallel approach is provided between two beds, a clear floor or ground space shall not be required on both sides of a bed.

806.2.4 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. At least one bathroom that is provided as part of a guest room shall comply with 603. No fewer than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with applicable requirements of 603 through 610. In addition, required roll-in shower compartments shall comply with 608.2.2 or 608.2.3. Toilet and bathing fixtures required to comply with 603 through 610 shall be permitted to be located in more than one toilet or bathing area, provided that travel between fixtures does not require travel between other parts of the guest room.

806.2.4.1 Vanity Counter Top Space. If vanity counter top space is provided in non-accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms, comparable vanity counter top space, in terms of size and proximity to the lavatory, shall also be provided in accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms.

806.2.5 Kitchens and Kitchenettes. Kitchens and kitchenettes shall comply with 804.

806.2.6 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the guest room.

806.3 Guest Rooms with Communication Features. Guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with 806.3.

806.3.1 Alarms. Where emergency warning systems are provided, alarms complying with 702 shall be provided.

806.3.2 Notification Devices. Visible notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visible alarm signal appliances. Telephones shall have volume controls compatible with the telephone system and shall comply with 704.3. Telephones shall be served by an electrical outlet complying with 309 located within 48 inches (1220 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.

#### 807 HOLDING CELLS AND HOUSING CELLS

807.1 General. Holding cells and housing cells shall comply with 807.

807.2 Cells with Mobility Features. Cells required to provide mobility features shall comply with 807.2.

807.2.1 Turning Space. Turning space complying with 304 shall be provided within the cell.

807.2.2 Benches. Where benches are provided, at least one bench shall comply with 903.

807.2.3 Beds. Where beds are provided, clear floor space complying with 305 shall be provided on at least one side of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

807.2.4 Toilet and Bathing Facilities. Toilet facilities or bathing facilities that are provided as part of a cell shall comply with 603. Where provided, no fewer than one water closet, one lavatory, and one bathtub or shower shall comply with the applicable requirements of 603 through 610.

807.3 Cells with Communication Features. Cells required to provide communication features shall comply with 807.3.

807.3.1 Alarms. Where audible emergency alarm systems are provided to serve the occupants of cells, visible alarms complying with 702 shall be provided.

EXCEPTION: Visible alarms shall not be required where inmates or detainees are not allowed independent means of egress.

807.3.2 Telephones. Telephones, where provided within cells, shall have volume controls complying with 704.3.

#### 808 COURTROOMS

808.1 General. Courtrooms shall comply with 808.

808.2 Turning Space. Where provided, areas that are raised or depressed and

accessed by ramps or platform lifts with entry ramps shall provide unobstructed turning space complying with 304.

808.3 Clear Floor Space. Each jury box and witness stand shall have, within its defined area, clear floor space complying with 305.

EXCEPTION: In alterations, wheelchair spaces are not required to be located within the defined area of raised jury boxes or witness stands and shall be permitted to be located outside these spaces where ramp or platform lift access poses a hazard by restricting or projecting into a means of egress required by the appropriate administrative authority.

808.4 Judges' Benches and Courtroom Stations. Judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, court reporters' stations and litigants' and counsel stations shall comply with 902.

#### 809 RESIDENTIAL DWELLING UNITS

809.1 General. Residential dwelling units shall comply with 809. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features shall comply with 809.2. Residential dwelling units required to provide communication features shall comply with 809.3.

809.2 Residential Dwelling Units with Mobility Features. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features shall comply with 809.2.

809.2.1 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes complying with Chapter 4 shall be provided within residential dwelling units in accordance with 809.2.1.

EXCEPTION: Accessible routes shall not be required to or within unfinished attics or unfinished basements.

809.2.1.1 Location. At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements that are a part of the residential dwelling unit. Where only one accessible route is provided, it shall not pass through bathrooms, closets, or similar spaces.

809.2.1.2 Floor Surfaces. Within emergency transportable housing units, carpet shall not be provided on floor surfaces.

809.2.2 Turning Space. All rooms served by an accessible route shall provide a turning space complying with 304.

EXCEPTION: Turning space shall not be required in exterior spaces 30 inches (760 mm) maximum in depth or width.

809.2.3 Kitchen. Where a kitchen is provided, it shall comply with 804.

809.2.4 Toilet Facilities and Bathing Facilities. At least one bathroom shall comply with 603. No fewer than one of each type of fixture provided shall comply with applicable requirements of 603 through 610. Toilet and bathing fixtures required to comply with 603 through 610 shall be located in the same toilet and bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel be-

tween other parts of residential dwelling unit.

809.2.5 Bedrooms in Emergency Transportable Housing Units. Bedrooms in emergency transportable housing units shall comply with 809.2.5.

809.2.5.1 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 shall be provided on one side of a bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed and shall be on an accessible route.

809.2.5.2 Furniture. Where bedrooms are less than 70 square feet, furniture supplied with the unit shall not overlap the accessible route, maneuvering clearances required at doors, and turning space.

809.2.5.3 Lighting Controls. A means to control at least one source of bedroom lighting from the bed shall be provided.

809.2.6 Weather Alert Systems. Where provided in emergency transportable housing units, weather alert systems shall comply with 309.1 through 309.3.

809.3 Residential Dwelling Units with Communication Features. Residential dwelling units required to provide communication features shall comply with 809.3.

809.3.1 Alarms. Alarms shall comply and 809.3.1. The same visible notification appliances shall be permitted to provide notification of building fire alarm and residential dwelling unit smoke alarm activation. Visible notification appliances used to indicate building fire alarm or residential dwelling unit smoke alarm activation shall not be used for any other purpose within the residential dwelling unit.

809.3.1.1 Building Fire Alarm System. Where a building fire alarm system is provided, the system wiring shall be extended to a point within the residential dwelling unit in the vicinity of the residential dwelling unit smoke alarm system. Notification appliances provided within a residential dwelling unit as part of the building fire alarm system shall comply with NFPA 72 (1999 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).

809.3.1.2 Residential Dwelling Unit Smoke Alarms. Residential dwelling unit smoke alarms shall provide combination smoke alarms and visible notification appliances complying with NFPA 72 (1999 or 2002 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Combination smoke alarms and visible notification appliances shall be supplied with power from one or more power sources as follows:

(a) A commercial light and power source along with a secondary power source; or

(b) A non-commercial alternating current (ac) power source along with a secondary power source.

809.3.1.3 Activation. All visible notification appliances within the residential dwelling unit providing notification of a building

fire alarm shall be activated upon activation of the building fire alarm in the portion of the building containing the residential dwelling unit. All combination smoke alarms and visible notification appliances within the residential dwelling unit shall be activated upon smoke detection.

809.3.2 Residential Dwelling Unit Primary Entrance. Communication features shall be provided at the residential dwelling unit primary entrance and shall comply with 809.3.2.

809.3.2.1 Notification. A hardwired electric doorbell shall be provided. A button or switch shall be provided outside the residential dwelling unit primary entrance. Activation of the button or switch shall initiate an audible tone and visible signal within the residential dwelling unit. Where visible doorbell signals are located in sleeping areas, they shall have controls to deactivate the signal.

809.3.2.2 Identification. A means for visually identifying a visitor without opening the residential dwelling unit entry door shall be provided and shall allow for a minimum 180 degree range of view.

809.3.3 Site, Building, or Floor Entrance. Where a system, including a closed-circuit system, permitting voice communication between a visitor and the occupant of the residential dwelling unit is provided, the system shall comply with 708.4.

809.3.4 Weather Alert Systems. Where provided in emergency transportable housing units, weather alert systems shall provide audible and visual output.

#### 810 TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES

810.1 General. Transportation facilities shall comply with 810.

810.2 Bus Boarding and Alighting Areas. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall comply with 810.2.

810.2.1 Surface. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall have a firm, stable surface.

810.2.2 Dimensions. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall provide a clear length of 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a clear width of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.

810.2.3 Connection. Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall be connected to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with 402.

810.2.4 Slope. Parallel to the roadway, the slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area shall be the same as the roadway, to the maximum extent practicable. Perpendicular to the roadway, the slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area shall not be steeper than 1:48.

810.3 Bus Shelters. Bus shelters shall provide a minimum clear floor or ground space complying with 305 entirely within the shel-

ter. Bus shelters shall be connected by an accessible route complying with 402 to a boarding and alighting area complying with 810.2.

810.4 Bus Signs. Bus route identification signs shall comply with 703.5.1 through 703.5.4, and 703.5.7 and 703.5.8. In addition, to the maximum extent practicable, bus route identification signs shall comply with 703.5.5.

EXCEPTION: Bus schedules, timetables and maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay shall not be required to comply.

810.5 Rail Platforms. Rail platforms shall comply with 810.5.

810.5.1 Slope. Rail platforms shall not exceed a slope of 1:48 in all directions.

EXCEPTION: Where platforms serve vehicles operating on existing track or track laid in existing roadway, the slope of the platform parallel to the track shall be permitted to be equal to the slope (grade) of the roadway or existing track.

810.5.2 Detectable Warnings. Platform boarding edges not protected by platform screens or guards shall have detectable warnings complying with 705 along the full length of the public use area of the platform.

810.5.3 Platform and Vehicle Floor Coordination. Station platforms shall be positioned to coordinate with vehicles in accordance with the applicable requirements of 36 CFR Part 1192. Low-level platforms shall be 8 inches (205 mm) minimum above top of rail.

EXCEPTION: Where vehicles are boarded from sidewalks or street-level, low-level platforms shall be permitted to be less than 8 inches (205 mm).

810.6 Rail Station Signs. Rail station signs shall comply with 810.6.

EXCEPTION: Signs shall not be required to comply with 810.6.1 and 810.6.2 where audible signs are remotely transmitted to hand-held receivers, or are user- or proximity-actuated.

810.6.1 Entrances. Where signs identify a station or its entrance, at least one sign at each entrance shall comply with 703.2 and shall be placed in uniform locations to the maximum extent practicable. Where signs identify a station that has no defined entrance, at least one sign shall comply with 703.2 and shall be placed in a central location.

810.6.2 Routes and Destinations. Lists of stations, routes and destinations served by the station which are located on boarding areas, platforms, or mezzanines shall comply with 703.5. At least one tactile sign identifying the specific station and complying with 703.2 shall be provided on each platform or boarding area. Signs covered by this requirement shall, to the maximum extent practicable, be placed in uniform locations within the system.

EXCEPTION: Where sign space is limited, characters shall not be required to exceed 3 inches (75 mm).

810.6.3 Station Names. Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs complying with 703.5. Signs shall be clearly visible and within the sight lines of standing and sitting passengers from within the vehicle on both sides when not obstructed by another vehicle.

810.7 Public Address Systems. Where public address systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.

810.8 Clocks. Where clocks are provided for use by the public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are installed overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with 703.5.

810.9 Escalators. Where provided, escalators shall comply with the sections 6.1.3.5.6 and 6.1.3.6.5 of ASME A17.1 (incorporated by reference, see “Referenced Standards” in Chapter 1) and shall have a clear width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: Existing escalators in key stations shall not be required to comply with 810.9.

810.10 Track Crossings. Where a circulation path serving boarding platforms crosses tracks, it shall comply with 402.

EXCEPTION: Openings for wheel flanges shall be permitted to be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum.

#### 811 STORAGE

811.1 General. Storage shall comply with 811.

811.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided.

811.3 Height. Storage elements shall comply with at least one of the reach ranges specified in 308.

811.4 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309.

### CHAPTER 9: BUILT-IN ELEMENTS

#### 901 GENERAL

901.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 9 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.

#### 902 DINING SURFACES AND WORK SURFACES

902.1 General. Dining surfaces and work surfaces shall comply with 902.2 and 902.3.

EXCEPTION: Dining surfaces and work surfaces for children’s use shall be permitted to comply with 902.4.

902.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. Knee

and toe clearance complying with 306 shall be provided.

902.3 Height. The tops of dining surfaces and work surfaces shall be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

902.4 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces for Children’s Use. Accessible dining surfaces and work surfaces for children’s use shall comply with 902.4.

EXCEPTION: Dining surfaces and work surfaces that are used primarily by children 5 years and younger shall not be required to comply with 902.4 where a clear floor or ground space complying with 305 positioned for a parallel approach is provided.

902.4.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for forward approach shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with 306 shall be provided, except that knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground shall be permitted.

902.4.2 Height. The tops of tables and counters shall be 26 inches (660 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

#### 903 BENCHES

903.1 General. Benches shall comply with 903.

903.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. Clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided and shall be positioned at the end of the bench seat and parallel to the short axis of the bench.

903.3 Size. Benches shall have seats that are 42 inches (1065 mm) long minimum and 20 inches (510 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) deep maximum.

903.4 Back Support. The bench shall provide for back support or shall be affixed to a wall. Back support shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) long minimum and shall extend from a point 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface. Back support shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum from the rear edge of the seat measured horizontally.

903.5 Height. The top of the bench seat surface shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

903.6 Structural Strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener, mounting device, or supporting structure.

903.7 Wet Locations. Where installed in wet locations, the surface of the seat shall be slip resistant and shall not accumulate water.

## 904 CHECK-OUT AISLES AND SALES AND SERVICE COUNTERS

904.1 General. Check-out aisles and sales and service counters shall comply with the applicable requirements of 904.

904.2 Approach. All portions of counters required to comply with 904 shall be located adjacent to a walking surface complying with 403.

904.3 Check-Out Aisles. Check-out aisles shall comply with 904.3.

904.3.1 Aisle. Aisles shall comply with 403.

904.3.2 Counter. The counter surface height shall be 38 inches (965 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. The top of the counter edge protection shall be 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the top of the counter surface on the aisle side of the check-out counter.

904.3.3 Check Writing Surfaces. Where provided, check writing surfaces shall comply with 902.3.

904.4 Sales and Service Counters. Sales counters and service counters shall comply with 904.4.1 or 904.4.2. The accessible portion of the counter top shall extend the same depth as the sales or service counter top.

EXCEPTION: In alterations, when the provision of a counter complying with 904.4 would result in a reduction of the number of existing counters at work stations or a reduction of the number of existing mail boxes, the counter shall be permitted to have a portion which is 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum complying with 904.4.1 provided that the required clear floor or ground space is centered on the accessible length of the counter.

904.4.1 Parallel Approach. A portion of the counter surface that is 36 inches (915 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) high maximum above the finish floor shall be provided. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be positioned for a parallel approach adjacent to the 36 inch (915 mm) minimum length of counter.

EXCEPTION: Where the provided counter surface is less than 36 inches (915 mm) long, the entire counter surface shall be 36 inches (915 mm) high maximum above the finish floor.

904.4.2 Forward Approach. A portion of the counter surface that is 30 inches (760 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) high maximum shall be provided. Knee and toe space complying with 306 shall be provided under the counter. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be positioned for a forward approach to the counter.

904.5 Food Service Lines. Counters in food service lines shall comply with 904.5.

904.5.1 Self-Service Shelves and Dispensing Devices. Self-service shelves and dispensing devices for tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverages shall comply with 308.

904.5.2 Tray Slides. The tops of tray slides shall be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

904.6 Security Glazing. Where counters or teller windows have security glazing to separate personnel from the public, a method to facilitate voice communication shall be provided. Telephone handset devices, if provided, shall comply with 704.3.

## CHAPTER 10: RECREATION FACILITIES

## 1001 GENERAL

1001.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where referenced by a requirement in this document.

## 1002 AMUSEMENT RIDES

1002.1 General. Amusement rides shall comply with 1002.

1002.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving amusement rides shall comply with Chapter 4.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In load or unload areas and on amusement rides, where compliance with 405.2 is not structurally or operationally feasible, ramp slope shall be permitted to be 1:8 maximum.

2. In load or unload areas and on amusement rides, handrails provided along walking surfaces complying with 403 and required on ramps complying with 405 shall not be required to comply with 505 where compliance is not structurally or operationally feasible.

1002.3 Load and Unload Areas. A turning space complying with 304.2 and 304.3 shall be provided in load and unload areas.

1002.4 Wheelchair Spaces in Amusement Rides. Wheelchair spaces in amusement rides shall comply with 1002.4.

1002.4.1 Floor or Ground Surface. The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall be stable and firm.

1002.4.2 Slope. The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 when in the load and unload position.

1002.4.3 Gaps. Floors of amusement rides with wheelchair spaces and floors of load and unload areas shall be coordinated so that, when amusement rides are at rest in the load and unload position, the vertical difference between the floors shall be within plus or minus  $\frac{5}{16}$  inches (16 mm) and the horizontal gap shall be 3 inches (75 mm) maximum under normal passenger load conditions.

EXCEPTION: Where compliance is not operationally or structurally feasible, ramps, bridge plates, or similar devices complying with the applicable requirements of 36 CFR 1192.83(c) shall be provided.

1002.4.4 Clearances. Clearances for wheelchair spaces shall comply with 1002.4.4.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where provided, securement devices shall be permitted to overlap required clearances.

2. Wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be mechanically or manually repositioned.

3. Wheelchair spaces shall not be required to comply with 307.4.

1002.4.4.1 Width and Length. Wheelchair spaces shall provide a clear width of 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and a clear length of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum measured to 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the floor surface.

1002.4.4.2 Side Entry. Where wheelchair spaces are entered only from the side, amusement rides shall be designed to permit sufficient maneuvering clearance for individuals using a wheelchair or mobility aid to enter and exit the ride.

1002.4.4.3 Permitted Protrusions in Wheelchair Spaces. Objects are permitted to protrude a distance of 6 inches (150 mm) maximum along the front of the wheelchair space, where located 9 inches (230 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space. Objects are permitted to protrude a distance of 25 inches (635 mm) maximum along the front of the wheelchair space, where located more than 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space.

1002.4.5 Ride Entry. Openings providing entry to wheelchair spaces on amusement rides shall be 32 inches (815 mm) minimum clear.

1002.4.6 Approach. One side of the wheelchair space shall adjoin an accessible route when in the load and unload position.

1002.4.7 Companion Seats. Where the interior width of the amusement ride is greater than 53 inches (1345 mm), seating is provided for more than one rider, and the wheelchair is not required to be centered within the amusement ride, a companion seat shall be provided for each wheelchair space.

1002.4.7.1 Shoulder-to-Shoulder Seating. Where an amusement ride provides shoulder-to-shoulder seating, companion seats shall be shoulder-to-shoulder with the adjacent wheelchair space.

EXCEPTION: Where shoulder-to-shoulder companion seating is not operationally or structurally feasible, compliance with this requirement shall be required to the maximum extent practicable.

1002.5 Amusement Ride Seats Designed for Transfer. Amusement ride seats designed for transfer shall comply with 1002.5 when positioned for loading and unloading.

1002.5.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided in the load and unload area adjacent to the amusement ride seats designed for transfer.

1002.5.2 Transfer Height. The height of amusement ride seats designed for transfer

shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum measured from the surface of the load and unload area.

1002.5.3 Transfer Entry. Where openings are provided for transfer to amusement ride seats, the openings shall provide clearance for transfer from a wheelchair or mobility aid to the amusement ride seat.

1002.5.4 Wheelchair Storage Space. Wheelchair storage spaces complying with 305 shall be provided in or adjacent to unload areas for each required amusement ride seat designed for transfer and shall not overlap any required means of egress or accessible route.

1002.6 Transfer Devices for Use with Amusement Rides. Transfer devices for use with amusement rides shall comply with 1002.6 when positioned for loading and unloading.

1002.6.1 Clear Floor or Ground Space. A clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided in the load and unload area adjacent to the transfer device.

1002.6.2 Transfer Height. The height of transfer device seats shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum measured from the load and unload surface.

1002.6.3 Wheelchair Storage Space. Wheelchair storage spaces complying with 305 shall be provided in or adjacent to unload areas for each required transfer device and shall not overlap any required means of egress or accessible route.

### 1003 RECREATIONAL BOATING FACILITIES

1003.1 General. Recreational boating facilities shall comply with 1003.

1003.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities, including gangways and floating piers, shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified by the exceptions in 1003.2.

1003.2.1 Boat Slips. Accessible routes serving boat slips shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1003.2.1.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where an existing gangway or series of gangways is replaced or altered, an increase in the length of the gangway shall not be required to comply with 1003.2 unless required by 202.4.

2. Gangways shall not be required to comply with the maximum rise specified in 405.6.

3. Where the total length of a gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 80 feet (24 m) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with 405.2.

4. Where facilities contain fewer than 25 boat slips and the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9145 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with 405.2.

5. Where gangways connect to transition plates, landings specified by 405.7 shall not be required.

6. Where gangways and transition plates connect and are required to have handrails, handrail extensions shall not be required. Where handrail extensions are provided on gangways or transition plates, the handrail extensions shall not be required to be parallel with the ground or floor surface.

7. The cross slope specified in 403.3 and 405.3 for gangways, transition plates, and floating piers that are part of accessible routes shall be measured in the static position.

8. Changes in level complying with 303.3 and 303.4 shall be permitted on the surfaces of gangways and boat launch ramps.

1003.2.2 Boarding Piers at Boat Launch Ramps. Accessible routes serving boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1003.2.2.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Accessible routes serving floating boarding piers shall be permitted to use Exceptions 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 8 in 1003.2.1.

2. Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9145 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with 405.2.

3. Where the accessible route serving a floating boarding pier or skid pier is located within a boat launch ramp, the portion of the accessible route located within the boat launch ramp shall not be required to comply with 405.

1003.3 Clearances. Clearances at boat slips and on boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall comply with 1003.3.

1003.3.1 Boat Slip Clearance. Boat slips shall provide clear pier space 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and at least as long as the boat slips. Each 10 feet (3050 mm) maximum of linear pier edge serving boat slips shall contain at least one continuous clear opening 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Clear pier space shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum, provided that multiple 36 inch (915 mm) wide segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum.

2. Edge protection shall be permitted at the continuous clear openings, provided that it is 4 inches (100 mm) high maximum and 2 inches (51 mm) wide maximum.

3. In existing piers, clear pier space shall be permitted to be located perpendicular to the boat slip and shall extend the width of the boat slip, where the facility has at least one boat slip complying with 1003.3, and further compliance with 1003.3 would result in a reduction in the number of boat slips available or result in a reduction of the widths of existing slips.

1003.3.2 Boarding Pier Clearances. Boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall provide clear pier space 60 inches (1525 mm) wide

minimum and shall extend the full length of the boarding pier. Every 10 feet (3050 mm) maximum of linear pier edge shall contain at least one continuous clear opening 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. The clear pier space shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that multiple 36 inch (915 mm) wide segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum.

2. Edge protection shall be permitted at the continuous clear openings provided that it is 4 inches (100 mm) high maximum and 2 inches (51 mm) wide maximum.

#### 1004 EXERCISE MACHINES AND EQUIPMENT

1004.1 Clear Floor Space. Exercise machines and equipment shall have a clear floor space complying with 305 positioned for transfer or for use by an individual seated in a wheelchair. Clear floor or ground spaces required at exercise machines and equipment shall be permitted to overlap.

#### 1005 FISHING PIERS AND PLATFORMS

1005.1 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving fishing piers and platforms, including gangways and floating piers, shall comply with Chapter 4.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Accessible routes serving floating fishing piers and platforms shall be permitted to use Exceptions 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 8 in 1003.2.1.

2. Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9145 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with 405.2.

1005.2 Railings. Where provided, railings, guards, or handrails shall comply with 1005.2.

1005.2.1 Height. At least 25 percent of the railings, guards, or handrails shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the ground or deck surface.

EXCEPTION: Where a guard complying with sections 1003.2.12.1 and 1003.2.12.2 of the International Building Code (2000 edition) or sections 1012.2 and 1012.3 of the International Building Code (2003 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1) is provided, the guard shall not be required to comply with 1005.2.1.

1005.2.1.1 Dispersion. Railings, guards, or handrails required to comply with 1005.2.1 shall be dispersed throughout the fishing pier or platform.

1005.3 Edge Protection. Where railings, guards, or handrails complying with 1005.2 are provided, edge protection complying with 1005.3.1 or 1005.3.2 shall be provided.

1005.3.1 Curb or Barrier. Curbs or barriers shall extend 2 inches (51 mm) minimum

above the surface of the fishing pier or platform.

1005.3.2 Extended Ground or Deck Surface. The ground or deck surface shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of the railing. Toe clearance shall be provided and shall be 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the ground or deck surface beyond the railing.

1005.4 Clear Floor or Ground Space. At each location where there are railings, guards, or handrails complying with 1005.2.1, a clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided. Where there are no railings, guards, or handrails, at least one clear floor or ground space complying with 305 shall be provided on the fishing pier or platform.

1005.5 Turning Space. At least one turning space complying with 304.3 shall be provided on fishing piers and platforms.

#### 1006 GOLF FACILITIES

1006.1 General. Golf facilities shall comply with 1006.

1006.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving teeing grounds, practice teeing grounds, putting greens, practice putting greens, teeing stations at driving ranges, course weather shelters, golf car rental areas, bag drop areas, and course toilet rooms shall comply with Chapter 4 and shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) wide minimum. Where handrails are provided, accessible routes shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum.

EXCEPTION: Handrails shall not be required on golf courses. Where handrails are provided on golf courses, the handrails shall not be required to comply with 505.

1006.3 Golf Car Passages. Golf car passages shall comply with 1006.3.

1006.3.1 Clear Width. The clear width of golf car passages shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

1006.3.2 Barriers. Where curbs or other constructed barriers prevent golf cars from entering a fairway, openings 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum shall be provided at intervals not to exceed 75 yards (69 m).

1006.4 Weather Shelters. A clear floor or ground space 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum shall be provided within weather shelters.

#### 1007 MINIATURE GOLF FACILITIES

1007.1 General. Miniature golf facilities shall comply with 1007.

1007.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving holes on miniature golf courses shall comply with Chapter 4. Accessible routes located on playing surfaces of miniature golf holes shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1007.2.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Playing surfaces shall not be required to comply with 302.2.

2. Where accessible routes intersect playing surfaces of holes, a 1 inch (25 mm) maximum curb shall be permitted for a width of 32 inches (815 mm) minimum.

3. A slope not steeper than 1:4 for a 4 inch (100 mm) maximum rise shall be permitted.

4. Ramp landing slopes specified by 405.7.1 shall be permitted to be 1:20 maximum.

5. Ramp landing length specified by 405.7.3 shall be permitted to be 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum.

6. Ramp landing size specified by 405.7.4 shall be permitted to be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

7. Handrails shall not be required on holes. Where handrails are provided on holes, the handrails shall not be required to comply with 505.

1007.3 Miniature Golf Holes. Miniature golf holes shall comply with 1007.3.

1007.3.1 Start of Play. A clear floor or ground space 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum with slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the start of play.

1007.3.2 Golf Club Reach Range Area. All areas within holes where golf balls rest shall be within 36 inches (915 mm) maximum of a clear floor or ground space 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum having a running slope not steeper than 1:20. The clear floor or ground space shall be served by an accessible route.

#### 1008 PLAY AREAS

1008.1 General. Play areas shall comply with 1008.

1008.2 Accessible Routes. Accessible routes serving play areas shall comply with Chapter 4 and 1008.2 and shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1008.2.1 through 1008.2.3. Where accessible routes serve ground level play components, the vertical clearance shall be 80 inches high (2030 mm) minimum.

1008.2.1 Ground Level and Elevated Play Components. Accessible routes serving ground level play components and elevated play components shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1008.2.1.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Transfer systems complying with 1008.3 shall be permitted to connect elevated play components except where 20 or more elevated play components are provided no more than 25 percent of the elevated play components shall be permitted to be connected by transfer systems.

2. Where transfer systems are provided, an elevated play component shall be permitted to connect to another elevated play component as part of an accessible route.

1008.2.2 Soft Contained Play Structures. Accessible routes serving soft contained play structures shall be permitted to use the exception in 1008.2.2.

EXCEPTION: Transfer systems complying with 1008.3 shall be permitted to be used as part of an accessible route.

1008.2.3 Water Play Components. Accessible routes serving water play components shall be permitted to use the exceptions in 1008.2.3.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where the surface of the accessible route, clear floor or ground spaces, or turning spaces serving water play components is submerged, compliance with 302.403.3, 405.2, 405.3, and 1008.2.6 shall not be required.

2. Transfer systems complying with 1008.3 shall be permitted to connect elevated play components in water.

1008.2.4 Clear Width. Accessible routes connecting play components shall provide a clear width complying with 1008.2.4.

1008.2.4.1 Ground Level. At ground level, the clear width of accessible routes shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In play areas less than 1000 square feet (93 m<sup>2</sup>), the clear width of accessible routes shall be permitted to be 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum, if at least one turning space complying with 304.3 is provided where the restricted accessible route exceeds 30 feet (9145 mm) in length.

2. The clear width of accessible routes shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum for a distance of 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum provided that multiple reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum.

1008.2.4.2 Elevated. The clear width of accessible routes connecting elevated play components shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. The clear width of accessible routes connecting elevated play components shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a distance of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum.

2. The clear width of transfer systems connecting elevated play components shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.

1008.2.5 Ramps. Within play areas, ramps connecting ground level play components and ramps connecting elevated play components shall comply with 1008.2.5.

1008.2.5.1 Ground Level. Ramp runs connecting ground level play components shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:16.

1008.2.5.2 Elevated. The rise for any ramp run connecting elevated play components shall be 12 inches (305 mm) maximum.

1008.2.5.3 Handrails. Where required on ramps serving play components, the handrails shall comply with 505 except as modified by 1008.2.5.3.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Handrails shall not be required on ramps located within ground level use zones.

2. Handrail extensions shall not be required.

1008.2.5.3.1 Handrail Gripping Surfaces. Handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 0.95 inch (24 mm) minimum and 1.55 inches (39 mm) maximum. Where the shape of the gripping surface is non-circular, the handrail shall provide an equivalent gripping surface.

1008.2.5.3.2 Handrail Height. The top of handrail gripping surfaces shall be 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and 28 inches (710 mm) maximum above the ramp surface.

1008.2.6 Ground Surfaces. Ground surfaces on accessible routes, clear floor or ground spaces, and turning spaces shall comply with 1008.2.6.

1008.2.6.1 Accessibility. Ground surfaces shall comply with ASTM F1951 (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1). Ground surfaces shall be inspected and maintained regularly and frequently to ensure continued compliance with ASTM F1951.

1008.2.6.2 Use Zones. Ground surfaces located within use zones shall comply with ASTM F1292 (1999 edition or 2004 edition) (incorporated by reference, see "Referenced Standards" in Chapter 1).

1008.3 Transfer Systems. Where transfer systems are provided to connect to elevated play components, transfer systems shall comply with 1008.3.

1008.3.1 Transfer Platforms. Transfer platforms shall be provided where transfer is intended from wheelchairs or other mobility aids. Transfer platforms shall comply with 1008.3.1.

1008.3.1.1 Size. Transfer platforms shall have level surfaces 14 inches (355 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) wide minimum.

1008.3.1.2 Height. The height of transfer platforms shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum measured to the top of the surface from the ground or floor surface.

1008.3.1.3 Transfer Space. A transfer space complying with 305.2 and 305.3 shall be provided adjacent to the transfer platform. The 48 inch (1220 mm) long minimum dimension of the transfer space shall be centered on and parallel to the 24 inch (610 mm) long minimum side of the transfer platform. The side of the transfer platform serving the transfer space shall be unobstructed.

1008.3.1.4 Transfer Supports. At least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.

1008.3.2 Transfer Steps. Transfer steps shall be provided where movement is intended from transfer platforms to levels with elevated play components required to be on

accessible routes. Transfer steps shall comply with 1008.3.2.

1008.3.2.1 Size. Transfer steps shall have level surfaces 14 inches (355 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) wide minimum.

1008.3.2.2 Height. Each transfer step shall be 8 inches (205 mm) high maximum.

1008.3.2.3 Transfer Supports. At least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.

1008.4 Play Components. Ground level play components on accessible routes and elevated play components connected by ramps shall comply with 1008.4.

1008.4.1 Turning Space. At least one turning space complying with 304 shall be provided on the same level as play components. Where swings are provided, the turning space shall be located immediately adjacent to the swing.

1008.4.2 Clear Floor or Ground Space. Clear floor or ground space complying with 305.2 and 305.3 shall be provided at play components.

1008.4.3 Play Tables. Where play tables are provided, knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) high minimum, 17 inches deep (430 mm) minimum, and 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum shall be provided. The tops of rims, curbs, or other obstructions shall be 31 inches (785 mm) high maximum.

EXCEPTION: Play tables designed and constructed primarily for children 5 years and younger shall not be required to provide knee clearance where the clear floor or ground space required by 1008.4.2 is arranged for a parallel approach.

1008.4.4 Entry Points and Seats. Where play components require transfer to entry points or seats, the entry points or seats shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the clear floor or ground space.

EXCEPTION: Entry points of slides shall not be required to comply with 1008.4.4.

1008.4.5 Transfer Supports. Where play components require transfer to entry points or seats, at least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.

#### 1009 SWIMMING POOLS, WADING POOLS, AND SPAS

1009.1 General. Where provided, pool lifts, sloped entries, transfer walls, transfer systems, and pool stairs shall comply with 1009.

1009.2 Pool Lifts. Pool lifts shall comply with 1009.2.

1009.2.1 Pool Lift Location. Pool lifts shall be located where the water level does not exceed 48 inches (1220 mm).

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where the entire pool depth is greater than 48 inches (1220 mm), compliance with 1009.2.1 shall not be required.

2. Where multiple pool lift locations are provided, no more than one pool lift shall be required to be located in an area where the water level is 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum.

1009.2.2 Seat Location. In the raised position, the centerline of the seat shall be located over the deck and 16 inches (405 mm) minimum from the edge of the pool. The deck surface between the centerline of the seat and the pool edge shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.

1009.2.3 Clear Deck Space. On the side of the seat opposite the water, a clear deck space shall be provided parallel with the seat. The space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum and shall extend forward 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum from a line located 12 inches (305 mm) behind the rear edge of the seat. The clear deck space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.

1009.2.4 Seat Height. The height of the lift seat shall be designed to allow a stop at 16 inches (405 mm) minimum to 19 inches (485 mm) maximum measured from the deck to the top of the seat surface when in the raised (load) position.

1009.2.5 Seat Width. The seat shall be 16 inches (405 mm) wide minimum.

1009.2.6 Footrests and Armrests. Footrests shall be provided and shall move with the seat. If provided, the armrest positioned opposite the water shall be removable or shall fold clear of the seat when the seat is in the raised (load) position.

EXCEPTION: Footrests shall not be required on pool lifts provided in spas.

1009.2.7 Operation. The lift shall be capable of unassisted operation from both the deck and water levels. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be unobstructed when the lift is in use and shall comply with 309.4.

1009.2.8 Submerged Depth. The lift shall be designed so that the seat will submerge to a water depth of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum below the stationary water level.

1009.2.9 Lifting Capacity. Single person pool lifts shall have a weight capacity of 300 pounds. (136 kg) minimum and be capable of sustaining a static load of at least one and a half times the rated load.

1009.3 Sloped Entries. Sloped entries shall comply with 1009.3.

1009.3.1 Sloped Entries. Sloped entries shall comply with Chapter 4 except as modified in 1109.3.1 through 1109.3.3.

EXCEPTION: Where sloped entries are provided, the surfaces shall not be required to be slip resistant.

1009.3.2 Submerged Depth. Sloped entries shall extend to a depth of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum below the stationary water level. Where landings are required by 405.7, at least one landing shall be located 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum below the stationary water level.

EXCEPTION: In wading pools, the sloped entry and landings, if provided, shall extend to the deepest part of the wading pool.

1009.3.3 Handrails. At least two handrails complying with 505 shall be provided on the sloped entry. The clear width between required handrails shall be 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Handrail extensions specified by 505.10.1 shall not be required at the bottom landing serving a sloped entry.

2. Where a sloped entry is provided for wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools, and other pools where user access is limited to one area, the handrails shall not be required to comply with the clear width requirements of 1009.3.3.

3. Sloped entries in wading pools shall not be required to provide handrails complying with 1009.3.3. If provided, handrails on sloped entries in wading pools shall not be required to comply with 505.

1009.4 Transfer Walls. Transfer walls shall comply with 1009.4.

1009.4.1 Clear Deck Space. A clear deck space of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum with a slope not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the base of the transfer wall. Where one grab bar is provided, the clear deck space shall be centered on the grab bar. Where two grab bars are provided, the clear deck space shall be centered on the clearance between the grab bars.

1009.4.2 Height. The height of the transfer wall shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum measured from the deck.

1009.4.3 Wall Depth and Length. The depth of the transfer wall shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum. The length of the transfer wall shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum and shall be centered on the clear deck space.

1009.4.4 Surface. Surfaces of transfer walls shall not be sharp and shall have rounded edges.

1009.4.5 Grab Bars. At least one grab bar complying with 609 shall be provided on the transfer wall. Grab bars shall be perpendicular to the pool wall and shall extend the full depth of the transfer wall. The top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above transfer walls. Where one grab bar is provided, clearance shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on both sides of the grab bar. Where two grab bars are provided, clearance between grab bars shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: Grab bars on transfer walls shall not be required to comply with 609.4.

1009.5 Transfer Systems. Transfer systems shall comply with 1009.5.

1009.5.1 Transfer Platform. A transfer platform shall be provided at the head of each transfer system. Transfer platforms shall provide 19 inches (485 mm) minimum clear depth and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum clear width.

1009.5.2 Transfer Space. A transfer space of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum with a slope not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the base of the transfer platform surface and shall be centered along a 24 inch (610 mm) minimum side of the transfer platform. The side of the transfer platform serving the transfer space shall be unobstructed.

1009.5.3 Height. The height of the transfer platform shall comply with 1009.4.2.

1009.5.4 Transfer Steps. Transfer step height shall be 8 inches (205 mm) maximum. The surface of the bottom tread shall extend to a water depth of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum below the stationary water level.

1009.5.5 Surface. The surface of the transfer system shall not be sharp and shall have rounded edges.

1009.5.6 Size. Each transfer step shall have a tread clear depth of 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) maximum and shall have a tread clear width of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.

1009.5.7 Grab Bars. At least one grab bar on each transfer step and the transfer platform or a continuous grab bar serving each transfer step and the transfer platform shall be provided. Where a grab bar is provided on each step, the tops of gripping surfaces shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above each step and transfer platform. Where a continuous grab bar is provided, the top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the step nosing and transfer platform. Grab bars shall comply with 609 and be located on at least one side of the transfer system. The grab bar located at the transfer platform shall not obstruct transfer.

EXCEPTION: Grab bars on transfer systems shall not be required to comply with 609.4.

1009.6 Pool Stairs. Pool stairs shall comply with 1009.6.

1009.6.1 Pool Stairs. Pool stairs shall comply with 504.

EXCEPTION: Pool step riser heights shall not be required to be 4 inches (100 mm) high minimum and 7 inches (180 mm) high maximum provided that riser heights are uniform.

1009.6.2 Handrails. The width between handrails shall be 20 inches (510 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. Handrail extensions required by 505.10.3 shall not be required on pool stairs.

#### 1010 SHOOTING FACILITIES WITH FIRING POSITIONS

1010.1 Turning Space. A circular turning space 60 inches (1525 mm) diameter minimum with slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at shooting facilities with firing positions.

## 1011 OUTDOOR CONSTRUCTED FEATURES

1011.1 General. All outdoor constructed features shall comply with 1011.2 and 1011.3. Outdoor constructed features specified in 1011.4 through 1011.8 shall comply with those provisions, as applicable.

1011.2 Clear Ground Space. A clear ground space complying with 1011.2 shall be provided at outdoor constructed features.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Where individual outdoor constructed features are altered and the ground surface is not altered, the clear ground space shall not be required to comply with 1011.2.2 and 1011.2.3.

2. In alterations, when an entity determines that a condition in 1019 does not permit full compliance with a specific provision in 1011.2, the clear ground space shall comply with the provision to the extent practicable.

1011.2.1 Size and Location. The size and location of the clear ground space shall be in accordance with Table 1011.2.1. Unless otherwise specified in Table 1011.2.1, one full unobstructed side of the clear ground space shall adjoin or overlap an outdoor recreation access route or a trail, as applicable, or another clear ground space.

TABLE 1011.2.1—CLEAR GROUND SPACE

| Outdoor constructed feature                     | Minimum size and location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Picnic tables .....                             | 36 inches (915 mm) on all usable sides of the table measured from the back edge of the benches.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Fire rings, grills, fireplaces, and woodstoves. | 48 inches (1220 mm) by 48 inches (1220 mm) on all usable sides of the fire ring, grill, fireplace, and woodstove.<br>Center the space on each usable side of the grill, fireplace, and woodstove.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Trash and recycling receptacles.                | 36 inches (915 mm) by 48 inches (1220 mm) positioned for forward approach to the receptacle opening; or 30 inches (760 mm) by 60 inches (1525 mm) positioned for a parallel approach to the receptacle opening.                                                                                                                                             |
| Water hydrants .....                            | 72 inches (1830 mm) by 48 inches (1220 mm) with the long side of the space adjoining or overlapping an outdoor recreation access route or trail, as applicable, or another clear ground space.<br>Locate the space so that the water spout is 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear center of the long side of the space. |
| Utility and sewage hook-ups.                    | 30 inches (760 mm) by 60 inches (1525 mm) with the long side of the space adjoining or overlapping an accessible parking space or pull-up space for recreational vehicles.<br>Locate the space so that the hook-ups are at the rear center of the space.                                                                                                    |
| Outdoor rinsing showers                         | Bollards or other barriers shall not obstruct the clear ground space in front of the hook-ups.<br>60 inches (1525 mm) by 60 inches (1525 mm) centered on the shower heads.<br>Locate the space so that the shower pedestal or wall with the shower head are at the rear end of the space.                                                                   |
| Benches .....                                   | 36 inches (915 mm) by 48 inches (1220 mm) positioned near the bench with one side of the space adjoining an outdoor recreation access route or trail, as applicable.<br>The clear ground space shall not overlap the outdoor recreation access route or trail, or another clear ground space.                                                               |
| Viewing Scopes .....                            | 36 inches (915 mm) by 48 inches (1220 mm) positioned for forward approach to the viewing scope.<br>Provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306 under the viewing scope.<br>Locate the space so that the eyepiece is centered on the space.                                                                                                            |

1011.2.2 Surface. The surface of the clear ground space shall be firm and stable.

1011.2.3 Slope. The slope of the clear ground space surface shall not be steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

1011.2.4 Openings. Openings in the clear ground space surface shall not allow the passage of a sphere more than ½ inch (13 mm) in diameter.

1011.3 Operable Parts. Operable parts shall comply with 309.3 and 309.4.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Fire rings, grills, fireplaces, wood stoves, water hydrants, and water utility hookups shall comply with 309.4 to the extent practicable.

2. Trash and recycling receptacles with hinged lids and controls to keep out large

animals shall comply with 309.4 to the extent practicable.

3. Dumpster type trash and recycling receptacles shall not be required to comply with 309.3 and 309.4.

4. Sewage hatches shall not be required to comply with 309.3 and 309.4.

1011.4 Picnic Tables. Picnic tables shall comply with 1011.4.

1011.4.1 Height. The tops of picnic tables shall comply with 902.3.

1011.4.2 Wheelchair Space. Picnic tables shall provide at least one wheelchair space for each 24 linear feet (7320 mm) of usable table surface perimeter. Wheelchair spaces shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum. Wheelchair spaces shall be positioned for a forward approach to the table and provide knee and toe clearance complying with 306 under the table.

1011.5 Fire Rings, Grills, Fireplaces, and Wood Stoves. Fire rings, grills, fireplaces, and wood stoves shall comply with 1011.5.

1011.5.1 Fire Building Surfaces. Fire building surfaces shall be 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the ground.

1011.5.2 Cooking Surfaces. Where provided, cooking surfaces shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the ground.

1011.5.3 Raised Edges or Walls. Where fire rings, grills, or fireplaces are constructed with raised edges or walls, the depth of the raised edge or wall shall be 10 inches (255 mm) maximum.

1011.6 Water Spouts. Water spouts at water hydrants and water utility hook-ups shall be 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the ground.

1011.7 Outdoor Rinsing Showers. Outdoor rinsing showers shall provide at least one hand-held shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum. The hand-held shower spray unit shall have at least one fixed position located 15 inches minimum (380 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the ground.

EXCEPTION: Where vandalism is a consideration, a fixed shower head located at 48 in (1220 mm) above the ground shall be permitted in place of a hand-held shower spray unit.

1011.8 Viewing Scopes. Eyepieces on viewing scopes shall be 43 inches (1090 mm) minimum and 51 inches (1295 mm) maximum above the ground.

#### 1012 PARKING SPACES WITHIN CAMPING UNITS AND PICNIC UNITS AND PULL-UP SPACES AT DUMP STATIONS

1012.1 General. Parking spaces within camping units and picnic units with mobility features and pull-up spaces for recreational vehicles at dump stations shall comply with 1012.

1012.2 Recreational Vehicles. Parking spaces and pull-up spaces for recreational vehicles shall be 20 feet (6100 mm) wide minimum.

EXCEPTION: Where two adjacent parking spaces are provided for recreational vehicles, one parking space shall be permitted to be 16 feet (4880 mm) wide minimum.

1012.3 Other Vehicles. Parking spaces for vehicles, other than recreational vehicles, shall be 16 feet (4880 mm) wide minimum.

EXCEPTION: Where two adjacent parking spaces are provided for vehicles, other than recreational vehicles, one parking space shall be permitted to be 8 feet (2440 mm) wide minimum.

1012.4 Surface. The surface of parking spaces and pull-up spaces shall be firm and stable.

1012.5 Slope. The slope of the surface of parking spaces and pull-up spaces shall not be steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

#### 1013 TENT PADS AND TENT PLATFORMS

1013.1 General. Tent pads and tent platforms shall comply with 1013.

EXCEPTION: When an entity determines that a condition in 1019 does not permit full compliance with a specific provision in 1013, the tent pad and tent platform shall comply with the provision to the extent practicable.

1013.2 Clear Ground Space. Clear ground space complying with 1013.2 shall be provided on all usable sides of tent pads and tent platforms.

1013.2.1 Size. The clear ground space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) wide minimum.

1013.2.2 Surface. The surface of the clear ground space shall be firm and stable. The surface shall allow use of tent stakes and other tent securement devices.

1013.3 Slope. The slope of the surface of tent pads, tent platforms, and clear ground spaces shall not be steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted where necessary for drainage.

1013.4 Height. Tent platforms shall be 19 inches (485 mm) high maximum measured from the clear ground space to the tent platform surface.

#### 1014 CAMP SHELTERS

1014.1 General. Camp shelters shall comply with 1014.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. When an entity determines that a condition in 1019 does not permit full compliance with a specific provision in 1014, the camp shelter shall comply with the provision to the extent practicable.

2. Camp shelters shall not be required to comply with 307.

1014.2 Entrance. Camp shelters shall provide an entrance complying with 1014.2.1 or 1014.2.2.

1014.2.1 Transfer Access. Where transfer access is provided at the entrance to a camp shelter, the entrance shall comply with 1014.2.1.

1014.2.1.1 Clear Ground Space. A clear ground space shall be provided at the entrance to the camp shelter. The clear ground space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum and shall be positioned for a parallel approach to the camp shelter. One full unobstructed side of the clear ground space shall adjoin or overlap an outdoor recreation access route or trail, as applicable, or another clear ground space.

1014.2.1.1.1 Surface. The surface of the clear ground space shall be firm and stable.

1014.2.1.1.2 Slope. The slope of the surface of the clear ground space shall not be steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted where necessary for drainage.

1014.2.1.2 Floor Height. The camp shelter floor at the entrance shall be 19 inches (485 mm) high maximum measured from the clear ground space.

1014.2.2 Roll-in Access. Where roll-in access is provided at the entrance to a camp shelter, the entrance shall comply with 1014.2.2.

1014.2.2.1 Level or Sloped Entry Route. Camp shelters providing roll-in access shall have a level or sloped entry route complying with 1016 or 1017, as applicable.

1014.2.2.2 Turning Space. A turning space complying with 304.3 shall be provided within the camp shelter.

1014.3 Floor. The floor within camp shelters shall comply with 1014.3.

1014.3.1 Surface. The floor surface shall be firm and stable.

1014.3.2 Slope. The slope of the floor surface shall not be steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the floor surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

#### 1015 VIEWING AREAS

1015.1 General. Viewing areas shall comply with 1015.

EXCEPTION: In alterations, when an entity determines that a condition in 1019 does not permit full compliance with a specific provision in 1015, the viewing area shall comply with the provision to the extent practicable.

1015.2 Clear Ground Space. A clear ground space shall be provided at each distinct viewing location. The clear ground space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum and shall be positioned for either a forward or parallel approach to the viewing location. One full unobstructed side of the clear ground space shall adjoin or overlap an outdoor recreation access route or trail, as applicable, or another clear ground space.

1015.3 Viewing Space. Each distinct viewing location shall provide a viewing space adjacent to the clear ground space required by 1015.2 through which the point of interest is viewable. The viewing space shall be 32 inches (815 mm) maximum and 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum high above the ground and shall extend the full width of the clear ground space.

EXCEPTION: Guards or similar safety barriers shall be permitted to obstruct the viewing space to the extent the obstruction is necessary for the guard or safety barrier to serve its intended purpose.

1015.4 Turning Space. A turning space complying with 304.3 shall be provided within viewing areas.

1015.5 Surface. The surface of clear ground spaces and turning spaces shall be firm and stable.

1015.6 Slope. The slope of the surface of clear ground spaces and turning spaces shall not be steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

#### 1016 OUTDOOR RECREATION ACCESS ROUTES

1016.1 General. Outdoor recreation access routes shall comply with 1016.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. In alterations to existing camping facilities, picnic facilities, and trailheads, when an entity determines that a condition in 1019 does not permit full compliance with a specific provision in 1016 on a portion of an outdoor recreation access route, the portion of the outdoor recreation access route shall comply with the provision to the extent practicable.

2. At viewing areas, when an entity determines that a condition in 1019 does not permit full compliance on a portion of an outdoor recreation access route with a specific provision in 1016, the portion of the outdoor recreation access route shall comply with the provision to the extent practicable.

3. Where outdoor recreation access routes are provided within vehicular ways, outdoor recreation access routes shall not be required to comply with 1016.4, 1016.7, and 1016.8.

1016.2 Surface. The surface of outdoor recreation access routes, passing spaces, and resting intervals shall be firm and stable.

1016.3 Clear Width. The clear width of outdoor recreation access routes shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

1016.4 Passing Spaces. Outdoor recreation access routes with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces complying with 1016.4 at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces and resting intervals shall be permitted to overlap.

1016.4.1 Size. The passing space shall be either:

1. A space 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum; or

2. The intersection of two outdoor recreation access routes providing a T-shaped space complying with 304.3.2 where the base and the arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum beyond the intersection. Vertical alignment at the intersection of the outdoor recreation access routes that form the T-shaped space shall be nominally planar.

1016.5 Obstacles. Obstacles on outdoor recreation access routes, passing spaces, and resting intervals shall not exceed ½ inch (13

mm) in height measured vertically to the highest point.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, obstacles shall be permitted to not exceed 1 inch (25 mm) in height measured vertically to the highest point.

1016.6 Openings. Openings in the surface of outdoor recreation access routes shall not allow the passage of a sphere more than ½ inch (13 mm) in diameter.

1016.7 Slopes. The slopes of outdoor recreation access routes shall comply with 1016.7.

1016.7.1 Maximum Running Slope and Segment Length. The running slope of any segment of an outdoor recreation access route shall not be steeper than 1:10 (10%). Where the running slope of a segment of an outdoor recreation access route is steeper than 1:20 (5%), the maximum length of the segment shall be in accordance with Table 1016.7.1, and a resting interval complying with 1016.8 shall be provided at the top and bottom of each segment.

TABLE 1016.7.1—MAXIMUM RUNNING SLOPE AND SEGMENT LENGTH

| Running slope of outdoor recreation access route segment |                      | Maximum length of segment |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Steeper than                                             | But not steeper than |                           |
| 1:20 (5%) .....                                          | 1:12 (8.33%) .....   | 50 feet (15 m).           |
| 1:12 (8.33%) .....                                       | 1:10 (10%) .....     | 30 feet (9 m).            |

1016.7.2 Cross Slope. The cross slope shall not be steeper than 1:48.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than concrete, asphalt, or boards, cross slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

1016.8 Resting Intervals. Resting intervals shall comply with 1016.8.

1016.8.1 Length. The resting interval length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum.

1016.8.2 Width. Where resting intervals are provided within an outdoor recreation access route, resting intervals shall be at least as wide as the widest segment of the outdoor recreation access route leading to the resting interval. Where resting intervals are provided adjacent to an outdoor recreation access route, the resting interval shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum.

1016.8.3 Slope. Resting intervals shall have slopes not steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than concrete, asphalt, or boards, slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

1016.8.4 Turning Space. Where resting intervals are provided adjacent to an outdoor recreation access route, a turning space complying with 304.3.2 shall be provided. Vertical

alignment between the outdoor recreation access route, turning space, and resting interval shall be nominally planar.

1016.9 Protruding Objects. Constructed elements on outdoor recreation access routes, passing spaces, and resting intervals shall comply with 307.

#### 1017 TRAILS

1017.1 General. Trails shall comply with 1017.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. When an entity determines that a condition in 1019 does not permit full compliance with a specific provision in 1017 on a portion of a trail, the portion of the trail shall comply with the provision to the extent practicable.

2. After applying Exception 1, when an entity determines that it is impracticable for the entire trail to comply with 1017, the trail shall not be required to comply with 1017.

1017.2 Surface. The surface of trails, passing spaces, and resting intervals shall be firm and stable.

1017.3 Clear Tread Width. The clear tread width of trails shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

1017.4 Passing Spaces. Trails with a clear tread width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces complying with 1017.4 at intervals of 1000 feet (300 m) maximum. Where the full length of a trail does not fully comply with 1017, a passing space shall be located at the end of the trail segment that fully complies with 1017. Passing spaces and resting intervals shall be permitted to overlap.

1017.4.1 Size. The passing space shall be either:

1. A space 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum; or

2. The intersection of two trails providing a T-shaped space complying with 304.3.2 where the base and the arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum beyond the intersection. Vertical alignment at the intersection of the trails that form the T-shaped space shall be nominally planar.

1017.5 Tread Obstacles. Tread obstacles on trails, passing spaces, and resting intervals shall not exceed ½ inch (13 mm) in height measured vertically to the highest point.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, tread obstacles shall be permitted to not exceed 2 inches (50 mm) in height measured vertically to the highest point.

1017.6 Openings. Openings in the surface of trails, passing spaces, and resting intervals shall not allow the passage of a sphere more than ½ inch (13 mm) in diameter.

1017.7 Slopes. The slopes of trails shall comply with 1017.7.

1017.7.1 Maximum Running Slope and Segment Length. Not more than 30 percent of

the total length of a trail shall have a running slope steeper than 1:12 (8.33%). The running slope of any segment of a trail shall not be steeper than 1:8 (12%). Where the running slope of a segment of a trail is steeper than 1:20 (5%), the maximum length of the segment shall be in accordance with Table 1017.7.1, and a resting interval complying with 1017.8 shall be provided at the top and bottom of each segment.

TABLE 1017.7.1—MAXIMUM RUNNING SLOPE AND SEGMENT LENGTH

| Running slope of trail segment |                      | Maximum length of segment |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Steeper than                   | But not steeper than |                           |
| 1:20 (5%) .....                | 1:12 (8.33%) .....   | 200 feet (61 m).          |
| 1:12 (8.33%) .....             | 1:10 (10%) .....     | 30 feet (9 m).            |
| 1:10 (10%) .....               | 1:8 (12%) .....      | 10 feet (3050 mm).        |

1017.7.2 Cross Slope. The cross slope shall be not be steeper than 1:48.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than concrete, asphalt, or boards, cross slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

1017.8 Resting Intervals. Resting intervals shall comply with 1017.8.

1017.8.1 Length. The resting interval length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) long minimum.

1017.8.2 Width. Where resting intervals are provided within the trail tread, resting intervals shall be at least as wide as the widest segment of the trail tread leading to the resting interval. Where resting intervals are provided adjacent to the trail tread, the resting interval clear width shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

1017.8.3 Slope. Resting intervals shall have slopes not steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than concrete, asphalt, or boards, cross slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

1017.8.4 Turning Space. Where resting intervals are provided adjacent to the trail tread, a turning space complying with 304.3.2 shall be provided. Vertical alignment between the trail tread, turning space, and resting interval shall be nominally planar.

1017.9 Protruding Objects. Constructed elements on trails, passing spaces, and resting intervals shall comply with 307.

1017.10 Trailhead Signs. Trail information signs at trailheads shall include the following:

1. Length of the trail or trail segment;
  2. Surface type;
  3. Typical and minimum tread width;
  4. Typical and maximum running slope;
- and
5. Typical and maximum cross slope.

## 1018 BEACH ACCESS ROUTES

1018.1 General. Beach access routes shall comply with 1018.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. When an entity determines that a condition in 1019 does not permit full compliance with a specific provision in 1018 on a portion of a beach access route, the portion of the beach access route shall comply with the provision to the extent practicable.

2. After applying Exception 1, when an entity determines that it is impracticable to provide a beach access route complying with 1018, a beach access route shall not be required.

3. Removable beach access routes shall not be required to comply with 1018.7, 1018.8, and 1018.10.

1018.2 Connections. Beach access routes shall connect an entry point to the beach to the:

1. High tide level at tidal beaches;
  2. Mean high water level at river beaches;
- or
3. Normal recreation water level at lake, pond, and reservoir beaches.

1018.3 Surface. The surface of beach access routes and resting intervals shall be firm and stable.

1018.4 Clear Width. The clear width of beach access routes shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

EXCEPTION: At dune crossings, the clear width of beach access routes that are not removable shall be permitted to be reduced to 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

1018.5 Obstacles. Obstacles on beach access routes and resting intervals shall not exceed ½ inch (13 mm) in height measured vertically to the highest point.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than asphalt, concrete, or boards, obstacles shall be permitted to not exceed 1 inch (25 mm) in height measured vertically to the highest point.

1018.6 Openings. Openings in the surface of beach access routes and resting intervals shall not allow the passage of a sphere more than ½ inch (13 mm) in diameter.

1018.7 Slopes. The slopes of beach access routes shall comply with 1018.7.

1018.7.1 Maximum Running Slope and Segment Length. The running slope of any segment of a beach access route shall not be steeper than 1:10 (10%). Where the running slope of a segment of a beach access route is steeper than 1:20 (5%), the maximum length of the segment shall be in accordance with Table 1018.7.1, and a resting interval complying with 1018.8 shall be provided at the top and bottom of each segment.

TABLE 1018.7.1—MAXIMUM RUNNING SLOPE  
AND SEGMENT LENGTH

| Running slope of beach access route<br>segment |                         | Maximum length of<br>segment |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| Steeper than                                   | But not steeper<br>than |                              |
| 1:20 (5%) .....                                | 1:12 (8.33%) .....      | 50 feet (15 m).              |
| 1:12 (8.33%) .....                             | 1:10 (10%) .....        | 30 feet (9 m).               |

1018.7.2 Cross Slope. The cross slope shall not be steeper than 1:48.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than concrete, asphalt, or boards, cross slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

1018.8 Resting Intervals. Resting intervals shall comply with 1018.8.

1018.8.1 Size. Resting intervals shall be 60 inches minimum (1525 mm) by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

1018.8.2 Slope. Resting intervals shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 in any direction.

EXCEPTION: Where the surface is other than concrete, asphalt, or boards, cross slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall be permitted when necessary for drainage.

1018.9 Protruding Objects. Constructed elements on beach access routes and resting intervals shall comply with 307.

1018.10 Dune Crossings. Where the slope of a beach access route at a dune crossing is steeper than 1:20 (5%), handrails complying with 505 and curbs or barriers shall be provided.

The curbs or barriers shall prevent the passage of a 2 inch (50 mm) diameter sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 2 inches (50 mm) of the crossing surface.

#### 1019 CONDITIONS FOR EXCEPTIONS

1019.1 General. Exceptions to specific provisions in 1011, 1013, 1014, 1015, 1016, 1017, and 1018 shall be permitted when an entity determines that any of the following conditions does not permit full compliance with the provision:

1. Compliance is not practicable due to terrain.
2. Compliance cannot be accomplished with the prevailing construction practices.
3. Compliance would fundamentally alter the function or purpose of the facility or the setting.
4. Compliance is limited or precluded by any of the following laws, or by decisions or opinions issued or agreements executed pursuant to any of the following laws:
  - Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.);
  - National Environmental Policy Act (42 U.S.C. 4321 et seq.);
  - National Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.);
  - Wilderness Act (16 U.S.C. 1131 et seq.); or
  - Other federal, state, or local law the purpose of which is to preserve threatened or endangered species; the environment; or archaeological, cultural, historical, or other significant natural features.

**Figure 407.4.7.1.3 – Elevator Control Button Identification**

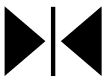
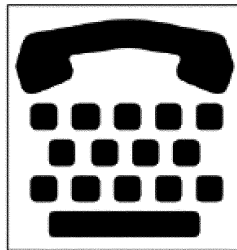
| <b>Control Button</b> | <b>Tactile Symbol</b>                                                               | <b>Braille Message</b>     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Emergency Stop        |    | <br><br>"ST"OP Three cells |
| Alarm                 |    | <br><br>AL"AR"M Four cells |
| Door Open             |   | <br><br>OP"EN" Three cells |
| Door Close            |  | <br><br>CLOSE Five cells   |
| Entry Deck            |  | <br><br>MA"IN" Three cells |
| Phone                 |  | <br><br>PH"ONE" Four cells |

**Figure 703.7.2.1 – International Symbol of Accessibility**

**Figure 703.7.2.2 – International Symbol of TTY****Figure 703.7.2.4 – International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss**

[78 FR 59526, Sept. 26, 2013, as amended at 78 FR 67305, 67306, Nov. 12, 2013; 79 FR 26142, May 7, 2014]

EDITORIAL NOTE: At 79 FR 26142, May 7, 2014, appendix D was amended. However, several actions could not be incorporated due to inaccurate amendatory instruction.

#### APPENDIX E TO PART 1191 [RESERVED]

#### APPENDIX F TO PART 1191—MODIFICATIONS ADOPTED BY THE DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

The Department of Transportation has adopted by reference Appendices B and D to this part with modifications as the regulatory standards for the construction and alteration of transportation facilities subject to its regulations under the Americans with Disabilities Act, effective November 29, 2006, 49 CFR 37.9 and Appendix A to 49 CFR part 37, as amended at 71 FR 63263, October 30, 2006; and corrected at 72 FR 11089, March 12, 2007. The Department of Transportation has modified section 206.3 in Appendix B to this part; and sections 406, 810.2.2, and 810.5.3 in Appendix D to this part. The modified sections adopted by the Department of Transportation are reprinted in this appendix. Entities that are required to comply with the Department of Transportation's regulatory standards, must comply with modified sections adopted by the Department of Trans-

portation that are reprinted in this appendix. The Department of Transportation has provided supplemental information on the modified sections in Appendix D to 49 CFR part 37.

#### MODIFICATION TO 206.3 OF APPENDIX B

**206.3 Location.** Accessible routes shall coincide with, or be located in the same area as general circulation paths. Where circulation paths are interior, required accessible routes shall also be interior. Elements such as ramps, elevators, or other circulation devices, fare vending or other ticketing areas, and fare collection areas shall be placed to minimize the distance which wheelchair users and other persons who cannot negotiate steps may have to travel compared to the general public.

#### MODIFICATION TO 406 OF APPENDIX D

**406.8 Detectable Warnings.** A curb ramp shall have a detectable warning complying with 705. The detectable warning shall extend the full width of the curb ramp (exclusive of flared sides) and shall extend either

## **Pt. 1192**

the full depth of the curb ramp or 24 inches (610 mm) deep minimum measured from the back of the curb on the ramp surface.

### **MODIFICATION TO 810.2.2 OF APPENDIX D**

*810.2.2 Dimensions.* Bus boarding and alighting areas shall provide a clear length of 96 inches (2440 mm), measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a clear width of 60 inches (1525 mm), measured parallel to the vehicle roadway. Public entities shall ensure that the construction of bus boarding and alighting areas comply with 810.2.2, to the extent the construction specifications are within their control.

### **MODIFICATION TO 810.5.3 OF APPENDIX D**

*810.5.3 Platform and Vehicle Floor Coordination.* Station platforms shall be positioned to coordinate with vehicles in accordance with the applicable requirements of 36 CFR part 1192. Low-level platforms shall be 8 inches (205 mm) minimum above top of rail. In light rail, commuter rail, and intercity rail systems where it is not operationally or structurally feasible to meet the horizontal gap or vertical difference requirements of part 1192 or 49 CFR part 38, mini-high platforms, carborne or platform-mounted lifts, ramps or bridge plates or similarly manually deployed devices, meeting the requirements of 49 CFR part 38, shall suffice.

EXCEPTION: Where vehicles are boarded from sidewalks or street-level, low-level platforms shall be permitted to be less than 8 inches (205 mm).

[72 FR 13707, Mar. 23, 2007]

## **PART 1192—AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT (ADA) ACCESSIBILITY GUIDELINES FOR TRANSPORTATION VEHICLES**

### **Subpart A—General**

Sec.

- 1192.1 Purpose.
- 1192.2 Equivalent facilitation.
- 1192.3 Definitions.
- 1192.4 Miscellaneous instructions.

### **Subpart B—Buses, Over-the-Road Buses, and Vans**

- 1192.21 General.

### **Subpart C—Rapid Rail Vehicles and Systems**

- 1192.51 General.
- 1192.53 Doorways.
- 1192.55 Priority seating signs.
- 1192.57 Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions.

## **36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)**

- 1192.59 Floor surfaces.
- 1192.61 Public information system.
- 1192.63 Between-car barriers.

### **Subpart D—Light Rail Vehicles and Systems**

- 1192.71 General.
- 1192.73 Doorways.
- 1192.75 Priority seating signs.
- 1192.77 Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions.
- 1192.79 Floors, steps and thresholds.
- 1192.81 Lighting.
- 1192.83 Mobility aid accessibility.
- 1192.85 Between-car barriers.
- 1192.87 Public information system.

### **Subpart E—Commuter Rail Cars and Systems**

- 1192.91 General.
- 1192.93 Doorways.
- 1192.95 Mobility aid accessibility.
- 1192.97 Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions.
- 1192.99 Floors, steps and thresholds.
- 1192.101 Lighting.
- 1192.103 Public information system.
- 1192.105 Priority seating signs.
- 1192.107 Restrooms.
- 1192.109 Between-car barriers.

### **Subpart F—Intercity Rail Cars and Systems**

- 1192.111 General.
- 1192.113 Doorways.
- 1192.115 Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions.
- 1192.117 Floors, steps and thresholds.
- 1192.119 Lighting.
- 1192.121 Public information system.
- 1192.123 Restrooms.
- 1192.125 Mobility aid accessibility.
- 1192.127 Sleeping compartments.

### **Subpart G [Reserved]**

### **Subpart H—Other Vehicles and Systems**

- 1192.171 General.
- 1192.173 Automated guideway transit vehicles and systems.
- 1192.175 High-speed rail cars, monorails and systems.
- 1192.177 Ferries, excursion boats and other vessels. [Reserved]
- 1192.179 Trams, similar vehicles and systems.

### **FIGURES TO PART 1192**

### **APPENDIX A TO PART 1192—ACCESSIBILITY GUIDELINES FOR BUSES, OVER-THE-ROAD BUSES, AND VANS**

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 792 (b) (3); 42 U.S.C. 12204.

SOURCE: 56 FR 45558, Sept. 6, 1991, unless otherwise noted.

**Subpart A—General****§ 1192.1 Purpose.**

This part provides minimum guidelines and requirements for accessibility standards to be issued by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR part 37 for transportation vehicles required to be accessible by the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 *et seq.*).

**§ 1192.2 Equivalent facilitation.**

Departures from particular technical and scoping requirements of these guidelines by use of other designs and technologies are permitted where the alternative designs and technologies used will provide substantially equivalent or greater access to and usability of the vehicle. Departures are to be considered on a case-by-case basis by the Department of Transportation under the procedure set forth in 49 CFR 37.7.

**§ 1192.3 Definitions.**

*Accessible* means, with respect to vehicles covered by this part, compliance with the provisions of this part.

*Automated guideway transit (AGT) system* means a fixed-guideway transportation system which operates with automated (driverless) individual vehicles or multi-car trains. Service may be on a fixed schedule or in response to a passenger-activated call button. Such systems using small, slow moving vehicles, often operated in airports and amusement parks, are sometimes called *people movers*.

*Bus* means any of several types of self-propelled vehicles, generally rubber tired, intended for use on city streets, highways, and busways, including but not limited to minibuses, forty- and thirty-foot transit buses, articulated buses, double-deck buses, and electric powered trolley buses, used to provide designated or specified public transportation services. Self-propelled, rubber tire vehicles designed to look like antique or vintage trolleys or streetcars are considered buses.

*Commuter rail car* means a rail passenger car obtained by a commuter authority (as defined by 49 CFR 37.3) for use in commuter rail transportation.

*Commuter rail transportation* means short-haul rail passenger service operating in metropolitan and suburban areas, operated by a commuter authority, whether within or across the geographical boundaries of a state, usually characterized by reduced fare, multiple ride, and commutation tickets and by morning and evening peak period operations. This term does not include light or rapid rail transportation.

*High speed rail* means an intercity-type rail service which operates primarily on a dedicated guideway or track not used, for the most part, by freight, including, but not limited to, trains on welded rail, magnetically levitated (maglev) vehicles on a special guideway, or other advanced technology vehicles, designed to travel at speeds in excess of those possible on other types of railroads.

*Intercity rail passenger car* means a rail car intended for use by revenue passengers obtained by the National Railroad Passenger Corporation (Amtrak) for use in intercity rail transportation.

*Intercity rail transportation* means transportation provided by Amtrak.

*Light rail* means a streetcar-type vehicle railway operated on city streets, semi-private rights-of-way, or exclusive private rights-of-way. Service may be provided by step-entry vehicles or by level-boarding.

*Over-the-road bus* means a vehicle characterized by an elevated passenger deck located over a baggage compartment.

*Rapid rail* means a subway-type transit vehicle railway operated on exclusive private rights-of-way with high-level platform stations. Rapid rail may also operate on elevated or at-grade level track separated from other traffic.

*Tram* means any of several types of motor vehicles consisting of a tractor unit, with or without passenger accommodations, and one or more passenger trailer units, including but not limited to vehicles providing shuttle service to remote parking areas, between hotels and other public accommodations, and between and within amusement parks and other recreation areas.

[56 FR 45558, Sept. 6, 1991, as amended at 81 FR 90624, Dec. 14, 2016]

## § 1192.4

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

### § 1192.4 Miscellaneous instructions.

(a) *Dimensional conventions.* Dimensions that are not noted as minimum or maximum are absolute.

(b) *Dimensional tolerances.* All dimensions are subject to conventional engineering tolerances for manufacturing processes, material properties, and field conditions, including normal anticipated wear not exceeding accepted industry-wide standards and practices.

(c) *General terminology.* The terms used in this part shall have the following meanings:

(1) *Comply with* means meet one or more specification of these guidelines.

(2) *If or if \* \* \* then* denotes a specification that applies only when the conditions described are present.

(3) *May* denotes an option or alternative.

(4) *Shall* denotes a mandatory specification or requirement.

(5) *Should* denotes an advisory specification or recommendation and is used only in the appendix to this part.

[56 FR 45558, Sept. 6, 1991, as amended at 81 FR 90624, Dec. 14, 2016]

### Subpart B—Buses, Over-the-Road Buses, and Vans

#### § 1192.21 General.

The accessibility guidelines for buses, over-the-road buses, and vans are set forth in Appendix A to this part.

[81 FR 90624, Dec. 14, 2016]

### Subpart C—Rapid Rail Vehicles and Systems

#### § 1192.51 General.

(a) New, used and remanufactured rapid rail vehicles, to be considered accessible by regulations issued by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR part 37, shall comply with this subpart.

(b) If portions of the vehicle are modified in a way that affects or could affect accessibility, each such portion shall comply, to the extent practicable, with the applicable provisions of this subpart. This provision does not require that inaccessible vehicles be ret-

rofitted with lifts, ramps or other boarding devices.

(c) Existing vehicles which are retrofitted to comply with the “one-car-per-train rule” of 49 CFR 37.93 shall comply with §§ 1192.55, 1192.57(b), 1192.59 and shall have, in new and key stations, at least one door complying with § 1192.53(a)(1), (b) and (d). Removal of seats is not required. Vehicles previously designed and manufactured in accordance with the accessibility requirements of 49 CFR part 609 or Department of Transportation regulations implementing section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 that were in effect before October 7, 1991, and which can be entered and used from stations in which they are to be operated, may be used to satisfy the requirements of 49 CFR 37.93.

#### § 1192.53 Doorways.

(a) *Clear width.* (1) Passenger doorways on vehicle sides shall have clear openings at least 32 inches wide when open.

(2) If doorways connecting adjoining cars in a multi-car train are provided, and if such doorway is connected by an aisle with a minimum clear width of 30 inches to one or more spaces where wheelchair or mobility aid users can be accommodated, then such doorway shall have a minimum clear opening of 30 inches to permit wheelchair and mobility aid users to be evacuated to an adjoining vehicle in an emergency.

(b) *Signage.* The International Symbol of Accessibility shall be displayed on the exterior of accessible vehicles operating on an accessible and rapid rail system unless all vehicles are accessible and are not marked by the access symbol. (See Fig. 6)

(c) *Signals.* Auditory and visual warning signals shall be provided to alert passengers of closing doors.

(d) *Coordination with boarding platform—(1) Requirements.* Where new vehicles will operate in new stations, the design of vehicles shall be coordinated with the boarding platform design such that the horizontal gap between each vehicle door at rest and the platform shall be no greater than 3 inches and the height of the vehicle floor shall be within plus or minus  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch of the

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1192.63

platform height under all normal passenger load conditions. Vertical alignment may be accomplished by vehicle air suspension or other suitable means of meeting the requirement.

(2) *Exception.* New vehicles operating in existing stations may have a floor height within plus or minus 1½ inches of the platform height. At key stations, the horizontal gap between at least one door of each such vehicle and the platform shall be no greater than 3 inches.

(3) *Exception.* Retrofitted vehicles shall be coordinated with the platform in new and key stations such that the horizontal gap shall be no greater than 4 inches and the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, shall be within plus or minus 2 inches of the platform height.

### § 1192.55 Priority seating signs.

(a) Each vehicle shall contain sign(s) which indicate that certain seats are priority seats for persons with disabilities, and that other passengers should make such seats available to those who wish to use them.

(b) Characters on signs required by paragraph (a) of this section shall have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke width-to-height ratio between 1:5 and 1:10, with a minimum character height (using an upper case "X") of ⅝ inch, with "Wide" spacing (generally, the space between letters shall be ⅙ the height of upper case letters), and shall contrast with the background, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

### § 1192.57 Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions.

(a) Handrails and stanchions shall be provided to assist safe boarding, on-board circulation, seating and standing assistance, and alighting by persons with disabilities.

(b) Handrails, stanchions, and seats shall allow a route at least 32 inches wide so that at least two wheelchair or mobility aid users can enter the vehicle and position the wheelchairs or mobility aids in areas, each having a minimum clear space of 48 inches by 30 inches, which do not unduly restrict movement of other passengers. Space to accommodate wheelchairs and mo-

bility aids may be provided within the normal area used by standees and designation of specific spaces is not required. Particular attention shall be given to ensuring maximum maneuverability immediately inside doors. Ample vertical stanchions from ceiling to seat-back rails shall be provided. Vertical stanchions from ceiling to floor shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid user circulation and shall be kept to a minimum in the vicinity of doors.

(c) The diameter or width of the gripping surface of handrails and stanchions shall be 1¼ inches to 1½ inches or provide an equivalent gripping surface and shall provide a minimum 1½ inches knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface.

### § 1192.59 Floor surfaces.

Floor surfaces on aisles, places for standees, and areas where wheelchair and mobility aid users are to be accommodated shall be slip-resistant.

### § 1192.61 Public information system.

(a)(1) *Requirements.* Each vehicle shall be equipped with a public address system permitting transportation system personnel, or recorded or digitized human speech messages, to announce stations and provide other passenger information. Alternative systems or devices which provide equivalent access are also permitted. Each vehicle operating in stations having more than one line or route shall have an external public address system to permit transportation system personnel, or recorded or digitized human speech messages, to announce train, route, or line identification information.

(2) *Exception.* Where station announcement systems provide information on arriving trains, an external train speaker is not required.

(b) [Reserved]

### § 1192.63 Between-car barriers.

(a) *Requirement.* Suitable devices or systems shall be provided to prevent, deter or warn individuals from inadvertently stepping off the platform between cars. Acceptable solutions include, but are not limited to, pantograph gates, chains, motion detectors or similar devices.

## § 1192.71

(b) *Exception.* Between-car barriers are not required where platform screens are provided which close off the platform edge and open only when trains are correctly aligned with the doors.

### Subpart D—Light Rail Vehicles and Systems

#### § 1192.71 General.

(a) New, used and remanufactured light rail vehicles, to be considered accessible by regulations issued by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR part 37, shall comply with this subpart.

(b)(1) Vehicles intended to be operated solely in light rail systems confined entirely to a dedicated right-of-way, and for which all stations or stops are designed and constructed for revenue service after the effective date of standards for design and construction issued pursuant to subpart C of 49 CFR part 37, shall provide level boarding and shall comply with §§ 1192.73(d)(1) and 1192.85.

(2) Vehicles designed for, and operated on, pedestrian malls, city streets, or other areas where level boarding is not practicable shall provide wayside or car-borne lifts, mini-high platforms, or other means of access in compliance with § 1192.83 (b) or (c).

(c) If portions of the vehicle are modified in a way that affects or could affect accessibility, each such portion shall comply, to the extent practicable, with the applicable provisions of this subpart. This provision does not require that inaccessible vehicles be retrofitted with lifts, ramps or other boarding devices.

(d) Existing vehicles retrofitted to comply with the “one-car-per-train rule” at 49 CFR 37.93 shall comply with §§ 1192.75, 1192.77(c), 1192.79(a) and 1192.83(a) and shall have, in new and key stations, at least one door which complies with § 1192.73 (a)(1), (b) and (d). Vehicles previously designed and manufactured in accordance with the accessibility requirements of 49 CFR part 609 or Department of Transportation regulations implementing section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 that were in effect before October 7, 1991, and which can be entered and

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

used from stations in which they are to be operated, may be used to satisfy the requirements of 49 CFR 37.93.

#### § 1192.73 Doorways.

(a) *Clear width.* (1) All passenger doorways on vehicle sides shall have minimum clear openings of 32 inches when open.

(2) If doorways connecting adjoining cars in a multi-car train are provided, and if such doorway is connected by an aisle with a minimum clear width of 30 inches to one or more spaces where wheelchair or mobility aid users can be accommodated, then such doorway shall have a minimum clear opening of 30 inches to permit wheelchair and mobility aid users to be evacuated to an adjoining vehicle in an emergency.

(b) *Signage.* The International Symbol of Accessibility shall be displayed on the exterior of each vehicle operating on an accessible light rail system unless all vehicles are accessible and are not marked by the access symbol (See Fig. 6).

(c) *Signals.* Auditory and visual warning signals shall be provided to alert passengers of closing doors.

(d) *Coordination with boarding platform—(1) Requirements.* The design of level-entry vehicles shall be coordinated with the boarding platform or mini-high platform design so that the horizontal gap between a vehicle at rest and the platform shall be no greater than 3 inches and the height of the vehicle floor shall be within plus or minus  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch of the platform height. Vertical alignment may be accomplished by vehicle air suspension, automatic ramps or lifts, or any combination.

(2) *Exception.* New vehicles operating in existing stations may have a floor height within plus or minus  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches of the platform height. At key stations, the horizontal gap between at least one door of each such vehicle and the platform shall be no greater than 3 inches.

(3) *Exception.* Retrofitted vehicles shall be coordinated with the platform in new and key stations such that the horizontal gap shall be no greater than 4 inches and the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, shall

be within plus or minus 2 inches of the platform height.

(4) *Exception.* Where it is not operationally or structurally practicable to meet the horizontal or vertical requirements of paragraphs (d) (1), (2) or (3) of this section, platform or vehicle devices complying with §1192.83(b) or platform or vehicle mounted ramps or bridge plates complying with §1192.83(c) shall be provided.

**§ 1192.75 Priority seating signs.**

(a) Each vehicle shall contain sign(s) which indicate that certain seats are priority seats for persons with disabilities, and that other passengers should make such seats available to those who wish to use them.

(b) Where designated wheelchair or mobility aid seating locations are provided, signs shall indicate the location and advise other passengers of the need to permit wheelchair and mobility aid users to occupy them.

(c) Characters on signs required by paragraph (a) or (b) of this section shall have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke width-to-height ratio between 1:5 and 1:10, with a minimum character height (using an upper case "X") of  $\frac{5}{16}$  inch, with "wide" spacing (generally, the space between letters shall be  $\frac{1}{16}$  the height of upper case letters), and shall contrast with the background, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

**§ 1192.77 Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions.**

(a) Handrails and stanchions shall be sufficient to permit safe boarding, on-board circulation, seating and standing assistance, and alighting by persons with disabilities.

(b) At entrances equipped with steps, handrails and stanchions shall be provided in the entrance to the vehicle in a configuration which allows passengers to grasp such assists from outside the vehicle while starting to board, and to continue using such handrails or stanchions throughout the boarding process. Handrails shall have a cross-sectional diameter between  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch. Handrails shall be

placed to provide a minimum  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Where on-board fare collection devices are used, a horizontal passenger assist shall be located between boarding passengers and the fare collection device and shall prevent passengers from sustaining injuries on the fare collection device or windshield in the event of a sudden deceleration. Without restricting the vestibule space, the assist shall provide support for a boarding passenger from the door through the boarding procedure. Passengers shall be able to lean against the assist for security while paying fares.

(c) At all doors on level-entry vehicles, and at each entrance accessible by lift, ramp, bridge plate or other suitable means, handrails, stanchions, passenger seats, vehicle driver seat platforms, and fare boxes, if applicable, shall be located so as to allow a route at least 32 inches wide so that at least two wheelchair or mobility aid users can enter the vehicle and position the wheelchairs or mobility aids in areas, each having a minimum clear space of 48 inches by 30 inches, which do not unduly restrict movement of other passengers. Space to accommodate wheelchairs and mobility aids may be provided within the normal area used by standees and designation of specific spaces is not required. Particular attention shall be given to ensuring maximum maneuverability immediately inside doors. Ample vertical stanchions from ceiling to seat-back rails shall be provided. Vertical stanchions from ceiling to floor shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid circulation and shall be kept to a minimum in the vicinity of accessible doors.

**§ 1192.79 Floors, steps and thresholds.**

(a) Floor surfaces on aisles, step treads, places for standees, and areas where wheelchair and mobility aid users are to be accommodated shall be slip-resistant.

(b) All thresholds and step edges shall have a band of color(s) running the full width of the step or threshold which contrasts from the step tread and riser or adjacent floor, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

**§ 1192.81 Lighting.**

(a) Any stepwell or doorway with a lift, ramp or bridge plate immediately adjacent to the driver shall have, when the door is open, at least 2 footcandles of illumination measured on the step tread or lift platform.

(b) Other stepwells, and doorways with lifts, ramps or bridge plates, shall have, at all times, at least 2 footcandles of illumination measured on the step tread or lift or ramp, when deployed at the vehicle floor level.

(c) The doorways of vehicles not operating at lighted station platforms shall have outside lights which provide at least 1 footcandle of illumination on the station platform or street surface for a distance of 3 feet perpendicular to all points on the bottom step tread. Such lights shall be located below window level and shielded to protect the eyes of entering and exiting passengers.

**§ 1192.83 Mobility aid accessibility.**

(a)(1) *General.* All new light rail vehicles, other than level entry vehicles, covered by this subpart shall provide a level-change mechanism or boarding device (e.g., lift, ramp or bridge plate) complying with either paragraph (b) or (c) of this section and sufficient clearances to permit at least two wheelchair or mobility aid users to reach areas, each with a minimum clear floor space of 48 inches by 30 inches, which do not unduly restrict passenger flow. Space to accommodate wheelchairs and mobility aids may be provided within the normal area used by standees and designation of specific spaces is not required.

(2) *Exception.* If lifts, ramps or bridge plates meeting the requirements of this section are provided on station platforms or other stops, or mini-high platforms complying with § 1192.73(d) are provided, at stations or stops required to be accessible by 49 CFR part 37, the vehicle is not required to be equipped with a car-borne device. Where each new vehicle is compatible with a single platform-mounted access system or device, additional systems or devices are not required for each vehicle provided that the single device could be used to provide access to each new vehicle if passengers using wheelchairs or mobil-

ity aids could not be accommodated on a single vehicle.

(b) *Vehicle lift*—(1) *Design load.* The design load of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least six, based on the ultimate strength of the material. Nonworking parts, such as platform, frame, and attachment hardware which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least three, based on the ultimate strength of the material.

(2) *Controls*—(i) *Requirements.* The controls shall be interlocked with the vehicle brakes, propulsion system, or door, or shall provide other appropriate mechanisms or systems, to ensure that the vehicle cannot be moved when the lift is not stowed and so the lift cannot be deployed unless the interlocks or systems are engaged. The lift shall deploy to all levels (i.e., ground, curb, and intermediate positions) normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising, and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.

(ii) *Exception.* Where physical or safety constraints prevent the deployment at some stops of a lift having its long dimension perpendicular to the vehicle axis, the transportation entity may specify a lift which is designed to deploy with its long dimension parallel to the vehicle axis and which pivots into or out of the vehicle while occupied (i.e., “rotary lift”). The requirements of paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section prohibiting the lift from being stowed while occupied shall not apply to a lift design of this type if the stowed position is within the passenger compartment and the lift is intended to be stowed while occupied.

(iii) *Exception.* The brake or propulsion system interlocks requirement does not apply to a station platform mounted lift provided that a mechanical, electrical or other system operates to ensure that vehicles do not move when the lift is in use.

(3) *Emergency operation.* The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when operated according to manufacturer's instructions, and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied, unless the lift is a rotary lift intended to be stowed while occupied.

(4) *Power or equipment failure.* Lift platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, falling, or folding any faster than 12 inches/second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.

(5) *Platform barriers.* The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the lift during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the vehicle until the lift is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform which extends beyond the vehicle in its raised position shall have a barrier a minimum 1½ inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the aisle. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier) which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically rise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the lift is more than 3 inches above the sta-

tion platform or roadway and the lift is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged or disengaged by the lift operator provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.

(6) *Platform surface.* The lift platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over ¼ inch high and shall be slip resistant. The lift platform shall have a minimum clear width of 28½ inches at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the lift platform surface to 30 inches above the surface, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface. (See Fig. 1)

(7) *Platform gaps.* Any openings between the lift platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed ⅝ inch wide. When the lift is at vehicle floor height with the inner barrier (if applicable) down or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and vehicle floor shall not exceed ½ inch horizontally and ⅝ inch vertically. Platforms on semiautomatic lifts may have a hand hold not exceeding 1½ inches by 4½ inches located between the edge barriers.

(8) *Platform entrance ramp.* The entrance ramp, or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp, shall not exceed a slope of 1:8 measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of 3 inches, and the transition from the station platform or roadway to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to ¼ inch. Thresholds between ¼ inch and ½ inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

(9) *Platform deflection.* The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than 3 degrees (exclusive of vehicle roll) in any direction between its unloaded position and its position when loaded with 600 pounds applied through a 26 inch by 26 inch test pallet at the centroid of the lift platform.

(10) *Platform movement.* No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches/second during lowering and

lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches/second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3g.

(11) *Boarding direction.* The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchairs and mobility aids.

(12) *Use by standees.* Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The lift may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.

(13) *Handrails.* Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails, on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. Handrails shall have a cross-sectional diameter between 1¼ inches and 1½ inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than ⅛ inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum 1½ inches knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the vehicle.

(c) *Vehicle ramp or bridge plate—(1) Design load.* Ramps or bridge plates 30 inches or longer shall support a load of 600 pounds, placed at the centroid of the ramp or bridge plate distributed over an area of 26 inches by 26 inches, with a safety factor of at least 3 based on the ultimate strength of the material. Ramps or bridge plates shorter than 30 inches shall support a load of 300 pounds.

(2) *Ramp surface.* The ramp or bridge plate surface shall be continuous and slip resistant, shall not have protrusions from the surface greater than ¼

inch, shall have a clear width of 30 inches, and shall accommodate both four-wheel and three-wheel mobility aids.

(3) *Ramp threshold.* The transition from roadway or station platform and the transition from vehicle floor to the ramp or bridge plate may be vertical without edge treatment up to ¼ inch. Changes in level between ¼ inch and ½ inch shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

(4) *Ramp barriers.* Each side of the ramp or bridge plate shall have barriers at least 2 inches high to prevent mobility aid wheels from slipping off.

(5) *Slope.* Ramps or bridge plates shall have the least slope practicable. If the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 3 inches or less above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:4 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 6 inches or less, but more than 3 inches, above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:6 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 9 inches or less, but more than 6 inches, above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:8 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is greater than 9 inches above the station platform a slope of 1:12 shall be achieved. Folding or telescoping ramps are permitted provided they meet all structural requirements of this section.

(6) *Attachment—(i) Requirement.* When in use for boarding or alighting, the ramp or bridge plate shall be attached to the vehicle, or otherwise prevented from moving such that it is not subject to displacement when loading or unloading a heavy power mobility aid and that any gaps between vehicle and ramp or bridge plate, and station platform and ramp or bridge plate, shall not exceed ⅝ inch.

(ii) *Exception.* Ramps or bridge plates which are attached to, and deployed from, station platforms are permitted in lieu of vehicle devices provided they meet the displacement requirements of paragraph (c)(6)(i) of this section.

(7) *Stowage*. A compartment, securement system, or other appropriate method shall be provided to ensure that stowed ramps or bridge plates, including portable ramps or bridge plates stowed in the passenger area, do not impinge on a passenger's wheelchair or mobility aid or pose any hazard to passengers in the event of a sudden stop.

(8) *Handrails*. If provided, handrails shall allow persons with disabilities to grasp them from outside the vehicle while starting to board, and to continue to use them throughout the boarding process, and shall have the top between 30 inches and 38 inches above the ramp surface. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrail shall have a cross-sectional diameter between 1¼ inches and 1½ inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than ⅛ inch. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the vehicle.

#### § 1192.85 Between-car barriers.

Where vehicles operate in a high-platform, level-boarding mode, devices or systems shall be provided to prevent, deter or warn individuals from inadvertently stepping off the platform between cars. Appropriate devices include, but are not limited to, pantograph gates, chains, motion detectors or other suitable devices.

#### § 1192.87 Public information system.

(a) Each vehicle shall be equipped with an interior public address system permitting transportation system personnel, or recorded or digitized human speech messages, to announce stations and provide other passenger information. Alternative systems or devices which provide equivalent access are also permitted.

(b) [Reserved]

### Subpart E—Commuter Rail Cars and Systems

#### § 1192.91 General.

(a) New, used and remanufactured commuter rail cars, to be considered accessible by regulations issued by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR part 37, shall comply with this subpart.

(b) If portions of the car are modified in such a way that it affects or could affect accessibility, each such portion shall comply, to the extent practicable, with the applicable provisions of this subpart. This provision does not require that inaccessible cars be retrofitted with lifts, ramps or other boarding devices.

(c)(1) Commuter rail cars shall comply with §§ 1192.93(d) and 1192.109 for level boarding wherever structurally and operationally practicable.

(2) Where level boarding is not structurally or operationally practicable, commuter rail cars shall comply with § 1192.95.

(d) Existing vehicles retrofitted to comply with the "one-car-per-train rule" at 49 CFR 37.93 shall comply with §§ 1192.93(e), 1192.95(a) and 1192.107 and shall have, in new and key stations, at least one door on each side from which passengers board which complies with § 1192.93(d). Vehicles previously designed and manufactured in accordance with the program accessibility requirements of section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, or implementing regulations issued by the Department of Transportation that were in effect before October 7, 1991, and which can be entered and used from stations in which they are to be operated, may be used to satisfy the requirements of 49 CFR 37.93.

#### § 1192.93 Doorways.

(a) *Clear width*. (1) At least one door on each side of the car from which passengers board opening onto station platforms and at least one adjacent doorway into the passenger coach compartment, if provided, shall have a minimum clear opening of 32 inches.

(2) If doorways connecting adjoining cars in a multi-car train are provided, and if such doorway is connected by an aisle with a minimum clear width of 30

## § 1192.95

inches to one or more spaces where wheelchair or mobility aid users can be accommodated, then such doorway shall have, to the maximum extent practicable in accordance with the regulations issued under the Federal Railroad Safety Act of 1970 (49 CFR parts 229 and 231), a clear opening of 30 inches.

(b) *Passageways.* A route at least 32 inches wide shall be provided from doors required to be accessible by paragraph (a)(1) of this section to seating locations complying with § 1192.95(d). In cars where such doorways require passage through a vestibule, such vestibule shall have a minimum width of 42 inches. (See Fig. 3)

(c) *Signals.* If doors to the platform close automatically or from a remote location, auditory and visual warning signals shall be provided to alert passengers of closing doors.

(d) *Coordination with boarding platform—(1) Requirements.* Cars operating in stations with high platforms, or mini-high platforms, shall be coordinated with the boarding platform design such that the horizontal gap between a car at rest and the platform shall be no greater than 3 inches and the height of the car floor shall be within plus or minus  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch of the platform height. Vertical alignment may be accomplished by car air suspension, platform lifts or other devices, or any combination.

(2) *Exception.* New vehicles operating in existing stations may have a floor height within plus or minus  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches of the platform height. At key stations, the horizontal gap between at least one accessible door of each such vehicle and the platform shall be no greater than 3 inches.

(3) *Exception.* Where platform setbacks do not allow the horizontal gap or vertical alignment specified in paragraph (d) (1) or (2) of this section, car, platform or portable lifts complying with § 1192.95(b), or car or platform ramps or bridge plates, complying with § 1192.95(c), shall be provided.

(4) *Exception.* Retrofitted vehicles shall be coordinated with the platform in new and key stations such that the horizontal gap shall be no greater than 4 inches and the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, shall

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

be within plus or minus 2 inches of the platform height.

(e) *Signage.* The International Symbol of Accessibility shall be displayed on the exterior of all doors complying with this section unless all cars are accessible and are not marked by the access symbol (See Fig. 6). Appropriate signage shall also indicate which accessible doors are adjacent to an accessible restroom, if applicable.

## § 1192.95 Mobility aid accessibility.

(a)(1) *General.* All new commuter rail cars, other than level entry cars, covered by this subpart shall provide a level-change mechanism or boarding device (e.g., lift, ramp or bridge plate) complying with either paragraph (b) or (c) of this section; sufficient clearances to permit a wheelchair or mobility aid user to reach a seating location; and at least two wheelchair or mobility aid seating locations complying with paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) *Exception.* If portable or platform lifts, ramps or bridge plates meeting the applicable requirements of this section are provided on station platforms or other stops, or mini-high platforms complying with § 1192.93(d) are provided, at stations or stops required to be accessible by 49 CFR part 37, the car is not required to be equipped with a car-borne device. Where each new car is compatible with a single platform-mounted access system or device, additional systems or devices are not required for each car provided that the single device could be used to provide access to each new car if passengers using wheelchairs or mobility aids could not be accommodated on a single car.

(b) *Car Lift—(1) Design load.* The design load of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least six, based on the ultimate strength of the material. Nonworking parts, such as platform, frame, and attachment hardware which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least three, based on the ultimate strength of the material.

(2) *Controls*—(i) *Requirements*. The controls shall be interlocked with the car brakes, propulsion system, or door, or shall provide other appropriate mechanisms or systems, to ensure that the car cannot be moved when the lift is not stowed and so the lift cannot be deployed unless the interlocks or systems are engaged. The lift shall deploy to all platform levels normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising, and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.

(ii) *Exception*. Where physical or safety constraints prevent the deployment at some stops of a lift having its long dimension perpendicular to the car axis, the transportation entity may specify a lift which is designed to deploy with its long dimension parallel to the car axis and which pivots into or out of the car while occupied (i.e., “rotary lift”). The requirements of paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section prohibiting the lift from being stowed while occupied shall not apply to a lift design of this type if the stowed position is within the passenger compartment and the lift is intended to be stowed while occupied.

(iii) *Exception*. The brake or propulsion system interlock requirement does not apply to a platform mounted or portable lift provided that a mechanical, electrical or other system operates to ensure that cars do not move when the lift is in use.

(3) *Emergency operation*. The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground or platform level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when

operated according to manufacturer’s instructions, and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied, unless the lift is a rotary lift intended to be stowed while occupied.

(4) *Power or equipment failure*. Platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, falling, or folding any faster than 12 inches/second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.

(5) *Platform barriers*. The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the lift during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the car until the lift is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform which, in its raised position, extends beyond the car shall have a barrier a minimum 1½ inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the car. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier) which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground or station platform level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically rise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the lift platform is more than 3 inches above the station platform and the lift is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged or disengaged by the lift operator provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.

(6) *Platform surface*. The lift platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over ¼ inch high and shall be slip resistant. The lift platform shall have a minimum clear width of 28½ inches at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the lift platform surface to 30

inches above the surface, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface. (See Fig. 1)

(7) *Platform gaps.* Any openings between the lift platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch wide. When the lift is at car floor height with the inner barrier down (if applicable) or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and car floor shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch horizontally and  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch vertically. Platforms on semi-automatic lifts may have a hand hold not exceeding  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches by  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches located between the edge barriers.

(8) *Platform entrance ramp.* The entrance ramp, or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp, shall not exceed a slope of 1:8, when measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of 3 inches, and the transition from station platform to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch. Thresholds between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

(9) *Platform deflection.* The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than 3 degrees (exclusive of vehicle roll) in any direction between its unloaded position and its position when loaded with 600 pounds applied through a 26 inch by 26 inch test pallet at the centroid of the lift platform.

(10) *Platform movement.* No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches/second during lowering and lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches/second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3g.

(11) *Boarding direction.* The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchairs and mobility aids.

(12) *Use by standees.* Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The lift may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.

(13) *Handrails.* Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails, on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrail shall have a cross-sectional diameter between  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the car.

(c) *Car ramp or bridge plate*—(1) *Design load.* Ramps or bridge plates 30 inches or longer shall support a load of 600 pounds, placed at the centroid of the ramp or bridge plate distributed over an area of 26 inches by 26 inches, with a safety factor of at least 3 based on the ultimate strength of the material. Ramps or bridge plates shorter than 30 inches shall support a load of 300 pounds.

(2) *Ramp surface.* The ramp or bridge plate surface shall be continuous and slip resistant, shall not have protrusions from the surface greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch high, shall have a clear width of 30 inches and shall accommodate both four-wheel and three-wheel mobility aids.

(3) *Ramp threshold.* The transition from station platform to the ramp or bridge plate and the transition from car floor to the ramp or bridge plate may be vertical without edge treatment up to  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch. Changes in level between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

(4) *Ramp barriers.* Each side of the ramp or bridge plate shall have barriers at least 2 inches high to prevent mobility aid wheels from slipping off.

(5) *Slope.* Ramps or bridge plates shall have the least slope practicable. If the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 3 inches or less above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:4 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 6 inches or less, but more than 3 inches, above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:6 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 9 inches or less, but more than 6 inches, above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:8 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is greater than 9 inches above the station platform a slope of 1:12 shall be achieved. Folding or telescoping ramps are permitted provided they meet all structural requirements of this section.

(6) *Attachment—(i) Requirement.* When in use for boarding or alighting, the ramp or bridge plate shall be attached to the vehicle, or otherwise prevented from moving such that it is not subject to displacement when loading or unloading a heavy power mobility aid and that any gaps between vehicle and ramp or bridge plates, and station platform and ramp or bridge plate, shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch.

(ii) *Exception.* Ramps or bridge plates which are attached to, and deployed from, station platforms are permitted in lieu of car devices provided they meet the displacement requirements of paragraph (c)(6)(i) of this section.

(7) *Stowage.* A compartment, securement system, or other appropriate method shall be provided to ensure that stowed ramps or bridge plates, including portable ramps or bridge plates stowed in the passenger area, do not impinge on a passenger's wheelchair or mobility aid or pose any hazard to passengers in the event of a sudden stop.

(8) *Handrails.* If provided, handrails shall allow persons with disabilities to grasp them from outside the car while starting to board, and to continue to use them throughout the boarding process, and shall have the top between 30 inches and 38 inches above the ramp surface. The handrails shall be capable

of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrail shall have a cross-sectional diameter between  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the car.

(d) *Mobility aid seating location.* Spaces for persons who wish to remain in their wheelchairs or mobility aids shall have a minimum clear floor space 48 inches by 30 inches. Such spaces shall adjoin, and may overlap, an accessible path. Not more than 6 inches of the required clear floor space may be accommodated for footrests under another seat provided there is a minimum of 9 inches from the floor to the lowest part of the seat overhanging the space. Seating spaces may have fold-down or removable seats to accommodate other passengers when a wheelchair or mobility aid user is not occupying the area, provided the seats, when folded up, do not obstruct the clear floor space required. (See Fig. 2)

#### § 1192.97 Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions.

(a) Where provided, handrails or stanchions within the passenger compartment shall be placed to permit sufficient turning and maneuvering space for wheelchairs and other mobility aids to reach a seating location, complying with § 1192.95(d), from an accessible entrance. The diameter or width of the gripping surface of interior handrails and stanchions shall be  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches or shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface.

(b) Where provided, handrails or stanchions shall be sufficient to permit safe boarding, on-board circulation, seating and standing assistance, and alighting by persons with disabilities.

(c) At entrances equipped with steps, handrails or stanchions shall be provided in the entrance to the car in a configuration which allows passengers

## § 1192.99

to grasp such assists from outside the car while starting to board, and to continue using such assists throughout the boarding process, to the extent permitted by 49 CFR part 231.

### § 1192.99 Floors, steps and thresholds.

(a) Floor surfaces on aisles, step treads, places for standees, and areas where wheelchair and mobility aid users are to be accommodated shall be slip-resistant.

(b) All thresholds and step edges shall have a band of color(s) running the full width of the step or threshold which contrasts from the step tread and riser or adjacent floor, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

### § 1192.101 Lighting.

(a) Any stepwell or doorway with a lift, ramp or bridge plate shall have, when the door is open, at least 2 foot-candles of illumination measured on the step tread, ramp, bridge plate, or lift platform.

(b) The doorways of cars not operating at lighted station platforms shall have outside lights which, when the door is open, provide at least 1 foot-candle of illumination on the station platform surface for a distance of 3 feet perpendicular to all points on the bottom step tread edge. Such lights shall be shielded to protect the eyes of entering and exiting passengers.

### § 1192.103 Public information system.

(a) Each car shall be equipped with an interior public address system permitting transportation system personnel, or recorded or digitized human speech messages, to announce stations and provide other passenger information. Alternative systems or devices which provide equivalent access are also permitted.

(b) [Reserved]

### § 1192.105 Priority seating signs.

(a) Each car shall contain sign(s) which indicate that certain seats are priority seats for persons with disabilities and that other passengers should make such seats available to those who wish to use them.

(b) Characters on signs required by paragraph (a) shall have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and a

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

stroke width-to-height ratio between 1:5 and 1:10, with a minimum character height (using an upper case “X”) of  $\frac{5}{16}$  inch, with “wide” spacing (generally, the space between letters shall be  $\frac{1}{16}$  the height of upper case letters), and shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

### § 1192.107 Restrooms.

(a) If a restroom is provided for the general public, it shall be designed so as to allow a person using a wheelchair or mobility aid to enter and use such restroom as specified in paragraphs (a) (1) through (5) of this section.

(1) The minimum clear floor area shall be 35 inches by 60 inches. Permanently installed fixtures may overlap this area a maximum of 6 inches, if the lowest portion of the fixture is a minimum of 9 inches above the floor, and may overlap a maximum of 19 inches, if the lowest portion of the fixture is a minimum of 29 inches above the floor, provided such fixtures do not interfere with access to the water closet. Fold-down or retractable seats or shelves may overlap the clear floor space at a lower height provided they can be easily folded up or moved out of the way.

(2) The height of the water closet shall be 17 inches to 19 inches measured to the top of the toilet seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

(3) A grab bar at least 24 inches long shall be mounted behind the water closet, and a horizontal grab bar at least 40 inches long shall be mounted on at least one side wall, with one end not more than 12 inches from the back wall, at a height between 33 inches and 36 inches above the floor.

(4) Faucets and flush controls shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Controls for flush valves shall be mounted no more than 44 inches above the floor.

(5) Doorways on the end of the enclosure, opposite the water closet, shall have a minimum clear opening width of 32 inches. Doorways on the side wall shall have a minimum clear opening width of 39 inches. Door latches and hardware shall be operable with one

hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist.

(b) Restrooms required to be accessible shall be in close proximity to at least one seating location for persons using mobility aids and shall be connected to such a space by an unobstructed path having a minimum width of 32 inches.

#### § 1192.109 Between-car barriers.

Where vehicles operate in a high-platform, level-boarding mode, and where between-car bellows are not provided, devices or systems shall be provided to prevent, deter or warn individuals from inadvertently stepping off the platform between cars. Appropriate devices include, but are not limited to, pantograph gates, chains, motion detectors or other suitable devices.

### Subpart F—Intercity Rail Cars and Systems

#### § 1192.111 General.

(a) New, used and remanufactured intercity rail cars, to be considered accessible by regulations issued by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR part 37, shall comply with this subpart to the extent required for each type of car as specified below.

(1) Single-level rail passenger coaches and food service cars (other than single-level dining cars) shall comply with §§ 1192.113 through 1192.123. Compliance with § 1192.125 shall be required only to the extent necessary to meet the requirements of paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Single-level dining and lounge cars shall have at least one connecting doorway complying with § 1192.113(a)(2), connected to a car accessible to persons using wheelchairs or mobility aids, and at least one space complying with § 1192.125(d) (2) and (3), to provide table service to a person who wishes to remain in his or her wheelchair, and space to fold and store a wheelchair for a person who wishes to transfer to an existing seat.

(3) Bi-level dining cars shall comply with §§ 1192.113(a)(2), 1192.115(b), 1192.117(a), and 1192.121.

(4) Bi-level lounge cars shall have doors on the lower level, on each side of the car from which passengers board,

complying with § 1192.113, a restroom complying with § 1192.123, and at least one space complying with § 1192.125(d) (2) and (3) to provide table service to a person who wishes to remain in his or her wheelchair and space to fold and store a wheelchair for a person who wishes to transfer to an existing seat.

(5) Restrooms complying with § 1192.123 shall be provided in single-level rail passenger coaches and food service cars adjacent to the accessible seating locations required by paragraph (d) of this section. Accessible restrooms are required in dining and lounge cars only if restrooms are provided for other passengers.

(6) Sleeper cars shall comply with §§ 1192.113 (b) through (d), 1192.115 through 1192.121, and 1192.125, and have at least one compartment which can be entered and used by a person using a wheelchair or mobility aid and complying with § 1192.127.

(b)(1) If physically and operationally practicable, intercity rail cars shall comply with § 1192.113(d) for level boarding.

(2) Where level boarding is not structurally or operationally practicable, intercity rail cars shall comply with § 1192.125.

(c) If portions of the car are modified in a way that affects or could affect accessibility, each such portion shall comply, to the extent practicable, with the applicable provisions of this subpart. This provision does not require that inaccessible cars be retrofitted with lifts, ramps or other boarding devices.

(d) Passenger coaches or food service cars shall have the number of spaces complying with § 1192.125(d)(2) and the number of spaces complying with § 1192.125(d)(3), as required by 49 CFR 37.91.

(e) Existing cars retrofitted to meet the seating requirements of 49 CFR 37.91 shall comply with §§ 1192.113(e), 1192.123, 1192.125(d) and shall have at least one door on each side from which passengers board complying with § 1192.113(d). Existing cars designed and manufactured to be accessible in accordance with Department of Transportation regulations implementing section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of

## § 1192.113

1973 that were in effect before October 7, 1991, shall comply with § 1192.125(a).

### § 1192.113 Doorways.

(a) *Clear width.* (1) At least one doorway, on each side of the car from which passengers board, of each car required to be accessible by § 1192.111(a) and where the spaces required by § 1192.111(d) are located, and at least one adjacent doorway into coach passenger compartments shall have a minimum clear opening width of 32 inches.

(2) Doorways at ends of cars connecting two adjacent cars, to the maximum extent practicable in accordance with regulations issued under the Federal Railroad Safety Act of 1970 (49 CFR parts 229 and 231), shall have a clear opening width of 32 inches to permit wheelchair and mobility aid users to enter into a single-level dining car, if available.

(b) *Passaway.* Doorways required to be accessible by paragraph (a) of this section shall permit access by persons using mobility aids and shall have an unobstructed passageway at least 32 inches wide leading to an accessible sleeping compartment complying with § 1192.127 or seating locations complying with § 1192.125(d). In cars where such doorways require passage through a vestibule, such vestibule shall have a minimum width of 42 inches. (see Fig. 4)

(c) *Signals.* If doors to the platform close automatically or from a remote location, auditory and visual warning signals shall be provided to alert passengers of closing doors.

(d) *Coordination with boarding platforms—(1) Requirements.* Cars which provide level-boarding in stations with high platforms shall be coordinated with the boarding platform or mini-high platform design such that the horizontal gap between a car at rest and the platform shall be no greater than 3 inches and the height of the car floor shall be within plus or minus  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch of the platform height. Vertical alignment may be accomplished by car air suspension, platform lifts or other devices, or any combination.

(2) *Exception.* New cars operating in existing stations may have a floor height within plus or minus  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches of the platform height.

## 36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)

(3) *Exception.* Where platform setbacks do not allow the horizontal gap or vertical alignment specified in paragraph (d) (1) or (2) of this section, platform or portable lifts complying with § 1192.125(b), or car or platform bridge plates, complying with § 1192.125(c), may be provided.

(4) *Exception.* Retrofitted vehicles shall be coordinated with the platform in existing stations such that the horizontal gap shall be no greater than 4 inches and the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, shall be within plus or minus 2 inches of the platform height.

(e) *Signage.* The International Symbol of Accessibility shall be displayed on the exterior of all doors complying with this section unless all cars and doors are accessible and are not marked by the access symbol (see Fig. 6). Appropriate signage shall also indicate which accessible doors are adjacent to an accessible restroom, if applicable.

### § 1192.115 Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions.

(a) Where provided, handrails or stanchions within the passenger compartment shall be placed to permit sufficient turning and maneuvering space for wheelchairs and other mobility aids to reach a seating location, complying with § 1192.125(d), from an accessible entrance. The diameter or width of the gripping surface of interior handrails and stanchions shall be  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches or shall provide an equivalent gripping surface. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface.

(b) Where provided, handrails and stanchions shall be sufficient to permit safe boarding, on-board circulation, seating and standing assistance, and alighting by persons with disabilities.

(c) At entrances equipped with steps, handrails or stanchions shall be provided in the entrance to the car in a configuration which allows passengers to grasp such assists from outside the car while starting to board, and to continue using such assists throughout the boarding process, to the extent permitted by 49 CFR part 231.

**§ 1192.117 Floors, steps and thresholds.**

(a) Floor surfaces on aisles, step treads and areas where wheelchair and mobility aid users are to be accommodated shall be slip-resistant.

(b) All step edges and thresholds shall have a band of color(s) running the full width of the step or threshold which contrasts from the step tread and riser or adjacent floor, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

**§ 1192.119 Lighting.**

(a) Any stepwell, or doorway with a lift, ramp or bridge plate, shall have, when the door is open, at least 2 foot-candles of illumination measured on the step tread, ramp, bridge plate or lift platform.

(b) The doorways of cars not operating at lighted station platforms shall have outside lights which, when the door is open, provide at least 1 foot-candle of illumination on the station platform surface for a distance of 3 feet perpendicular to all points on the bottom step tread edge. Such lights shall be shielded to protect the eyes of entering and exiting passengers.

**§ 1192.121 Public information system.**

(a) Each car shall be equipped with a public address system permitting transportation system personnel, or recorded or digitized human speech messages, to announce stations and provide other passenger information. Alternative systems or devices which provide equivalent access are also permitted.

(b) [Reserved]

**§ 1192.123 Restrooms.**

(a) If a restroom is provided for the general public, and an accessible restroom is required by § 1192.111 (a) and (e), it shall be designed so as to allow a person using a wheelchair or mobility aid to enter and use such restroom as specified in paragraphs (a) (1) through (5) of this section.

(1) The minimum clear floor area shall be 35 inches by 60 inches. Permanently installed fixtures may overlap this area a maximum of 6 inches, if the lowest portion of the fixture is a minimum of 9 inches above the floor, and may overlap a maximum of 19 inches, if

the lowest portion of the fixture is a minimum of 29 inches above the floor. Fixtures shall not interfere with access to and use of the water closet. Fold-down or retractable seats or shelves may overlap the clear floor space at a lower height provided they can be easily folded up or moved out of the way.

(2) The height of the water closet shall be 17 inches to 19 inches measured to the top of the toilet seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

(3) A grab bar at least 24 inches long shall be mounted behind the water closet, and a horizontal grab bar at least 40 inches long shall be mounted on at least one side wall, with one end not more than 12 inches from the back wall, at a height between 33 inches and 36 inches above the floor.

(4) Faucets and flush controls shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 lbf (22.2 N). Controls for flush valves shall be mounted no more than 44 inches above the floor.

(5) Doorways on the end of the enclosure, opposite the water closet, shall have a minimum clear opening width of 32 inches. Doorways on the side wall shall have a minimum clear opening width of 39 inches. Door latches and hardware shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist.

(b) Restrooms required to be accessible shall be in close proximity to at least one seating location for persons using mobility aids complying with § 1192.125(d) and shall be connected to such a space by an unobstructed path having a minimum width of 32 inches.

**§ 1192.125 Mobility aid accessibility.**

(a)(1) *General.* All intercity rail cars, other than level entry cars, required to be accessible by § 1192.111 (a) and (e) of this subpart shall provide a level-change mechanism or boarding device (e.g., lift, ramp or bridge plate) complying with either paragraph (b) or (c) of this section and sufficient clearances to permit a wheelchair or other mobility aid user to reach a seating location complying with paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) *Exception.* If portable or platform lifts, ramps or bridge plates meeting the applicable requirements of this section are provided on station platforms or other stops, or mini-high platforms complying with § 1192.113(d) are provided, at stations or stops required to be accessible by 49 CFR part 37, the car is not required to be equipped with a car-borne device.

(b) *Car Lift*—(1) *Design load.* The design load of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least six, based on the ultimate strength of the material. Nonworking parts, such as platform, frame, and attachment hardware which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least three, based on the ultimate strength of the material.

(2) *Controls*—(i) *Requirements.* The controls shall be interlocked with the car brakes, propulsion system, or door, or shall provide other appropriate mechanisms or systems, to ensure that the car cannot be moved when the lift is not stowed and so the lift cannot be deployed unless the interlocks or systems are engaged. The lift shall deploy to all platform levels normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising, and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.

(ii) *Exception.* Where physical or safety constraints prevent the deployment at some stops of a lift having its long dimension perpendicular to the car axis, the transportation entity may specify a lift which is designed to deploy with its long dimension parallel to the car axis and which pivots into or out of the car while occupied (i.e., “rotary lift”). The requirements of para-

graph (b)(2)(i) of this section prohibiting the lift from being stowed while occupied shall not apply to a lift design of this type if the stowed position is within the passenger compartment and the lift is intended to be stowed while occupied.

(iii) *Exception.* The brake or propulsion system interlocks requirement does not apply to platform mounted or portable lifts provided that a mechanical, electrical or other system operates to ensure that cars do not move when the lift is in use.

(3) *Emergency operation.* The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground or station platform level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when operated according to manufacturer’s instructions, and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied, unless the lift is a rotary lift and is intended to be stowed while occupied.

(4) *Power or equipment failure.* Platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, failing, or folding any faster than 12 inches/second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.

(5) *Platform barriers.* The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the lift during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the car until the lift is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform which, in its raised position, extends beyond the car shall have a barrier a minimum 1½ inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the car. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier) which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground or station platform level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system

shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically rise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the lift platform is more than 3 inches above the station platform and the lift is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged or disengaged by the lift operator provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.

(6) *Platform surface.* The lift platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch high and shall be slip resistant. The lift platform shall have a minimum clear width of  $28\frac{1}{2}$  inches at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the lift platform surface to 30 inches above the surface, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface. (See Fig. 1.)

(7) *Platform gaps.* Any openings between the lift platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch wide. When the lift is at car floor height with the inner barrier (if applicable) down or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and car floor shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch horizontally and  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch vertically. Platforms on semi-automatic lifts may have a hand hold not exceeding  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches by  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches located between the edge barriers.

(8) *Platform entrance ramp.* The entrance ramp, or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp, shall not exceed a slope of 1:8, when measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of 3 inches, and the transition from station platform to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch. Thresholds between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

(9) *Platform deflection.* The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than 3 degrees (exclusive of car roll) in any direction between its unloaded position and its

position when loaded with 600 pounds applied through a 26 inch by 26 inch test pallet at the centroid of the lift platform.

(10) *Platform movement.* No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches/second during lowering and lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches/second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3g.

(11) *Boarding direction.* The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchairs and mobility aids.

(12) *Use by standees.* Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The lift may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.

(13) *Handrails.* Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails, on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift, and which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrail shall have a cross-sectional diameter between  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the car.

(c) *Car ramp or bridge plate*—(1) *Design load.* Ramps or bridge plates 30 inches or longer shall support a load of 600 pounds, placed at the centroid of the ramp or bridge plate distributed over an area of 26 inches by 26 inches, with a safety factor of at least 3 based on

the ultimate strength of the material. Ramps or bridge plates shorter than 30 inches shall support a load of 300 pounds.

(2) *Ramp surface.* The ramp or bridge plate surface shall be continuous and slip resistant, shall not have protrusions from the surface greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch high, shall have a clear width of 30 inches and shall accommodate both four-wheel and three-wheel mobility aids.

(3) *Ramp threshold.* The transition from station platform to the ramp or bridge plate and the transition from car floor to the ramp or bridge plate may be vertical without edge treatment up to  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch. Changes in level between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

(4) *Ramp barriers.* Each side of the ramp or bridge plate shall have barriers at least 2 inches high to prevent mobility aid wheels from slipping off.

(5) *Slope.* Ramps or bridge plates shall have the least slope practicable. If the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 3 inches or less above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:4 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 6 inches or less, but more than 3 inches, above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:6 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is 9 inches or less, but more than 6 inches, above the station platform a maximum slope of 1:8 is permitted; if the height of the vehicle floor, under 50% passenger load, from which the ramp is deployed is greater than 9 inches above the station platform a slope of 1:12 shall be achieved. Folding or telescoping ramps are permitted provided they meet all structural requirements of this section.

(6) *Attachment—(i) Requirement.* When in use for boarding or alighting, the ramp or bridge plate shall be attached to the vehicle, or otherwise prevented from moving such that it is not subject to displacement when loading or unloading a heavy power mobility aid and that any gaps between vehicle and ramp or bridge plate, and station plat-

form and ramp or bridge plate, shall not exceed  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch.

(ii) *Exception.* Ramps or bridge plates which are attached to, and deployed from, station platforms are permitted in lieu of car devices provided they meet the displacement requirements of paragraph (c)(6)(i) of this section.

(7) *Stowage.* A compartment, securement system, or other appropriate method shall be provided to ensure that stowed ramps or bridge plates, including portable ramps or bridge plates stowed in the passenger area, do not impinge on a passenger's wheelchair or mobility aid or pose any hazard to passengers in the event of a sudden stop.

(8) *Handrails.* If provided, handrails shall allow persons with disabilities to grasp them from outside the car while starting to board, and to continue to use them throughout the boarding process, and shall have the top between 30 inches and 38 inches above the ramp surface. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrail shall have a cross-sectional diameter between  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the car.

(d) *Seating—(1) Requirements.* All intercity rail cars required to be accessible by § 1192.111 (a) and (e) of this subpart shall provide at least one, but not more than two, mobility aid seating location(s) complying with paragraph (d)(2) of this section; and at least one, but not more than two, seating location(s) complying with paragraph (d)(3) of this section which adjoin or overlap an accessible route with a minimum clear width of 32 inches.

(2) *Wheelchair or mobility aid spaces.* Spaces for persons who wish to remain in their wheelchairs or mobility aids shall have a minimum clear floor area 48 inches by 30 inches. Such space may have fold-down or removable seats for use when not occupied by a wheelchair or mobility aid user. (See Fig. 2)

## Architectural and Transp. Barriers Compliance Board

## § 1192.175

(3) *Other spaces.* Spaces for individuals who wish to transfer shall include a regular coach seat or dining car booth or table seat and space to fold and store the passenger's wheelchair.

### § 1192.127 Sleeping compartments.

(a) Sleeping compartments required to be accessible shall be designed so as to allow a person using a wheelchair or mobility aid to enter, maneuver within and approach and use each element within such compartment. (See Fig. 5.)

(b) Each accessible compartment shall contain a restroom complying with § 1192.123(a) which can be entered directly from such compartment.

(c) Controls and operating mechanisms (e.g., heating and air conditioning controls, lighting controls, call buttons, electrical outlets, etc.) shall be mounted no more than 48 inches, and no less than 15 inches, above the floor and shall have a clear floor area directly in front a minimum of 30 inches by 48 inches. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist.

## Subpart G [Reserved]

## Subpart H—Other Vehicles and Systems

### § 1192.171 General.

(a) New, used and remanufactured vehicles and conveyances for systems not covered by other subparts of this part, to be considered accessible by regulations issued by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR part 37, shall comply with this subpart.

(b) If portions of the vehicle or conveyance are modified in a way that affects or could affect accessibility, each such portion shall comply, to the extent practicable, with the applicable provisions of this subpart. This provision does not require that inaccessible vehicles be retrofitted with lifts, ramps or other boarding devices.

(c) Requirements for vehicles and systems not covered by this part shall be determined on a case-by-case basis by the Department of Transportation in consultation with the U.S. Architec-

tural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (Access Board).

### § 1192.173 Automated guideway transit vehicles and systems.

(a) Automated Guideway Transit (AGT) vehicles and systems, sometimes called "people movers", operated in airports and other areas where AGT vehicles travel at slow speed, shall comply with the provisions of §§ 1192.53 (a) through (c), and 1192.55 through 1192.61 for rapid rail vehicles and systems.

(b) Where the vehicle covered by paragraph (a) of this section will operate in an accessible station, the design of vehicles shall be coordinated with the boarding platform design such that the horizontal gap between a vehicle door at rest and the platform shall be no greater than 1 inch and the height of the vehicle floor shall be within plus or minus ½ inch of the platform height under all normal passenger load conditions. Vertical alignment may be accomplished by vehicle air suspension or other suitable means of meeting the requirement.

(c) In stations where open platforms are not protected by platform screens, a suitable device or system shall be provided to prevent, deter or warn individuals from stepping off the platform between cars. Acceptable devices include, but are not limited to, pantograph gates, chains, motion detectors or other appropriate devices.

(d) Light rail and rapid rail AGT vehicles and systems shall comply with subparts D and C of this part, respectively.

### § 1192.175 High-speed rail cars, mono-rails and systems.

(a) All cars for high-speed rail systems, including but not limited to those using "maglev" or high speed steel-wheel-on-steel-rail technology, and monorail systems operating primarily on dedicated rail (i.e., not used by freight trains) or guideway, in which stations are constructed in accordance with subpart C of 49 CFR part 37, shall be designed for high-platform, level boarding and shall comply with § 1192.111(a) for each type of car which is similar to intercity rail, §§ 1192.111(d), 1192.113 (a) through (c) and (e), 1192.115 (a) and (b), 1192.117 (a)

**§ 1192.177**

and (b), 1192.121 through 1192.123, 1192.125(d), and 1192.127 (if applicable). The design of cars shall be coordinated with the boarding platform design such that the horizontal gap between a car door at rest and the platform shall be no greater than 3 inches and the height of the car floor shall be within plus or minus  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch of the platform height under all normal passenger load conditions. Vertical alignment may be accomplished by car air suspension or other suitable means of meeting the requirement. All doorways shall have, when the door is open, at least 2 foot-candles of illumination measured on the door threshold.

(b) All other high-speed rail cars shall comply with the similar provisions of subpart F of this part.

**§ 1192.177 Ferries, excursion boats and other vessels. [Reserved]**

**§ 1192.179 Trams, similar vehicles and systems.**

(a) New and used trams consisting of a tractor unit, with or without pas-

**36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)**

senger accommodations, and one or more passenger trailer units, including but not limited to vehicles providing shuttle service to remote parking areas, between hotels and other public accommodations, and between and within amusement parks and other recreation areas, shall comply with this section. For purposes of determining applicability of 49 CFR 37.101, 37.103, or 37.105, the capacity of such a vehicle or “train” shall consist of the total combined seating capacity of all units, plus the driver, prior to any modification for accessibility.

(b) Each tractor unit which accommodates passengers and each trailer unit shall comply with §§ 1192.25 and 1192.29. In addition, each such unit shall comply with § 1192.23 (b) or (c) and shall provide at least one space for wheelchair or mobility aid users complying with § 1192.23(d) unless the complete operating unit consisting of tractor and one or more trailers can already accommodate at least two wheelchair or mobility aid users.

FIGURES TO PART 1192

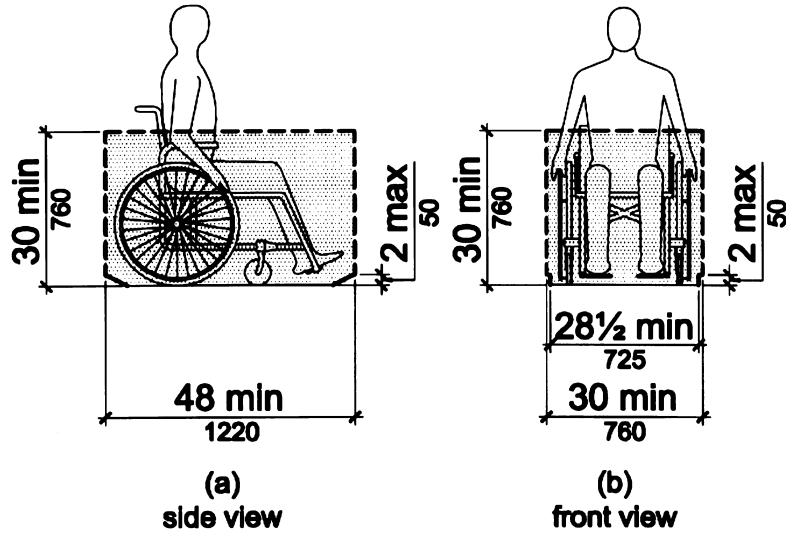


**Figure 1**  
**Wheelchair or Mobility Aid Envelope**

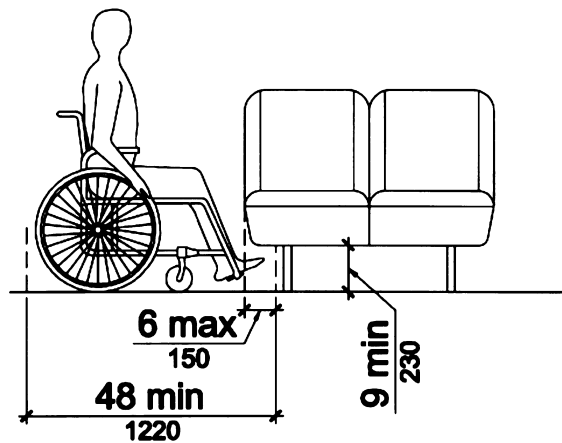


**Figure 2**  
**Toe Clearance Under a Fixed Element**

[63 FR 51701, 51702, Sept. 28, 1998]

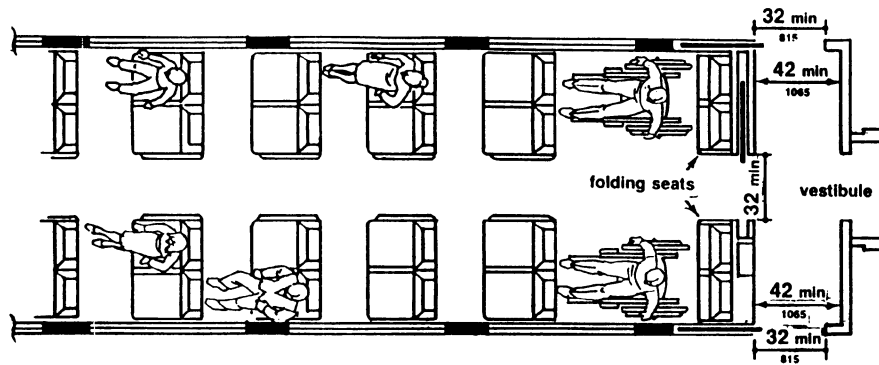


Fig. 3  
Commuter Rail Car (without restrooms)

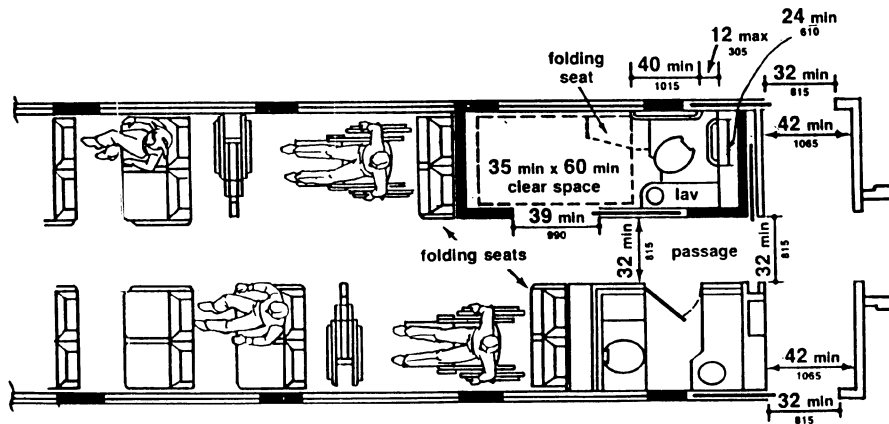


Fig. 4  
Intercity Rail Car (with accessible restroom)

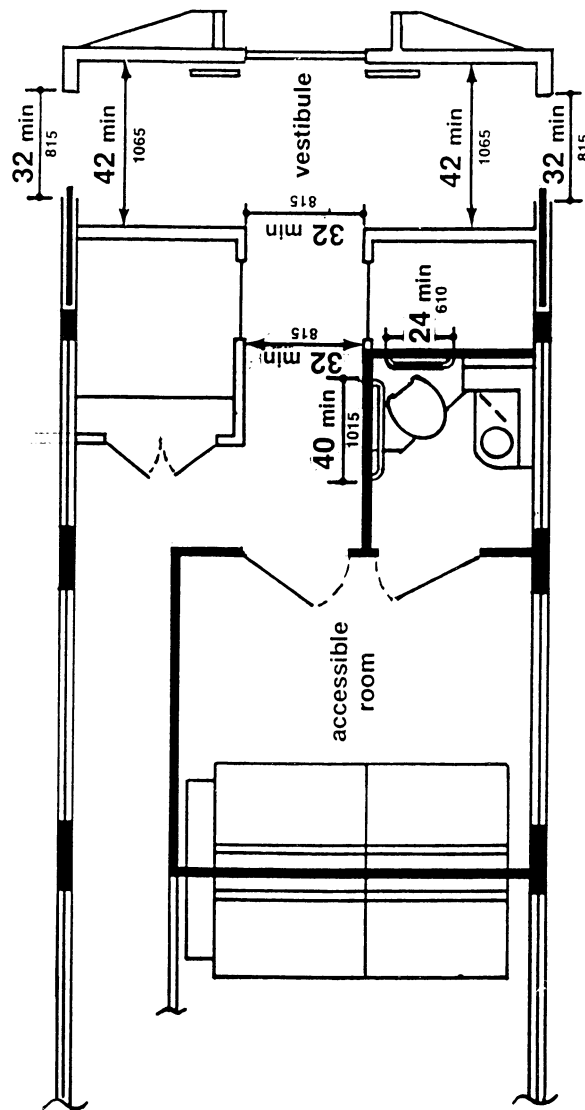
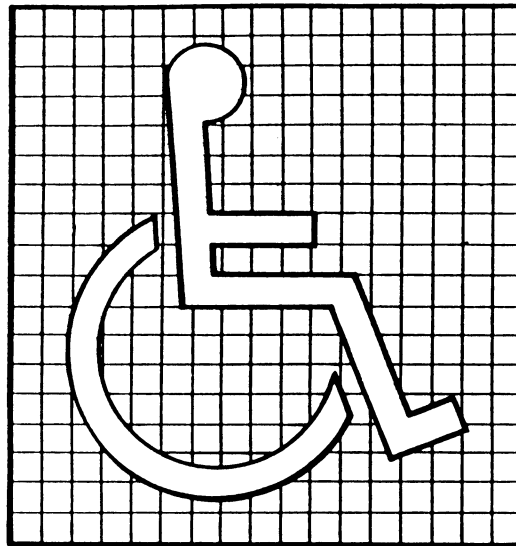


Fig. 5  
Intercity Rail Car (with accessible sleeping compartment)



(a)  
Proportions



(b)  
Display Conditions

**Fig. 6**  
**International Symbol of Accessibility**

APPENDIX A TO PART 1192—ACCESSIBILITY GUIDELINES FOR BUSES, OVER-THE-ROAD BUSES, AND VANS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

- T101 Purpose
- T102 Conventions
- T103 Definitions

CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

- T201 General
- T202 Accessible Means of Boarding and Alighting
- T203 Steps

- T204 Doorways
- T205 Illumination
- T206 Handrails, Stanchions, and Handholds
- T207 Circulation Paths
- T208 Passenger Access Routes
- T209 Fare Collection Devices
- T210 Wheelchair Spaces
- T211 Wheelchair Securement Systems
- T212 Seat Belts and Shoulder Belts
- T213 Seats
- T214 Operable Parts
- T215 Communication Features

CHAPTER 3: BUILDING BLOCKS

- T301 General
- T302 Walking Surfaces

T303 Handrails, Stanchions, and Handholds  
T304 Operable Parts

CHAPTER 4: BOARDING AND ALIGHTING

T401 General  
T402 Ramps and Bridgeplates  
T403 Lifts  
T404 Level Boarding and Alighting  
T405 Steps

CHAPTER 5: DOORWAYS, PASSENGER ACCESS  
ROUTES, AND FARE COLLECTION DEVICES

T501 General  
T502 Doorways  
T503 Illumination  
T504 Passenger Access Routes  
T505 Fare Collection Devices

CHAPTER 6: WHEELCHAIR SPACES AND  
SECUREMENT SYSTEMS

T601 General  
T602 Wheelchair Spaces  
T603 Wheelchair Securement Systems  
T604 Stowage  
T605 Seat Belts and Shoulder Belts

CHAPTER 7: COMMUNICATION FEATURES

T701 General  
T702 Signs  
T703 International Symbol of Accessibility  
T704 Announcement Systems

CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

*T101 Purpose*

T101.1 Purpose. These Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines, which consist of Chapters 1 through 7, contain scoping and technical requirements for new, used or remanufactured non-rail vehicles to ensure their accessibility to, and usability by, individuals with disabilities. The Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines apply to the extent required by regulations issued by the Department of Transportation under the Americans with Disabilities Act, as amended (42 U.S.C. 12101 *et seq.*).

*T102 Conventions*

T102.1 Calculation of Percentages. Where the determination of the required size or dimension of an element involves ratios or percentages, rounding down for values less than one half shall be permitted.

T102.2 Units of Measurement. Measurements are stated in U.S. and metric customary units. The values stated in each system (U.S. and metric customary units) may not be exact equivalents, and each system shall be used independently of the other.

T102.3 Vehicle Length. The length of non-rail vehicles shall be measured from standard bumper to standard bumper.

*T103 Definitions*

T103.1 Terms Defined in Referenced Standards. Terms defined in referenced

standards and not defined in T103.4 shall have the meaning as defined in the referenced standards.

T103.2 Undefined Terms. Terms not specifically defined in T103.4 or in regulations issued by the Department of Transportation (49 CFR part 37) shall be given their ordinarily accepted meaning in the sense that the context implies.

T103.3 Interchangeability. Words, terms, and phrases used in the singular include the plural; and words, terms, and phrases used in the plural include the singular.

T103.4 Defined Terms. For the purpose of the Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines, the following terms have the indicated meaning.

*Boarding platform.* A platform in a level boarding bus system raised above standard curb height in order to align vertically with the transit vehicle entry for level boarding and alighting.

*Fixed route service (or fixed route).* Operation of a non-rail vehicle along a prescribed route according to a fixed schedule.

*Large transit entity.* A provider of public transportation that is required to report to the National Transportation Database (49 U.S.C. 5335), and that, for any given calendar year, reports to such database the operation of 100 or more buses in annual maximum service for all fixed-route service bus modes collectively, through either direct operation or purchased transportation.

*Large non-rail vehicle.* Non-rail vehicles that are more than 25 feet (7.6 m) in length.

*Level boarding bus system.* A system in which buses operate where some or all of the designated stops have boarding platforms and the design of boarding platforms and non-rail vehicles are coordinated to provide boarding having little or no change in level between the vehicle floor and the boarding platform.

*Non-rail vehicle.* A self-propelled, rubber-tired vehicle used to provide transportation services and intended for use on city streets, highways, or busways that constitutes either a bus, over-the-road bus, or van.

*Operable part.* A component of a device or system used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate, adjust, or connect to the device or system. Operable parts include, but are not limited to, buttons, levers, knobs, smart card targets, coin and card slots, pull-cords, jacks, data ports, electrical outlets, and touchscreens.

*Small non-rail vehicle.* Non-rail vehicles that are equal to or less than 25 feet (7.6 m) in length.

*Surface discontinuities.* Differences in level between two adjacent surfaces. Elevation changes due to ramps or stairs do not, themselves, constitute surface discontinuities. However, abrupt changes in level on the walking surface of ramps or stairs are surface discontinuities.

## CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

*T201 Scope*

T201.1 General. Non-rail vehicles purchased, leased or remanufactured by entities covered by the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) shall comply with the requirements in the Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines to the extent required by regulations issued by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR Part 37.

T201.2 Reduction in Access Prohibited. No modifications to a non-rail vehicle shall be taken that decrease, or have the effect of decreasing, the net accessibility or usability of the vehicle below the requirements of the Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines.

*T202 Accessible Means of Boarding and Alighting*

T202.1 General. Non-rail vehicles shall provide at least one means of accessible boarding and alighting that serves each designated stop on the fixed route to which the vehicle is assigned. Non-rail vehicles shall also provide at least one means of accessible boarding and alighting that can be deployed to the roadway. Provision of accessible boarding and alighting shall be made through one or more of the following methods: ramps or bridgeplates complying with T402, lifts complying with T403, or a means of level boarding and alighting complying with T404.

*T203 Steps*

T203.1 General. Steps on non-rail vehicles shall comply with T405.

*T204 Doorways*

T204.1 General. Doorways on non-rail vehicles shall comply with T204.

T204.2 Doorways with Lifts, Ramps or Bridgeplates. Doorways with lifts or ramps shall comply with T502.2.

T204.3 Doorways with Level Boarding and Alighting. Doorways with level boarding and alighting shall comply with T502.3.

T204.4 Doorways with Steps on Over-the-Road Buses. On over-the-road-buses, doorways with steps shall comply with T502.4.

*T205 Illumination*

T205.1 General. Non-rail vehicles shall provide illumination complying with T503 at ramps, bridgeplates, doorways, and boarding and alighting areas.

*T206 Circulation Paths*

T206.1 General. Circulation paths in non-rail vehicles shall comply with T302.

*T207 Handrails, Stanchions, and Handholds*

T207.1 General. Non-rail vehicles shall provide handrails, stanchions, and handholds

in accordance with T207. Handrails, stanchions, and handholds shall comply with T303.

T207.2 Passenger Doorways. Handrails or stanchions shall be provided at passenger doorways in a configuration that permits grasping and use from outside the non-rail vehicle and throughout the boarding and alighting process.

T207.3 Fare Collection Devices. Handrails shall be provided at fare collection devices and shall be configured so that they can be used for support when at the fare collection device.

T207.4 Circulation Paths. Handrails, stanchions, and handholds shall be provided along circulation paths in accordance with T207.4.

T207.4.1. Small vehicles. Handrails, stanchions, or handholds shall be provided within small non-rail vehicles in a configuration that permits onboard circulation and assistance with seating and standing.

T207.4.2. Large vehicles. Handholds or stanchions shall be provided within large non-rail vehicles on all forward- and rear-facing seat backs located directly adjacent to the aisle.

*Exception:* Where high-back seats are provided, handrails located overhead or on overhead luggage racks shall be permitted instead of stanchions or handholds.

*T208 Passenger Access Routes*

T208.1 General. Non-rail vehicles shall provide passenger access routes that permit boarding and alighting, onboard circulation, and seating by passengers with disabilities. A passenger access route shall consist of a route complying with T208.2 between wheelchair spaces and doorways, walking surfaces complying with T302, and clearances complying with T504.

T208.2 Connection to Doorways. A passenger access route shall connect each wheelchair space to doorways that provide a means of accessible boarding and alighting in accordance with T208.2.

T208.2.1 Doorways on One Side of vehicle. Where non-rail vehicles have doorways on one side, a passenger access route shall connect each wheelchair space to a doorway that provides a means of accessible boarding and alighting in accordance with T202.

T208.2.2 Doorways on Two Sides of vehicle. Where non-rail vehicles have doorways on two sides, a passenger access route shall connect each wheelchair space to doorways on both sides of the vehicle that provide a means of accessible boarding and alighting in accordance with T202.

T208.2.3 Deployment to Roadway. A passenger access route shall connect each wheelchair space to a doorway providing a means of accessible boarding and alighting that can be deployed to the roadway in accordance with T202.

*T209 Fare Collection Devices*

T209.1 General. Where non-rail vehicles provide onboard fare collection devices, at least one fare collection device shall serve a passenger access route and comply with T505.

*T210 Wheelchair Spaces*

T210.1 General. Non-rail vehicles shall provide wheelchair spaces in accordance with T210.

T210.2 Large non-rail vehicles. Large non-rail vehicles shall provide at least two wheelchair spaces complying with T602.

T210.3 Small non-rail vehicles. Small non-rail vehicles shall provide at least one wheelchair space complying with T602.

T210.4 Location. Wheelchair spaces shall be located as near as practicable to doorways that provide a means of accessible boarding and alighting.

*T211 Wheelchair Securement Systems*

T211.1 General. Non-rail vehicles shall provide wheelchair securement systems complying with T603 at each wheelchair space.

*T212 Seat Belts and Shoulder Belts*

T212.1 General. Non-rail vehicles shall provide seat belts and shoulder belts complying with T605 at each wheelchair space.

*T213 Seats*

T213.1 General. Seats on non-rail vehicles shall comply with T213.

T213.2 Priority Seats. Non-rail vehicles operated in fixed-route service shall designate at least two seats as priority seats for passengers with disabilities. Priority seats shall be located as near as practicable to a doorway used for boarding and alighting. Where non-rail vehicles provide both aisle-facing and forward-facing seats, at least one of the priority seats shall be a forward-facing seat.

T213.3 Armrests at Aisle Seats on Over-the-Road Buses. Where armrests are provided on the aisle side of seats on over-the-road buses, folding or removable armrests shall be provided on the aisle side of at least 50 percent of aisle seats. Priority seats and moveable or removable seats permitted by T602.4.1 at wheelchair spaces shall be included among the fifty percent of seats with folding or removable armrests.

*T214 Operable Parts*

T214.1 General. Where provided for passenger use, operable parts at wheelchair spaces and priority seats, stop request systems, and fare collection devices serving passenger access routes shall comply with T304.

*T215 Communication Features*

T215.1 General. Communication features on non-rail vehicles shall comply with T215.

T215.2 Signs. Signs shall comply with 215.2.

T215.2.1 Priority Seats. Priority seats shall be identified by signs informing other passengers to make the seats available for persons with disabilities. Signs at priority seats shall comply with T702.

T215.2.2 Wheelchair Spaces. Wheelchair spaces shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with T703.

T215.2.3 Doorways. Doorways that provide a means of accessible boarding and alighting shall be identified on the exterior of the non-rail vehicle by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with T703.

T215.2.4 Destination and Route Signs. Where destination or route signs are provided on the exterior of non-rail vehicles, such signs shall be located at a minimum on the front and boarding sides of the vehicle. The signs shall be illuminated and comply with T702.

T215.3. Public Address and Stop Request Systems. Large non-rail vehicles that operate in fixed route service with multiple designated stops shall provide public address and stop request systems in accordance with T215.3.

T215.3.1 Public Address Systems. Public address systems shall be provided within non-rail vehicles to announce stops and other passenger information.

T215.3.2 Stop Request Systems. Where non-rail vehicles stop on passenger request, stop request systems complying with T704.3 shall be provided.

T215.4 Automated Announcement Systems. Large non-rail vehicles operated in fixed route service with multiple designated stops by large transit entities shall provide automated stop announcement systems and automated route identification systems in accordance with T215.4.

T215.4.1 Automated Stop Announcement Systems. Automated stop announcement systems shall comply with T704.3.1.

T215.4.2 Automated Route Identification Systems. Automated route identification systems shall comply with T704.3.2.

**CHAPTER 3: BUILDING BLOCKS**

*T301 General*

T301.1 Scope. The requirements in Chapter 3 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines.

*T302 Walking Surfaces*

T302.1 General. Walking surfaces in non-rail vehicles shall comply with T302.

*Exception:* Walking surfaces on lifts shall not be required to comply with T302.

T302.2 Slip Resistant. Walking surfaces shall be slip resistant.

T302.3 Openings. Openings in walking surfaces shall not allow the passage of a sphere more than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (16 mm) in diameter. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel.

*Exceptions:* 1. Wheelchair securement system components affixed to walking surfaces shall be permitted to have openings  $\frac{7}{8}$  inch (22 mm) maximum in width provided that, where such openings are more than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (16 mm) in width, they contrast visually with the rest of the walking surface either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

2. Ramp and bridgeplate surfaces shall be permitted to have one opening  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) maximum in width and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (115 mm) maximum in length to allow the operator to grasp the ramp or bridgeplate for manual operation.

T302.4 Surface Discontinuities. Surface discontinuities shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) high maximum and shall be beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.

*Exceptions:* 1. Surface discontinuities  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) high maximum shall not be required to be beveled.

2. Steps complying with T405 shall be permitted on walking surfaces that are not part of a passenger access route.

#### *T303 Handrails, Stanchions, and Handholds*

T303.1 General. Handrails, stanchions, and handholds in non-rail vehicles shall comply with T303.

T303.2 Edges. Edges shall be rounded or eased.

T303.3 Cross Section. Gripping surfaces shall have a cross section complying with T303.3.

T303.3.1 Seat-Back Handhold Cross Section. The cross section of seat-back handholds shall have an outside diameter of  $\frac{7}{8}$  inches (22 mm) minimum and 2 inches (50 mm) maximum.

T303.3.2 Handrail and Stanchion Circular Cross Section. Handrails and stanchions with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (50 mm) maximum.

T303.3.3 Handrail and Stanchion Non-Circular Cross Section. Handrails and stanchions with a non-circular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and  $6\frac{3}{4}$  inches (160 mm) maximum, and a cross section dimension of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches (57 mm) maximum.

T303.4 Clearance. Clearance between gripping surfaces and adjacent surfaces shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum.

#### *T304 Operable Parts*

T304.1 General. Operable parts in non-rail vehicles shall comply with T304.

T304.2 Height. Operable parts shall be located 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor of non-rail vehicles.

T304.3 Location. Operable parts provided at a wheelchair space shall be located adjacent to the wheelchair space 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear of the wheelchair space measured horizontally.

T304.4 Operation. Operable parts shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5 lbf (22.2 N) maximum.

### CHAPTER 4: BOARDING AND ALIGHTING

#### *T401 General*

T401.1 Scope. The requirements in Chapter 4 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines.

#### *T402 Ramps and Bridgeplates*

T402.1 General. Ramps and bridgeplates shall comply with T402. Ramps and bridgeplates shall be permitted to fold or telescope.

T402.2 Design Load. Ramps and bridgeplates 30 inches (760 mm) or more in length shall be designed to support a load of 600 pounds (273 kg) minimum, placed at the centroid of the ramp distributed over an area of 26 inches by 26 inches. The design load of ramps and bridgeplates less than 30 inches (760 mm) in length shall be 300 pounds (136 kg) minimum. The factor of safety for ramps and bridgeplates shall be 3 or more, based on the ultimate strength of the material.

T402.3 Installation and Operation. When used for boarding and alighting, ramps and bridgeplates shall be firmly attached to the non-rail vehicle to prevent displacement. Ramps and bridgeplates provided on large non-rail vehicles shall be permanently installed and power operated.

*Exception:* Ramps and bridgeplates on large non-rail vehicles that serve only designated stops with boarding platforms providing level boarding and alighting shall not be required to be permanently attached and power operated provided that portable ramps or bridgeplates capable of deployment to the roadway are carried onboard.

T402.4 Emergency Operation. Power-operated ramps and bridgeplates shall be capable of manual operation in the event of a power failure.

T402.5 Surfaces. Ramp and bridgeplate surface material shall comply with T302 and extend across the full width and length of the ramp or bridgeplate.

T402.6 Clear Width. The clear width of ramps and bridgeplates shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum.

T402.7 Edge Guards. Ramps and bridgeplates shall provide edge guards continuously along each side of the ramp or bridgeplate to within 3 inches (75 mm) of the end of the ramp or bridgeplate that is deployed furthest from the non-rail vehicle. Edge guards shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high minimum above the ramp or bridgeplate surface.

T402.8 Running Slope. The maximum running slope of ramps and bridgeplates shall comply with T402.8.1 or T402.8.2.

T402.8.1 Deployment to Roadways or to Curb Height Boarding and Alighting Areas. The running slope of ramps and bridgeplates used for deployment to the roadway or to curb-height boarding and alighting areas shall be 1:6 maximum, as measured to ground level with the non-rail vehicle resting on a flat surface.

T402.8.2 Deployment to Boarding Platforms. The running slope of ramps and bridgeplates used for deployment to platforms shall be 1:8 maximum, as measured to the boarding platform with the non-rail vehicle resting on a flat surface.

T402.9 Transitions. Vertical surface discontinuities at transitions from boarding and alighting areas to ramps and bridgeplates shall comply with T302.4.

T402.10 Visual Contrast. The perimeter of the walking surface on ramps and bridgeplates shall be marked by a stripe. The stripe shall be 1 inch (25 mm) wide minimum and shall contrast visually with the rest of the walking surface either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

T402.11 Gaps. When ramps or bridgeplates are deployed for boarding and alighting, gaps between the ramp or bridgeplate surface and floor of non-rail vehicles shall not permit passage of a sphere more than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (16 mm) in diameter.

T402.12 Stowage. Where portable ramps and bridgeplates are permitted, a compartment, securement system, or other storage method shall be provided within the non-rail vehicle to stow such ramps and bridgeplates when not in use.

#### *T403 Lifts*

T403.1 General. Lifts shall comply with T403 and the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration's Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) for public use lifts at 49 CFR 571.403 and 571.404.

T403.2 Boarding Direction. Lift platforms shall be designed to permit passengers who use wheelchairs the option to board the platforms facing either toward or away from the non-rail vehicle.

#### *T404 Level Boarding and Alighting*

T404.1 General. Boarding and alighting at boarding platforms in level boarding bus systems shall comply with T404.

T404.2 Vehicle Floor and Boarding Platform Coordination. The design of non-rail vehicles shall be coordinated with the boarding platforms to minimize the gap between the vehicle floor and the boarding platforms.

T404.3 Ramps and Bridgeplates. Where the space between the floor of non-rail vehicles and a boarding platform is greater than 2 inches (51 mm) horizontally or  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (16 mm) vertically when measured at 50 percent passenger load with the vehicle at rest, non-rail vehicles shall provide ramps or bridgeplates complying with T402.

#### *T405 Steps*

T405.1 General. Steps shall comply with T405.

T405.2 Surfaces. Step tread surfaces shall comply with T302.

T405.3 Visual Contrast. The outer edge of step treads shall be marked by a stripe. The stripe shall be 1 inch (25 mm) wide minimum and shall contrast visually with the rest of the step tread or circulation path surface either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

### CHAPTER 5: DOORWAYS, CIRCULATION PATHS AND FARE COLLECTION DEVICES

#### *T501 General*

T501.1 Scope. The requirements in Chapter 5 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines.

#### *T502 Doorways*

T502.1 General. Doorways in non-rail vehicles shall comply with T502.

T502.2 Doorways with Lifts, Ramps or Bridgeplates. The vertical clearance at doorways with lifts, ramps or bridgeplates shall comply with T502.2. Vertical clearance shall be measured from the inside finished edge of the door opening to the highest point of the deployed lift, ramp or bridgeplate below.

T502.2.1 Over-the-Road Buses. For over-the-road buses, the vertical clearance at doorways shall be 65 inches (1650 mm) minimum.

T502.2.2 Other Vehicles. For other non-rail vehicles, the vertical clearance at doorways shall be 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum on small non-rail vehicles and 68 inches (1725 mm) on large non-rail vehicles.

T502.3 Doorways with Level Boarding. Doorways on non-rail vehicles designed for level boarding bus systems shall comply with T502.3.

T502.3.1 Clear Width. Doorways shall provide a clear opening of 32 inches (810 mm) minimum.

**T502.3.2 Thresholds.** Thresholds at doorways shall be marked by a stripe. The stripe shall be 1 inch (25 mm) wide minimum and contrast with the rest of the walking surface either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

**T502.4 Doorways with Steps on Over-the-Road Buses.** On over-the-road buses, doorways with steps shall provide an opening with a clear width of 30 inches (760 mm) minimum.

*Exceptions:* 1. The door opening clear width above a height of 48 inches (1220 mm) measured from the lowest step tread shall be permitted to taper so as to reduce in width to 18 inches (457 mm) minimum.

2. Where compliance with T502.4 is not structurally feasible, the door opening clear width shall be permitted to be 27 in (685 mm) minimum.

3. Hinges and other door mechanisms shall be permitted to protrude 4 inches (100 mm) maximum into the door opening clear width at or below 48 inches (1220 mm) in height measured from the lowest step tread.

#### *T503 Illumination*

**T503.1 General.** Illumination shall be provided at ramps, bridgeplates, doorways, and boarding and alighting areas in accordance with T503. Lights shall be shielded so as not to project directly into the eyes of entering and exiting passengers.

**T503.2 Ramps and Bridgeplates.** When ramps or bridgeplates are deployed, the walking surface shall be lighted with 2 foot-candles (22 lux) minimum of illumination.

**T503.3 Steps at Front Doorways.** The walking surface on steps serving the front doorway of non-rail vehicles shall be lighted with 2 foot-candles (22 lux) minimum of illumination when the vehicle doors are open.

**T503.4 Steps at Other Doorways.** The walking surface on steps serving all other non-rail vehicle doorways shall be lighted at all times with 2 foot-candles (22 lux) minimum of illumination.

**T503.5 Exterior Illumination for Boarding and Alighting Areas.** Exterior lighting shall be provided to illuminate walking surfaces of boarding and alighting areas when the doors of non-rail vehicles are open. Where doorways have steps, the illumination shall be 1 foot-candle (11 lux) minimum for a distance of 3 feet (915 mm) measured beyond the outside edge of the doorway or bottom step tread. Where doorways have ramps, bridgeplates or lifts, the illumination shall be 1 foot-candle (11 lux) minimum for a distance of 3 feet (915 mm) measured beyond the edge of the ramp, bridgeplate or lift farthest from the non-rail vehicle.

#### *T504 Passenger Access Routes*

**T504.1 General.** Passenger access routes shall provide clearances that are sufficient to permit passengers using wheelchairs to

move between wheelchair spaces and doorways that provide accessible boarding and alighting, and to enter and exit wheelchair spaces.

#### *T505 Fare Collection Devices*

**T505.1 General.** Fare collection devices in non-rail vehicles shall comply with T505.

**T505.2 Location.** Fare collection devices shall be located so as not to interfere with wheelchair movement along passenger access routes.

**T505.3 Location of Operable Parts.** Operable parts shall be located so that they are reachable by passengers using wheelchair when parked in a clear space 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum. Operable parts shall be located adjacent to the toe end of the clear space or shall be located no more than 10 inches (255 mm) measured from the centerline of the long dimension of the clear space.

### CHAPTER 6: WHEELCHAIR SPACES AND SECUREMENT SYSTEMS

#### *T601 General*

**T601.1 Scope.** The requirements in Chapter 6 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines.

#### *T602 Wheelchair Spaces*

**T602.1 General.** Wheelchair spaces in non-rail vehicles shall comply with T602.

**T602.2 Surfaces.** Wheelchair space surfaces shall comply with T302.

**T602.3 Approach.** One full unobstructed side of each wheelchair space shall adjoin or overlap a passenger access route.

**T602.4 Size.** Wheelchair spaces shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length.

*Exception:* The portion of the wheelchair space occupied by wheelchair footrests shall be permitted to be located beneath another seat provided that space beneath the seat is 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum, 9 inches (230 mm) high minimum, and 6 inches (150 mm) deep minimum.

**T602.5 Fold-Down or Removable Seats.** Fold-down or removable seats shall be permitted in wheelchair spaces, provided that, when folded up or stowed, they do not obstruct the minimum size of the wheelchair space specified in T602.4.

#### *T603 Wheelchair Securement Systems*

**T603.1 General.** Wheelchair securement systems in non-rail vehicles, including attachments, shall comply with T603.

**T603.2 Orientation.** Wheelchair securement systems shall secure the wheelchair so that the occupant faces the front of the non-rail vehicle.

*Exception:* On large non-rail vehicles designed for use by both seated and standing passengers, rear-facing wheelchair securement systems shall be permitted provided that at least one wheelchair securement system is front facing.

**T603.3 Design Load.** Wheelchair securement systems shall comply with the design loads specified in T603.3.1 or T603.3.2, as applicable.

**T603.3.1 Non-Rail Vehicles with Gross Vehicle Weight Rating Equal to or Greater than 30,000 lbs.** On non-rail vehicles with a gross vehicle weight rating equal to or greater than 30,000 pounds (13,608 kg), wheelchair securement systems shall restrain a force in the forward longitudinal direction of 2,000 lbf (8,900 N) minimum for each wheelchair.

**T603.3.2 Non-Rail Vehicles with Gross Vehicle Weight Rating Less than 30,000 lbs.** On non-rail vehicles with a gross vehicle weight rating less than 30,000 pounds (13,608 kg), wheelchair securement systems shall restrain a force in the forward longitudinal direction of 5,000 lbf (22,000 N) minimum for each wheelchair.

**T603.4 Movement.** Wheelchair securement systems shall limit the movement of an occupied wheelchair to 2 inches (51 mm) maximum in any direction when secured in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and when the non-rail vehicle is operating in normal conditions.

**T603.5 Securement Systems for Rear-Facing Wheelchair Positions.** Rear-facing wheelchair securement systems shall provide forward excursion barriers and padded head rests that comply with ISO 10865-1:2012(E). Wheelchair containment and occupant retention systems for accessible transport vehicles designed for use by both sitting and standing passengers—Part 1: Systems for rearward facing wheelchair-seated passengers, First Edition, June 5, 2012 [ISO Standard 10865-1:2012(E)]. ISO Standard 10865-1:2012(E) is incorporated by reference into this section with the approval of the Director of the Federal Register under 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. To enforce any edition other than that specified in this section, a notice of change must be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and the material must be made available to the public. All approved material is available for inspection at the U.S. Access Board, 1331 F Street NW., Suite 1000, Washington, DC 20004-1111, (202) 272-0080 (voice), (202) 272-0082 (TTY) and is available

from the International Organization for Standardization, ISO Central Secretariat, 1, ch. de la Voie-Creuse, CP 56, CH-1211, Geneva 20, Switzerland (<http://www.iso.org/iso/home/store.htm>). It is also available for inspection at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call (202) 741-6030, or go to [http://www.archives.gov/federal\\_register/code\\_of\\_federal\\_regulations/ibr\\_locations.html](http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html).

#### *T604 Stowage*

**T604.1 General.** When wheelchair securement systems are not in use, the systems shall not protrude into the wheelchair space except as provided in T603.5, and shall not interfere with passenger movement or pose a hazard. Wheelchair securement systems shall be reasonably protected from vandalism, and shall be readily accessed then needed for use.

#### *T605 Seat Belts and Shoulder Belts*

**T605.1 General.** Seat belts and shoulder belts provided for passengers who use wheelchairs shall comply with 49 CFR 571.209. Seat belts and shoulder belts shall not be used in place of wheelchair securement systems complying with T603.

### CHAPTER 7: COMMUNICATION FEATURES

#### *T701 General*

**T701.1 Scope.** The requirements in Chapter 7 shall apply where required by Chapter 2 or where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Non-Rail Vehicle Guidelines.

#### *T702 Signs*

**T702.1 General.** Signs on non-rail vehicles shall comply with T702.

**T702.2 Character Style.** Characters shall be displayed in sans serif fonts and shall not use italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or other unusual forms.

**T702.3 Character Proportions.** Characters shall use fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".

**T702.4 Character Height.** Character height shall comply with Table T702.4. Character height shall be based on the uppercase letter "I".

TABLE T702.4—CHARACTER HEIGHT

| Sign location                                                                                                                                                              | Minimum character height |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Exterior route or destination signs on boarding side of non-rail vehicle .....                                                                                             | 2 inches (51 mm).        |
| Exterior route or destination signs on front of non-rail vehicle .....                                                                                                     | 4 inches (100 mm).       |
| Interior signs designating wheelchair spaces or priority seats, where baseline of character is equal to or less than 70 inches (1780 mm) above the non-rail vehicle floor. | 5/8 inch (16 mm).        |

TABLE T702.4—CHARACTER HEIGHT—Continued

| Sign location                                                                                                                                                                                     | Minimum character height |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Interior signs designating wheelchair spaces, priority seats, stop announcements, or stop requests where baseline of character is more than 70 inches (1780 mm) above the non-rail vehicle floor. | 2 inches (51 mm).        |

T702.5 **Stroke Thickness.** Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter “I” shall be 10 percent minimum and 30 percent maximum of the height of the character.

T702.6 **Character Spacing.** Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual characters shall be 10 percent minimum and 35 percent maximum of character height.

T702.7 **Line Spacing.** Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the character height.

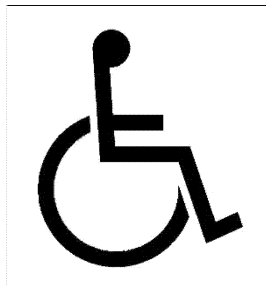
T702.8 **Contrast.** Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark

characters on a light background. Where provided, protective surfaces over signs shall have a non-glare finish.

#### *T703 International Symbol of Accessibility*

T703.1 **General.** The International Symbol of Accessibility shall comply with Figure T703.1. The symbol shall have a background field height of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum. The symbol and its background shall have a non-glare finish. The symbol shall contrast with its background with either a light symbol on a dark background or a dark symbol on a light background.

Figure T703.1 International Symbol of Accessibility



#### *T704 Announcement Systems*

T704.1 **General.** Non-rail vehicles shall provide announcement systems in accordance with T704.

T704.2 **Stop Request Systems.** Stop request systems shall comply with T704.3.

T704.2.1 **Audible and visible notification.** Audible and visible notification shall be provided onboard indicating when passengers have requested to disembark at the next stop on the fixed route. Audible notifications shall be verbal or non-verbal signals and sound only once for each stop. Visible components of stop request systems shall include signs complying with T702, lights, or other visually perceptible indicators. Visible components shall illuminate or activate with a stop request, be viewable onboard from all wheelchair spaces and priority seats for passengers with disabilities, and extinguish

when the doors open at a stop on non-rail vehicles.

T704.2.2 **Operation.** A mechanism for requesting stops shall be located at each wheelchair space and priority seat for passengers with disabilities. Operable parts on stop request systems shall comply with T304.

T704.3 **Automated Announcement Systems.** Automated systems for stop announcements and route identification announcements shall comply with T704.3.

T704.3.1 **Automated Stop Announcements.** Automated stop announcement systems shall provide audible and visible notification of upcoming stops on fixed routes. Stop announcements shall use synthesized, recorded or digitized speech and be audible within non-rail vehicles. Visible components of stop

announcements shall consist of signs complying with T702. Signs shall be viewable on-board from all wheelchair spaces and priority seats for passengers with disabilities.

**T704.3.2 Automated Route Identification Announcements.** Automated route identification systems shall audibly and visibly identify the fixed route on which the non-rail vehicle is operating. Audible route identification announcements shall be broadcast externally at boarding and alighting areas using synthesized, recorded or digitized speech. Signs displaying route identification information shall be provided on the front and boarding sides of non-rail vehicles. Signs shall comply with T702.

## **PART 1194—INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY STANDARDS AND GUIDELINES**

Sec.

1194.1 Standards for Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act.

1194.2 Guidelines for Section 255 of the Communications Act.

APPENDIX A TO PART 1194—SECTION 508 OF THE REHABILITATION ACT: APPLICATION AND SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

APPENDIX B TO PART 1194—SECTION 255 OF THE COMMUNICATIONS ACT: APPLICATION AND SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

APPENDIX C TO PART 1194—FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA AND TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS

APPENDIX D TO PART 1194—ELECTRONIC AND INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS AS ORIGINALLY PUBLISHED ON DECEMBER 21, 2000

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 794d, 47 U.S.C. 255.

SOURCE: 65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000, unless otherwise noted.

### **§ 1194.1 Standards for Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act.**

The standards for information and communication technology developed, procured, maintained, or used by Federal agencies covered by Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act are set forth in Appendices A, C and D to this part.

[82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

### **§ 1194.2 Guidelines for Section 255 of the Communications Act.**

The guidelines for telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment covered by Section 255 of the Communications Act are set

forth in Appendices B and C to this part.

[82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

## **APPENDIX A TO PART 1194—SECTION 508 OF THE REHABILITATION ACT: APPLICATION AND SCOPING REQUIREMENTS**

### **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

#### **508 CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION**

E101 General  
E102 Referenced Standards  
E103 Definitions

#### **508 CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS**

E201 Application  
E202 General Exceptions  
E203 Access to Functionality  
E204 Functional Performance Criteria  
E205 Electric Content  
E206 Hardware  
E207 Software  
E208 Support Documentation and Services

#### **508 CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION**

##### **E101 GENERAL**

**E101.1 Purpose.** These Revised 508 Standards, which consist of 508 Chapters 1 and 2 (Appendix A), along with Chapters 3 through 7 (Appendix C), contain scoping and technical requirements for information and communication technology (ICT) to ensure accessibility and usability by individuals with disabilities. Compliance with these standards is mandatory for Federal agencies subject to Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. 794d).

**E101.2 Equivalent Facilitation.** The use of an alternative design or technology that results in substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability by individuals with disabilities than would be provided by conformance to one or more of the requirements in Chapters 4 and 5 of the Revised 508 Standards is permitted. The functional performance criteria in Chapter 3 shall be used to determine whether substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability is provided to individuals with disabilities.

**E101.3 Conventional Industry Tolerances.** Dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances except where dimensions are stated as a range with specific minimum or maximum end points.

**E101.4 Units of Measurement.** Measurements are stated in metric and U.S. customary units. The values stated in each system (metric and U.S. customary units) may not be exact equivalents, and each system shall be used independently of the other.

## E102 REFERENCED STANDARDS

E102.1 *Application.* The specific editions of the standards listed in Chapter 7 are incorporated by reference into 508 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements) and Chapters 3 through 6 to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where conflicts occur between the Revised 508 Standards and the referenced standards, these Revised 508 Standards apply.

## E103 DEFINITIONS

E103.1 *Terms Defined in Referenced Standards.* Terms defined in referenced standards and not defined in E103.4 shall have the meaning as defined in the referenced standards.

E103.2 *Undefined Terms.* Any term not defined in E103.4 or in referenced standards shall be given its ordinarily accepted meaning in the sense that the context implies.

E103.3 *Interchangeability.* Words, terms, and phrases used in the singular include the plural and those used in the plural include the singular.

E103.4 *Defined Terms.* For the purpose of the Revised 508 Standards, the terms defined in E103.4 have the indicated meaning.

*Agency.* Any agency or department of the United States as defined in 44 U.S.C. 3502, and the United States Postal Service.

*Alteration.* A change to *existing ICT* that affects interoperability, the user interface, or access to information or data.

*Application.* Software designed to perform, or to help the user to perform, a specific task or tasks.

*Assistive Technology (AT).* Any item, piece of equipment, or product system, whether acquired commercially, modified, or customized, that is used to increase, maintain, or improve functional capabilities of individuals with disabilities.

*Audio Description.* Narration added to the soundtrack to describe important visual details that cannot be understood from the main soundtrack alone. Audio description is a means to inform individuals who are blind or who have low vision about visual content essential for comprehension. Audio description of video provides information about actions, characters, scene changes, on-screen text, and other visual content. Audio description supplements the regular audio track of a program. Audio description is usually added during existing pauses in dialogue. Audio description is also called “video description” and “descriptive narration”.

*Authoring Tool.* Any software, or collection of software components, that can be used by authors, alone or collaboratively, to create or modify content for use by others, including other authors.

*Closed Functionality.* Characteristics that limit functionality or prevent a user from attaching or installing assistive technology.

Examples of ICT with closed functionality are self-service machines, information kiosks, set-top boxes, fax machines, calculators, and computers that are locked down so that users may not adjust settings due to a policy such as Desktop Core Configuration.

*Content.* Electronic information and data, as well as the encoding that defines its structure, presentation, and interactions.

*Document.* Logically distinct assembly of content (such as a file, set of files, or streamed media) that: Functions as a single entity rather than a collection; is not part of software; and does not include its own software to retrieve and present content for users. Examples of documents include, but are not limited to, letters, email messages, spreadsheets, presentations, podcasts, images, and movies.

*Existing ICT.* ICT that has been procured, maintained or used on or before January 18, 2018.

*Hardware.* A tangible device, equipment, or physical component of ICT, such as telephones, computers, multifunction copy machines, and keyboards.

*Information Technology.* Shall have the same meaning as the term “information technology” set forth in 40 U.S.C. 11101(6).

*Information and Communication Technology (ICT).* Information technology and other equipment, systems, technologies, or processes, for which the principal function is the creation, manipulation, storage, display, receipt, or transmission of electronic data and information, as well as any associated content. Examples of ICT include, but are not limited to: Computers and peripheral equipment; information kiosks and transaction machines; telecommunications equipment; customer premises equipment; multifunction office machines; software; applications; Web sites; videos; and, electronic documents.

*Keyboard.* A set of systematically arranged alphanumeric keys or a control that generates alphanumeric input by which a machine or device is operated. A keyboard includes tactilely discernible keys used in conjunction with the alphanumeric keys if their function maps to keys on the keyboard interfaces.

*Label.* Text, or a component with a text alternative, that is presented to a user to identify content. A label is presented to all users, whereas a name may be hidden and only exposed by assistive technology. In many cases, the name and the label are the same.

*Menu.* A set of selectable options.

*Name.* Text by which software can identify a component to the user. A name may be hidden and only exposed by assistive technology, whereas a label is presented to all users. In many cases, the label and the name are the same. Name is unrelated to the name attribute in HTML.

*Non-Web Document.* A document that is not: A Web page, embedded in a Web page, or

used in the rendering or functioning of Web pages.

*Non-Web Software.* Software that is not: A Web page, not embedded in a Web page, and not used in the rendering or functioning of Web pages.

*Operable Part.* Hardware-based user controls for activating, deactivating, or adjusting ICT.

*Platform Accessibility Services.* Services provided by a platform enabling interoperability with assistive technology. Examples are Application Programming Interfaces (API) and the Document Object Model (DOM).

*Platform Software.* Software that interacts with hardware or provides services for other software. Platform software may run or host other software, and may isolate them from underlying software or hardware layers. A single software component may have both platform and non-platform aspects. Examples of platforms are: Desktop operating systems; embedded operating systems, including mobile systems; Web browsers; plug-ins to Web browsers that render a particular media or format; and sets of components that allow other applications to execute, such as applications which support macros or scripting.

*Programmatically Determinable.* Ability to be determined by software from author-supplied data that is provided in a way that different user agents, including assistive technologies, can extract and present the information to users in different modalities.

*Public Facing.* Content made available by an agency to members of the general public. Examples include, but are not limited to, an agency Web site, blog post, or social media pages.

*Real-Time Text (RTT).* Communications using the transmission of text by which characters are transmitted by a terminal as they are typed. Real-time text is used for conversational purposes. Real-time text also may be used in voicemail, interactive voice response systems, and other similar application.

*Revised 508 Standards.* The standards for ICT developed, procured, maintained, or used by agencies subject to Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act as set forth in 508 Chapters 1 and 2 (36 CFR part 1194, Appendix A), and Chapters 3 through 7 (36 CFR part 1194, Appendix C).

*Software.* Programs, procedures, rules, and related data and documentation that direct the use and operation of ICT and instruct it to perform a given task or function. Software includes, but is not limited to, applications, non-Web software, and platform software.

*Software Tools.* Software for which the primary function is the development of other software. Software tools usually come in the form of an Integrated Development Environ-

ment (IDE) and are a suite of related products and utilities. Examples of IDEs include Microsoft® Visual Studio®, Apple® Xcode®, and Eclipse Foundation Eclipse®.

*Telecommunications.* The signal transmission, between or among points specified by the user, of information of the user's choosing, without change in the form or content of the information as sent and received.

*Terminal.* Device or software with which the end user directly interacts and that provides the user interface. For some systems, the software that provides the user interface may reside on more than one device such as a telephone and a server.

*Text.* A sequence of characters that can be programmatically determined and that expresses something in human language.

*TTY.* Equipment that enables interactive text based communications through the transmission of frequency-shift-keying audio tones across the public switched telephone network. TTYs include devices for real-time text communications and voice and text intermixed communications. Examples of intermixed communications are voice carry over and hearing carry over. One example of a TTY is a computer with TTY emulating software and modem.

*Variable Message Signs (VMS).* Non-interactive electronic signs with scrolling, streaming, or paging-down capability. An example of a VMS is an electronic message board at a transit station that displays the gate and time information associated with the next train arrival.

*Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP).* A technology that provides real-time voice communications. VoIP requires a broadband connection from the user's location and customer premises equipment compatible with Internet protocol.

*Web page.* A non-embedded resource obtained from a single Universal Resource Identifier (URI) using HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP) plus any other resources that are provided for the rendering, retrieval, and presentation of content.

## 508 CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

### E201 APPLICATION

**E201.1 Scope.** ICT that is procured, developed, maintained, or used by agencies shall conform to the Revised 508 Standards.

### E202 GENERAL EXCEPTIONS

**E202.1 General.** ICT shall be exempt from compliance with the Revised 508 Standards to the extent specified by E202.

**E202.2 Legacy ICT.** Any component or portion of existing ICT that complies with an earlier standard issued pursuant to Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (as republished in Appendix D), and that has not been altered on or after January

18, 2018, shall not be required to be modified to conform to the Revised 508 Standards.

**E202.3 *National Security Systems.*** The Revised 508 Standards do not apply to ICT operated by agencies as part of a national security system, as defined by 40 U.S.C. 11103(a).

**E202.4 *Federal Contracts.*** ICT acquired by a contractor incidental to a contract shall not be required to conform to the Revised 508 Standards.

**E202.5 *ICT Functions Located in Maintenance or Monitoring Spaces.*** Where status indicators and operable parts for ICT functions are located in spaces that are frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair, or occasional monitoring of equipment, such status indicators and operable parts shall not be required to conform to the Revised 508 Standards.

**E202.6 *Undue Burden or Fundamental Alteration.*** Where an agency determines in accordance with E202.6 that conformance to requirements in the Revised 508 Standards would impose an undue burden or would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of the ICT, conformance shall be required only to the extent that it does not impose an undue burden, or result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of the ICT.

**E202.6.1 *Basis for a Determination of Undue Burden.*** In determining whether conformance to requirements in the Revised 508 Standards would impose an undue burden on the agency, the agency shall consider the extent to which conformance would impose significant difficulty or expense considering the agency resources available to the program or component for which the ICT is to be procured, developed, maintained, or used.

**E202.6.2 *Required Documentation.*** The responsible agency official shall document in writing the basis for determining that conformance to requirements in the Revised 508 Standards constitute an undue burden on the agency, or would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of the ICT. The documentation shall include an explanation of why and to what extent compliance with applicable requirements would create an undue burden or result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of the ICT.

**E202.6.3 *Alternative Means.*** Where conformance to one or more requirements in the Revised 508 Standards imposes an undue burden or a fundamental alteration in the nature of the ICT, the agency shall provide individuals with disabilities access to and use of information and data by an alternative means that meets identified needs.

**E202.7 *Best Meets.*** Where ICT conforming to one or more requirements in the Revised 508 Standards is not commercially available, the agency shall procure the ICT that best meets the Revised 508 Standards consistent with the agency's business needs.

**E202.7.1 *Required Documentation.*** The responsible agency official shall document in

writing: (a) The non-availability of conforming ICT, including a description of market research performed and which provisions cannot be met, and (b) the basis for determining that the ICT to be procured best meets the requirements in the Revised 508 Standards consistent with the agency's business needs.

**E202.7.2 *Alternative Means.*** Where ICT that fully conforms to the Revised 508 Standards is not commercially available, the agency shall provide individuals with disabilities access to and use of information and data by an alternative means that meets identified needs.

#### E203 ACCESS TO FUNCTIONALITY

**E203.1 *General.*** Agencies shall ensure that all functionality of ICT is accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities, either directly or by supporting the use of assistive technology, and shall comply with E203. In providing access to all functionality of ICT, agencies shall ensure the following:

A. That Federal employees with disabilities have access to and use of information and data that is comparable to the access and use by Federal employees who are not individuals with disabilities; and

B. That members of the public with disabilities who are seeking information or data from a Federal agency have access to and use of information and data that is comparable to that provided to members of the public who are not individuals with disabilities.

**E203.2 *User Needs.*** When agencies procure, develop, maintain or use ICT they shall identify the needs of users with disabilities to determine:

A. How users with disabilities will perform the functions supported by the ICT; and

B. How the ICT will be developed, installed, configured, and maintained to support users with disabilities.

#### E204 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

**E204.1 *General.*** Where the requirements in Chapters 4 and 5 do not address one or more functions of ICT, the functions not addressed shall conform to the Functional Performance Criteria specified in Chapter 3.

#### E205 ELECTRONIC CONTENT

**E205.1 *General.*** Electronic content shall comply with E205.

**E205.2 *Public Facing.*** Electronic content that is public facing shall conform to the accessibility requirements specified in E205.4.

**E205.3 *Agency Official Communication.*** Electronic content that is not public facing shall conform to the accessibility requirements specified in E205.4 when such content constitutes official business and is communicated by an agency through one or more of the following:

A. An emergency notification;

B. An initial or final decision adjudicating an administrative claim or proceeding;

C. An internal or external program or policy announcement;

D. A notice of benefits, program eligibility, employment opportunity, or personnel action;

E. A formal acknowledgement of receipt;

F. A survey questionnaire;

G. A template or form;

H. Educational or training materials; or

I. Intranet content designed as a Web page.

EXCEPTION: Records maintained by the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA) pursuant to Federal record-keeping statutes shall not be required to conform to the Revised 508 Standards unless public facing.

E205.4 *Accessibility Standard.* Electronic content shall conform to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1).

EXCEPTION: Non-Web documents shall not be required to conform to the following four WCAG 2.0 Success Criteria: 2.4.1 Bypass Blocks, 2.4.5 Multiple Ways, 3.2.3 Consistent Navigation, and 3.2.4 Consistent Identification.

E205.4.1 *Word Substitution when Applying WCAG to Non-Web Documents.* For non-Web documents, wherever the term “Web page” or “page” appears in WCAG 2.0 Level A and AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements, the term “document” shall be substituted for the terms “Web page” and “page”. In addition, in Success Criterion in 1.4.2, the phrase “in a document” shall be substituted for the phrase “on a Web page”.

#### E206 HARDWARE

E206.1 *General.* Where components of ICT are hardware and transmit information or have a user interface, such components shall conform to the requirements in Chapter 4.

#### E207 SOFTWARE

E207.1 *General.* Where components of ICT are software and transmit information or have a user interface, such components shall conform to E207 and the requirements in Chapter 5.

EXCEPTION: Software that is assistive technology and that supports the accessibility services of the platform shall not be required to conform to the requirements in Chapter 5.

E207.2 *WCAG Conformance.* User interface components, as well as the content of platforms and applications, shall conform to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1).

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Software that is assistive technology and that supports the accessibility

services of the platform shall not be required to conform to E207.2.

2. Non-Web software shall not be required to conform to the following four Success Criteria in WCAG 2.0: 2.4.1 Bypass Blocks; 2.4.5 Multiple Ways; 3.2.3 Consistent Navigation; and 3.2.4 Consistent Identification.

3. Non-Web software shall not be required to conform to Conformance Requirement 3 Complete Processes in WCAG 2.0.

E207.2.1 *Word Substitution when Applying WCAG to Non-Web Software.* For non-Web software, wherever the term “Web page” or “page” appears in WCAG 2.0 Level A and AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements, the term “software” shall be substituted for the terms “Web page” and “page”. In addition, in Success Criterion in 1.4.2, the phrase “in software” shall be substituted for the phrase “on a Web page.”

E207.3 *Complete Processes for Non-Web Software.* Where non-Web software requires multiple steps to accomplish an activity, all software related to the activity to be accomplished shall conform to WCAG 2.0 as specified in E207.2.

#### E208 SUPPORT DOCUMENTATION AND SERVICES

E208.1 *General.* Where an agency provides support documentation or services for ICT, such documentation and services shall conform to the requirements in Chapter 6.

[82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017, as amended at 83 FR 2915, Jan. 22, 2018]

#### APPENDIX B TO PART 1194—SECTION 255 OF THE COMMUNICATIONS ACT: APPLICATION AND SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

##### TABLE OF CONTENTS

|        |                                                                                                                                 |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 255    | CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION                                                                                       |
| C101   | General                                                                                                                         |
| C102   | Referenced Standards                                                                                                            |
| C103   | Definitions                                                                                                                     |
| 255    | CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS                                                                                                 |
| C201   | Application                                                                                                                     |
| C202   | Functional Performance Criteria                                                                                                 |
| C203   | Electronic Content                                                                                                              |
| C204   | Hardware                                                                                                                        |
| C205   | Software                                                                                                                        |
| C206   | Support Documentation and Services                                                                                              |
| 255    | CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION                                                                                       |
| C101   | GENERAL                                                                                                                         |
| C101.1 | <i>Purpose.</i> These Revised 255 Guidelines, which consist of 255 Chapters 1 and 2 (Appendix B), along with Chapters 3 through |

7 (Appendix C), contain scoping and technical requirements for the design, development, and fabrication of telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment, content, and support documentation and services, to ensure accessibility and usability by individuals with disabilities. These Revised 255 Guidelines are to be applied to the extent required by regulations issued by the Federal Communications Commission under Section 255 of the Communications Act of 1934, as amended (47 U.S.C. 255).

**C101.2 Equivalent Facilitation.** The use of an alternative design or technology that results in substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability by individuals with disabilities than would be provided by conformance to one or more of the requirements in Chapters 4 and 5 of the Revised 255 Guidelines is permitted. The functional performance criteria in Chapter 3 shall be used to determine whether substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability is provided to individuals with disabilities.

**C101.3 Conventional Industry Tolerances.** Dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances except where dimensions are stated as a range with specific minimum or maximum end points.

**C101.4 Units of Measurement.** Measurements are stated in metric and U.S. customary units. The values stated in each system (metric and U.S. customary units) may not be exact equivalents, and each system shall be used independently of the other.

#### C102 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**C102.1 Application.** The specific editions of the standards listed in Chapter 7 are incorporated by reference into 255 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements) and Chapters 3 through 6 to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where conflicts occur between the Revised 255 Guidelines and the referenced standards, these Revised 255 Guidelines apply.

#### C103 DEFINITIONS

**C103.1 Terms Defined in Referenced Standards.** Terms defined in referenced standards and not defined in C103.4 shall have the meaning as defined in the referenced standards.

**C103.2 Undefined Terms.** Any term not defined in C103.4 or in referenced standards shall be given its ordinarily accepted meaning in the sense that the context implies.

**C103.3 Interchangeability.** Words, terms, and phrases used in the singular include the plural and those used in the plural include the singular.

**C103.4 Defined Terms.** For the purpose of the Revised 255 Guidelines, the terms defined in C103.4 have the indicated meaning.

**Application.** Software designed to perform, or to help the user perform, a specific task or tasks.

**Assistive Technology (AT).** Any item, piece of equipment, or product system, whether acquired commercially, modified, or customized, that is used to increase, maintain, or improve functional capabilities of individuals with disabilities.

**Audio Description.** Narration added to the soundtrack to describe important visual details that cannot be understood from the main soundtrack alone. Audio description is a means to inform individuals who are blind or who have low vision about visual content essential for comprehension. Audio description of video provides information about actions, characters, scene changes, on-screen text, and other visual content. Audio description supplements the regular audio track of a program. Audio description is usually added during existing pauses in dialogue. Audio description is also called “video description” and “descriptive narration.”

**Authoring Tool.** Any software, or collection of software components, that can be used by authors, alone or collaboratively, to create or modify content for use by others, including other authors.

**Closed Functionality.** Characteristics that limit functionality or prevent a user from attaching or installing assistive technology.

**Content.** Electronic information and data, as well as the encoding that defines its structure, presentation, and interactions.

**Customer Premises Equipment (CPE).** Equipment used on the premises of a person (other than a carrier) to originate, route, or terminate telecommunications service or interconnected VoIP service, including software integral to the operation of telecommunications function of such equipment. Examples of CPE are telephones, routers, switches, residential gateways, set-top boxes, fixed mobile convergence products, home networking adaptors and Internet access gateways which enable consumers to access communications service providers’ services and distribute them around their house via a Local Access Network (LAN).

**Document.** Logically distinct assembly of content (such as a file, set of files, or streamed media) that: Functions as a single entity rather than a collection; is not part of software; and does not include its own software to retrieve and present content for users. Examples of documents include, but are not limited to, letters, email messages, spreadsheets, presentations, podcasts, images, and movies.

**Hardware.** A tangible device, equipment, or physical component of ICT, such as telephones, computers, multifunction copy machines, and keyboards.

**Information and Communication Technology (ICT).** Information technology and other

equipment, systems, technologies, or processes, for which the principal function is the creation, manipulation, storage, display, receipt, or transmission of electronic data and information, as well as any associated content.

**Keyboard.** A set of systematically arranged alphanumeric keys or a control that generates alphanumeric input by which a machine or device is operated. A keyboard includes tactilely discernible keys used in conjunction with the alphanumeric keys if their function maps to keys on the keyboard interfaces.

**Label.** Text, or a component with a text alternative, that is presented to a user to identify content. A label is presented to all users, whereas a name may be hidden and only exposed by assistive technology. In many cases, the name and the label are the same.

**Manufacturer.** A final assembler of telecommunications equipment or customer premises equipment that sells such equipment to the public or to vendors that sell to the public.

**Menu.** A set of selectable options.

**Name.** Text by which software can identify a component to the user. A name may be hidden and only exposed by assistive technology, whereas a label is presented to all users. In many cases, the label and the name are the same. Name is unrelated to the name attribute in HTML.

**Non-Web Document.** A document that is not: A Web page, embedded in a Web page, or used in the rendering or functioning of Web pages.

**Non-Web Software.** Software that is not: A Web page, not embedded in a Web page, and not used in the rendering or functioning of Web pages.

**Operable Part.** Hardware-based user controls for activating, deactivating, or adjusting ICT.

**Platform Accessibility Services.** Services provided by a platform enabling interoperability with assistive technology. Examples are Application Programming Interfaces (API) and the Document Object Model (DOM).

**Platform Software.** Software that interacts with hardware or provides services for other software. Platform software may run or host other software, and may isolate them from underlying software or hardware layers. A single software component may have both platform and non-platform aspects. Examples of platforms are: Desktop operating systems; embedded operating systems, including mobile systems; Web browsers; plug-ins to Web browsers that render a particular media or format; and sets of components that allow other applications to execute, such as applications which support macros or scripting.

**Programmatically Determinable.** Ability to be determined by software from author-sup-

plied data that is provided in a way that different user agents, including assistive technologies, can extract and present the information to users in different modalities.

**Real-Time Text (RTT).** Communications using the transmission of text by which characters are transmitted by a terminal as they are typed. Real-time text is used for conversational purposes. Real-time text also may be used in voicemail, interactive voice response systems, and other similar application.

**Revised 255 Guidelines.** The guidelines for telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment covered by Section 255 of the Communications Act as set forth in 255 Chapters 1 and 2 (36 CFR part 1194, Appendix B), and Chapters 3 through 7 (36 CFR part 1193, Appendix C).

**Software.** Programs, procedures, rules, and related data and documentation that direct the use and operation of ICT and instruct it to perform a given task or function. Software includes, but is not limited to, applications, non-Web software, and platform software.

**Software Tools.** Software for which the primary function is the development of other software. Software tools usually come in the form of an Integrated Development Environment (IDE) and are a suite of related products and utilities. Examples of IDEs include Microsoft® Visual Studio®, Apple® Xcode®, and Eclipse Foundation Eclipse®.

**Specialized Customer Premises Equipment.** Assistive technology used by individuals with disabilities to originate, route, or terminate telecommunications or interconnected VoIP service. Examples are TTYs and amplified telephones.

**Telecommunications.** The signal transmission between or among points specified by the user of information and of the user's choosing without change in the form or content of the information as sent and received.

**Telecommunications Equipment.** Equipment, other than customer premises equipment, used by a carrier to provide telecommunications service or interconnected VoIP service and includes software integral to the operation of telecommunications function of such equipment.

**Terminal.** Device or software with which the end user directly interacts and that provides the user interface. For some systems, the software that provides the user interface may reside on more than one device such as a telephone and a server.

**Text.** A sequence of characters that can be programmatically determined and that expresses something in human language.

**TTY.** Equipment that enables interactive text based communications through the transmission of frequency-shift-keying audio tones across the public switched telephone network. TTYs include devices for real-time text communications and voice and text

intermixed communications. Examples of intermixed communications are voice carry over and hearing carry over. One example of a TTY is a computer with TTY emulating software and modem.

*Variable Message Signs (VMS).* Non-interactive electronic signs with scrolling, streaming, or paging-down capability. An example of a VMS is an electronic message board at a transit station that displays the gate and time information associated with the next train arrival.

*Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP).* A technology that provides real-time voice communications. VoIP requires a broadband connection from the user's location and customer premises equipment compatible with Internet protocol.

*Web page.* A non-embedded resource obtained from a single Universal Resource Identifier (URI) using HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP) plus any other resources that are provided for the rendering, retrieval, and presentation of content.

## CHAPTER 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

### C201 APPLICATION

**C201.1 Scope.** Manufacturers shall comply with the requirements in the Revised 255 Guidelines applicable to telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment (and related software integral to the operation of telecommunications functions) when newly released, upgraded, or substantially changed from an earlier version or model. Manufacturers shall also conform to the requirements in the Revised 255 Guidelines for support documentation and services, including electronic documents and Web-based product support.

**C201.2. Readily Achievable.** When a manufacturer determines that conformance to one or more requirements in Chapter 4 (Hardware) or Chapter 5 (Software) would not be readily achievable, it shall ensure that the equipment or software is compatible with existing peripheral devices or specialized customer premises equipment commonly used by individuals with disabilities to the extent readily achievable.

**C201.3 Access to Functionality.** Manufacturers shall ensure that telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment is accessible to and usable by individuals with disabilities by providing direct access to all telecommunications functionality. Where manufacturers can demonstrate that it is not readily achievable for such equipment to provide direct access to all functionality, the equipment shall support the use of assistive technology and specialized customer premises equipment where readily achievable.

**C201.4 Prohibited Reduction of Accessibility, Usability, and Compatibility.** No change shall be undertaken that decreases, or has the ef-

fect of decreasing, the net accessibility, usability, or compatibility of telecommunications equipment or customer premises equipment.

**EXCEPTION:** Discontinuation of a product shall not be prohibited.

**C201.5 Design, Development, and Fabrication.** Manufacturers shall evaluate the accessibility, usability, and interoperability of telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment during its product design, development, and fabrication.

### C202 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

**C202.1 General.** Where the requirements in Chapters 4 and 5 do not address one or more functions of telecommunications or customer premises equipment, the functions not addressed shall conform to the Functional Performance Criteria specified in Chapter 3.

### C203 ELECTRONIC CONTENT

**C203.1 General.** Electronic content that is integral to the use of telecommunications or customer premises equipment shall conform to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1).

**EXCEPTION:** Non-Web documents shall not be required to conform to the following four WCAG 2.0 Success Criteria: 2.4.1 Bypass Blocks, 2.4.5 Multiple Ways, 3.2.3 Consistent Navigation, and 3.2.4 Consistent Identification.

**C203.1.1 Word Substitution when Applying WCAG to Non-Web Documents.** For non-Web documents, wherever the term “Web page” or “page” appears in WCAG 2.0 Level A and AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements, the term “document” shall be substituted for the terms “Web page” and “page.” In addition, in Success Criterion 1.4.2, the phrase “in a document” shall be substituted for the phrase “on a Web page.”

### C204 HARDWARE

**C204.1 General.** Where components of telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment are hardware, and transmit information or have a user interface, those components shall conform to applicable requirements in Chapter 4.

**EXCEPTION:** Components of telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment shall not be required to conform to 402, 407.7, 407.8, 408, 412.8.4, and 415.

### C205 SOFTWARE

**C205.1 General.** Where software is integral to the use of telecommunications functions of telecommunications equipment or customer premises equipment and has a user interface, such software shall conform to C205 and applicable requirements in Chapter 5.

EXCEPTION: Software that is assistive technology and that supports the accessibility services of the platform shall not be required to conform to the requirements in Chapter 5.

C205.2 *WCAG Conformance.* User interface components, as well as the content of platforms and applications shall conform to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1).

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Software that is assistive technology and that supports the accessibility services of the platform shall not be required to conform to C205.2.

2. Non-Web software shall not be required to conform to the following four Success Criteria in WCAG 2.0: 2.4.1 Bypass Blocks; 2.4.5 Multiple Ways; 3.2.3 Consistent Navigation; and 3.2.4 Consistent Identification.

3. Non-Web software shall not be required to conform to Conformance Requirement 3 Complete Processes in WCAG 2.0.

C205.2.1 *Word Substitution when Applying WCAG to Non-Web Software.* For non-Web software, wherever the term “Web page” or “page” appears in WCAG 2.0 Level A and AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements, the term “software” shall be substituted for the terms “Web page” and “page.” In addition, in Success Criterion 1.4.2, the phrase “in software” shall be substituted for the phrase “on a Web page.”

C205.3 *Complete Processes for Non-Web Software.* Where non-Web software requires multiple steps to accomplish an activity, all software related to the activity to be accomplished shall conform to WCAG 2.0 as specified in C205.2.

## C206 SUPPORT DOCUMENTATION AND SERVICES

C206.1 *General.* Where support documentation and services are provided for telecommunications equipment and customer premises equipment, manufacturers shall ensure that such documentation and services conform to Chapter 6 and are made available upon request at no additional charge.

[82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017, as amended at 83 FR 2915, Jan. 22, 2018]

## APPENDIX C TO PART 1194—FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA AND TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### CHAPTER 3: FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- 301 General
- 302 Functional Performance Criteria

#### CHAPTER 4: HARDWARE

- 401 General
- 402 Closed Functionality
- 403 Biometrics

- 404 Preservation of Information Provided for Accessibility
- 405 Privacy
- 406 Standard Connections
- 407 Operable Parts
- 408 Display Screens
- 409 Status Indicators
- 410 Color Coding
- 411 Audible Signals
- 412 ICT with Two-Way Communication
- 413 Closed Caption Processing Technologies
- 414 Audio Description Processing Technologies
- 415 User Controls for Captions and Audio Descriptions

#### CHAPTER 5: SOFTWARE

- 501 General
- 502 Interoperability with Assistive Technology
- 503 Applications
- 504 Authoring Tools

#### CHAPTER 6: SUPPORT DOCUMENTATION AND SERVICES

- 601 General
- 602 Support Documentation
- 603 Support Services

#### CHAPTER 7: REFERENCED STANDARDS

- 701 General
- 702 Incorporation by Reference

#### CHAPTER 3: FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

##### 301—GENERAL

301.1 *Scope.* The requirements of Chapter 3 shall apply to ICT where required by 508 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), 255 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), and where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Revised 508 Standards or Revised 255 Guidelines.

##### 302 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

302.1 *Without Vision.* Where a visual mode of operation is provided, ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation that does not require user vision.

302.2 *With Limited Vision.* Where a visual mode of operation is provided, ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation that enables users to make use of limited vision.

302.3 *Without Perception of Color.* Where a visual mode of operation is provided, ICT shall provide at least one visual mode of operation that does not require user perception of color.

302.4 *Without Hearing.* Where an audible mode of operation is provided, ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation that does not require user hearing.

302.5 *With Limited Hearing.* Where an audible mode of operation is provided, ICT shall

provide at least one mode of operation that enables users to make use of limited hearing.

302.6 *Without Speech.* Where speech is used for input, control, or operation, ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation that does not require user speech.

302.7 *With Limited Manipulation.* Where a manual mode of operation is provided, ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation that does not require fine motor control or simultaneous manual operations.

302.8 *With Limited Reach and Strength.* Where a manual mode of operation is provided, ICT shall provide at least one mode of operation that is operable with limited reach and limited strength.

302.9 *With Limited Language, Cognitive, and Learning Abilities.* ICT shall provide features making its use by individuals with limited cognitive, language, and learning abilities simpler and easier.

#### CHAPTER 4: HARDWARE

##### 401 GENERAL

401.1 *Scope.* The requirements of Chapter 4 shall apply to ICT that is hardware where required by 508 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), 255 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), and where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Revised 508 Standards or Revised 255 Guidelines.

EXCEPTION: Hardware that is assistive technology shall not be required to conform to the requirements of this chapter.

##### 402 CLOSED FUNCTIONALITY

402.1 *General.* ICT with closed functionality shall be operable without requiring the user to attach or install assistive technology other than personal headsets or other audio couplers, and shall conform to 402.

402.2 *Speech-Output Enabled.* ICT with a display screen shall be speech-output enabled for full and independent use by individuals with vision impairments.

EXCEPTIONS: 1. Variable message signs conforming to 402.5 shall not be required to be speech-output enabled.

2. Speech output shall not be required where ICT display screens only provide status indicators and those indicators conform to 409.

3. Where speech output cannot be supported due to constraints in available memory or processor capability, ICT shall be permitted to conform to 409 in lieu of 402.2.

4. Audible tones shall be permitted instead of speech output where the content of user input is not displayed as entered for security purposes, including, but not limited to, asterisks representing personal identification numbers.

5. Speech output shall not be required for: The machine location; date and time of

transaction; customer account number; and the machine identifier or label.

6. Speech output shall not be required for advertisements and other similar information unless they convey information that can be used for the transaction being conducted.

402.2.1 *Information Displayed On-Screen.* Speech output shall be provided for all information displayed on-screen.

402.2.2 *Transactional Outputs.* Where transactional outputs are provided, the speech output shall audibly provide all information necessary to verify a transaction.

402.2.3 *Speech Delivery Type and Coordination.* Speech output shall be delivered through a mechanism that is readily available to all users, including, but not limited to, an industry standard connector or a telephone handset. Speech shall be recorded or digitized human, or synthesized. Speech output shall be coordinated with information displayed on the screen.

402.2.4 *User Control.* Speech output for any single function shall be automatically interrupted when a transaction is selected. Speech output shall be capable of being repeated and paused.

402.2.5 *Braille Instructions.* Where speech output is required by 402.2, braille instructions for initiating the speech mode of operation shall be provided. Braille shall be contracted and shall conform to 36 CFR part 1191, Appendix D, Section 703.3.1.

EXCEPTION: Devices for personal use shall not be required to conform to 402.2.5.

402.3 *Volume.* ICT that delivers sound, including speech output required by 402.2, shall provide volume control and output amplification conforming to 402.3.

EXCEPTION: ICT conforming to 412.2 shall not be required to conform to 402.3.

402.3.1 *Private Listening.* Where ICT provides private listening, it shall provide a mode of operation for controlling the volume. Where ICT delivers output by an audio transducer typically held up to the ear, a means for effective magnetic wireless coupling to hearing technologies shall be provided.

402.3.2 *Non-private Listening.* Where ICT provides non-private listening, incremental volume control shall be provided with output amplification up to a level of at least 65 dB. A function shall be provided to automatically reset the volume to the default level after every use.

402.4 *Characters on Display Screens.* At least one mode of characters displayed on the screen shall be in a sans serif font. Where ICT does not provide a screen enlargement feature, characters shall be 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) high minimum based on the uppercase letter “I”. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

402.5 *Characters on Variable Message Signs.* Characters on variable message signs shall conform to section 703.7 Variable Message Signs of ICC A117.1-2009 (incorporated by reference, see 702.6.1).

#### 403 BIOMETRICS

403.1 *General.* Where provided, biometrics shall not be the only means for user identification or control.

EXCEPTION: Where at least two biometric options that use different biological characteristics are provided, ICT shall be permitted to use biometrics as the only means for user identification or control.

#### 404 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION PROVIDED FOR ACCESSIBILITY

404.1 *General.* ICT that transmits or converts information or communication shall not remove non-proprietary information provided for accessibility or shall restore it upon delivery.

#### 405 PRIVACY

405.1 *General.* The same degree of privacy of input and output shall be provided to all individuals. When speech output required by 402.2 is enabled, the screen shall not blank automatically.

#### 406 STANDARD CONNECTIONS

406.1 *General.* Where data connections used for input and output are provided, at least one of each type of connection shall conform to industry standard non-proprietary formats.

#### 407 OPERABLE PARTS

407.1 *General.* Where provided, operable parts used in the normal operation of ICT shall conform to 407.

407.2 *Contrast.* Where provided, keys and controls shall contrast visually from background surfaces. Characters and symbols shall contrast visually from background surfaces with either light characters or symbols on a dark background or dark characters or symbols on a light background.

407.3 *Input Controls.* At least one input control conforming to 407.3 shall be provided for each function.

EXCEPTION: Devices for personal use with input controls that are audibly discernable without activation and operable by touch shall not be required to conform to 407.3.

407.3.1 *Tactilely Discernible.* Input controls shall be operable by touch and tactilely discernible without activation.

407.3.2 *Alphabetic Keys.* Where provided, individual alphabetic keys shall be arranged in a QWERTY-based keyboard layout and the "F" and "J" keys shall be tactilely distinct from the other keys.

407.3.3 *Numeric Keys.* Where provided, numeric keys shall be arranged in a 12-key as-

cending or descending keypad layout. The number five key shall be tactilely distinct from the other keys. Where the ICT provides an alphabetic overlay on numeric keys, the relationships between letters and digits shall conform to ITU-T Recommendation E.161 (incorporated by reference, see 702.7.1).

407.4 *Key Repeat.* Where a keyboard with key repeat is provided, the delay before the key repeat feature is activated shall be fixed at, or adjustable to, 2 seconds minimum.

407.5 *Timed Response.* Where a timed response is required, the user shall be alerted visually, as well as by touch or sound, and shall be given the opportunity to indicate that more time is needed.

407.6 *Operation.* At least one mode of operation shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

407.7 *Tickets, Fare Cards, and Keycards.* Where tickets, fare cards, or keycards are provided, they shall have an orientation that is tactilely discernible if orientation is important to further use of the ticket, fare card, or keycard.

407.8 *Reach Height and Depth.* At least one of each type of operable part of stationary ICT shall be at a height conforming to 407.8.2 or 407.8.3 according to its position established by the vertical reference plane specified in 407.8.1 for a side reach or a forward reach. Operable parts used with speech output required by 402.2 shall not be the only type of operable part complying with 407.8 unless that part is the only operable part of its type.

407.8.1 *Vertical Reference Plane.* Operable parts shall be positioned for a side reach or a forward reach determined with respect to a vertical reference plane. The vertical reference plane shall be located in conformance to 407.8.2 or 407.8.3.

407.8.1.1 *Vertical Plane for Side Reach.* Where a side reach is provided, the vertical reference plane shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) long minimum.

407.8.1.2 *Vertical Plane for Forward Reach.* Where a forward reach is provided, the vertical reference plane shall be 30 inches (760 mm) long minimum.

407.8.2 *Side Reach.* Operable parts of ICT providing a side reach shall conform to 407.8.2.1 or 407.8.2.2. The vertical reference plane shall be centered on the operable part and placed at the leading edge of the maximum protrusion of the ICT within the length of the vertical reference plane. Where a side reach requires a reach over a portion of the ICT, the height of that portion of the ICT shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum.

407.8.2.1 *Unobstructed Side Reach.* Where the operable part is located 10 inches (255 mm) or less beyond the vertical reference plane, the operable part shall be 48 inches

(1220 mm) high maximum and 15 inches (380 mm) high minimum above the floor.

**407.8.2.2 Obstructed Side Reach.** Where the operable part is located more than 10 inches (255 mm), but not more than 24 inches (610 mm), beyond the vertical reference plane, the height of the operable part shall be 46 inches (1170 mm) high maximum and 15 inches (380 mm) high minimum above the floor. The operable part shall not be located more than 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the vertical reference plane.

**407.8.3 Forward Reach.** Operable parts of ICT providing a forward reach shall conform to 407.8.3.1 or 407.8.3.2. The vertical reference plane shall be centered, and intersect with, the operable part. Where a forward reach allows a reach over a portion of the ICT, the height of that portion of the ICT shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum.

**407.8.3.1 Unobstructed Forward Reach.**

Where the operable part is located at the leading edge of the maximum protrusion within the length of the vertical reference plane of the ICT, the operable part shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) high maximum and 15 inches (380 mm) high minimum above the floor.

**407.8.3.2 Obstructed Forward Reach.** Where the operable part is located beyond the leading edge of the maximum protrusion within the length of the vertical reference plane, the operable part shall conform to 407.8.3.2. The maximum allowable forward reach to an operable part shall be 25 inches (635 mm).

**407.8.3.2.1 Operable Part Height for ICT with Obstructed Forward Reach.** The height of the operable part shall conform to Table 407.8.3.2.1.

TABLE 407.8.3.2.1—OPERABLE PART HEIGHT FOR ICT WITH OBSTRUCTED FORWARD REACH

| Reach depth                                    | Operable part height         |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Less than 20 inches (510 mm) .....             | 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum. |
| 20 inches (510 mm) to 25 inches (635 mm) ..... | 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum. |

**407.8.3.2.2 Knee and Toe Space under ICT with Obstructed Forward Reach.** Knee and toe space under ICT shall be 27 inches (685 mm) high minimum, 25 inches (635 mm) deep maximum, and 30 inches (760 mm) wide minimum and shall be clear of obstructions.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. Toe space shall be permitted to provide a clear height of 9 inches (230 mm) minimum above the floor and a clear depth of 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the vertical reference plane toward the leading edge of the ICT.

2. At a depth of 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the vertical reference plane toward the leading edge of the ICT, space between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) minimum above the floor shall be permitted to reduce at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for every 6 inches (150 mm) in height.

**408 DISPLAY SCREENS**

**408.1 General.** Where provided, display screens shall conform to 408.

**408.2 Visibility.** Where stationary ICT provides one or more display screens, at least one of each type of display screen shall be visible from a point located 40 inches (1015 mm) above the floor space where the display screen is viewed.

**408.3 Flashing.** Where ICT emits lights in flashes, there shall be no more than three flashes in any one-second period.

**EXCEPTION:** Flashes that do not exceed the general flash and red flash thresholds defined in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, see 702.10.1) are not required to conform to 408.3.

**409 STATUS INDICATORS**

**409.1 General.** Where provided, status indicators shall be discernible visually and by touch or sound.

**410 COLOR CODING**

**410.1 General.** Where provided, color coding shall not be used as the only means of conveying information, indicating an action, prompting a response, or distinguishing a visual element.

**411 AUDIBLE SIGNALS**

**411.1 General.** Where provided, audible signals or cues shall not be used as the only means of conveying information, indicating an action, or prompting a response.

**412 ICT WITH TWO-WAY VOICE COMMUNICATION**

**412.1 General.** ICT that provides two-way voice communication shall conform to 412.

**412.2 Volume Gain.** ICT that provides two-way voice communication shall conform to 412.2.1 or 412.2.2.

**412.2.1 Volume Gain for Wireline Telephones.** Volume gain conforming to 47 CFR 68.317 shall be provided on analog and digital wireline telephones.

**412.2.2 Volume Gain for Non-Wireline ICT.** A method for increasing volume shall be provided for non-wireline ICT.

**412.3 Interference Reduction and Magnetic Coupling.** Where ICT delivers output by a handset or other type of audio transducer that is typically held up to the ear, ICT shall

reduce interference with hearing technologies and provide a means for effective magnetic wireless coupling in conformance with 412.3.1 or 412.3.2.

412.3.1 *Wireless Handsets*. ICT in the form of wireless handsets shall conform to ANSI/IEEE C63.19-2011 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.5.1).

412.3.2 *Wireline Handsets*. ICT in the form of wireline handsets, including cordless handsets, shall conform to TIA-1083-B (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.9.1).

412.4 *Digital Encoding of Speech*. ICT in IP-based networks shall transmit and receive speech that is digitally encoded in the manner specified by ITU-T Recommendation G.722.2 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.7.2) or IETF RFC 6716 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.8.1).

412.5 *Real-Time Text Functionality*. [Reserved].

412.6 *Caller ID*. Where provided, caller identification and similar telecommunications functions shall be visible and audible.

412.7 *Video Communication*. Where ICT provides real-time video functionality, the quality of the video shall be sufficient to support communication using sign language.

412.8 *Legacy TTY Support*. ICT equipment or systems with two-way voicecommunication that do not themselves provide TTY functionality shall conform to 412.8.

412.8.1 *TTY Connectability*. ICT shall include a standard non-acoustic connection point for TTYs.

412.8.2 *Voice and Hearing Carry Over*. ICT shall provide a microphone capable of being turned on and off to allow the user to intermix speech with TTY use.

412.8.3 *Signal Compatibility*. ICT shall support all commonly used crossmanufacturer non-proprietary standard TTY signal protocols where the system interoperates with the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN).

412.8.4 *Voice Mail and Other Messaging Systems*. Where provided, voice mail, autoattendant, interactive voice response, and caller identification systems shall be usable with a TTY.

#### 413 CLOSED CAPTION PROCESSING TECHNOLOGIES

413.1 *General*. Where ICT displays or processes video with synchronized audio, ICT shall provide closed caption processing technology that conforms to 413.1.1 or 413.1.2.

413.1.1 *Decoding and Display of Closed Captions*. Players and displays shall decode closed caption data and support display of captions.

413.1.2 *Pass-Through of Closed Caption Data*. Cabling and ancillary equipment shall pass through caption data.

#### 414 AUDIO DESCRIPTION PROCESSING TECHNOLOGIES

414.1 *General*. Where ICT displays or processes video with synchronized audio, ICT shall provide audio description processing technology conforming to 414.1.1 or 414.1.2.

414.1.1 *Digital Television Tuners*. Digital television tuners shall provide audio description processing that conforms to ATSC A/53 Digital Television Standard, Part 5 (2014) (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.2.1). Digital television tuners shall provide processing of audio description when encoded as a Visually Impaired (VI) associated audio service that is provided as a complete program mix containing audio description according to the ATSC A/53 standard.

414.1.2 *Other ICT*. ICT other than digital television tuners shall provide audio description processing.

#### 415 USER CONTROLS FOR CAPTIONS AND AUDIO DESCRIPTIONS

415.1 *General*. Where ICT displays video with synchronized audio, ICT shall provide user controls for closed captions and audio descriptions conforming to 415.1.

EXCEPTION: Devices for personal use shall not be required to conform to 415.1 provided that captions and audio descriptions can be enabled through system-wide platform settings.

415.1.1 *Caption Controls*. Where ICT provides operable parts for volume control, ICT shall also provide operable parts for caption selection.

415.1.2 *Audio Description Controls*. Where ICT provides operable parts for program selection, ICT shall also provide operable parts for the selection of audio description.

### CHAPTER 5: SOFTWARE

#### 501 GENERAL

501.1 *Scope*. The requirements of Chapter 5 shall apply to software where required by 508 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), 255 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), and where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Revised 508 Standards or Revised 255 Guidelines.

EXCEPTION: Where Web applications do not have access to platform accessibility services and do not include components that have access to platform accessibility services, they shall not be required to conform to 502 or 503 provided that they conform to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1).

#### 502 INTEROPERABILITY WITH ASSISTIVE TECHNOLOGY

502.1 *General*. Software shall interoperate with assistive technology and shall conform to 502.

EXCEPTION: ICT conforming to 402 shall not be required to conform to 502.

**502.2 Documented Accessibility Features.** Software with platform features defined in platform documentation as accessibility features shall conform to 502.2.

**502.2.1 User Control of Accessibility Features.** Platform software shall provide user control over platform features that are defined in the platform documentation as accessibility features.

**502.2.2 No Disruption of Accessibility Features.** Software shall not disrupt platform features that are defined in the platform documentation as accessibility features.

**502.3 Accessibility Services.** Platform software and software tools that are provided by the platform developer shall provide a documented set of accessibility services that support applications running on the platform to interoperate with assistive technology and shall conform to 502.3. Applications that are also platforms shall expose the underlying platform accessibility services or implement other documented accessibility services.

**502.3.1 Object Information.** The object role, state(s), properties, boundary, name, and description shall be programmatically determinable.

**502.3.2 Modification of Object Information.** States and properties that can be set by the user shall be capable of being set programmatically, including through assistive technology.

**502.3.3 Row, Column, and Headers.** If an object is in a data table, the occupied rows and columns, and any headers associated with those rows or columns, shall be programmatically determinable.

**502.3.4 Values.** Any current value(s), and any set or range of allowable values associated with an object, shall be programmatically determinable.

**502.3.5 Modification of Values.** Values that can be set by the user shall be capable of being set programmatically, including through assistive technology.

**502.3.6 Label Relationships.** Any relationship that a component has as a label for another component, or of being labeled by another component, shall be programmatically determinable.

**502.3.7 Hierarchical Relationships.** Any hierarchical (parent-child) relationship that a component has as a container for, or being contained by, another component shall be programmatically determinable.

**502.3.8 Text.** The content of text objects, text attributes, and the boundary of text rendered to the screen, shall be programmatically determinable.

**502.3.9 Modification of Text.** Text that can be set by the user shall be capable of being set programmatically, including through assistive technology.

**502.3.10 List of Actions.** A list of all actions that can be executed on an object shall be programmatically determinable.

**502.3.11 Actions on Objects.** Applications shall allow assistive technology to programmatically execute available actions on objects.

**502.3.12 Focus Cursor.** Applications shall expose information and mechanisms necessary to track focus, text insertion point, and selection attributes of user interface components.

**502.3.13 Modification of Focus Cursor.** Focus, text insertion point, and selection attributes that can be set by the user shall be capable of being set programmatically, including through the use of assistive technology.

**502.3.14 Event Notification.** Notification of events relevant to user interactions, including but not limited to, changes in the component's state(s), value, name, description, or boundary, shall be available to assistive technology.

**502.4 Platform Accessibility Features.** Platforms and platform software shall conform to the requirements in ANSI/HFES 200.2, Human Factors Engineering of Software User Interfaces—Part 2: Accessibility (2008) (incorporated by reference, see 702.4.1) listed below:

A. Section 9.3.3 Enable sequential entry of multiple (chorded) keystrokes;

B. Section 9.3.4 Provide adjustment of delay before key acceptance;

C. Section 9.3.5 Provide adjustment of same-key double-strike acceptance;

D. Section 10.6.7 Allow users to choose visual alternative for audio output;

E. Section 10.6.8 Synchronize audio equivalents for visual events;

F. Section 10.6.9 Provide speech output services; and

G. Section 10.7.1 Display any captions provided.

## 503 APPLICATIONS

**503.1 General.** Applications shall conform to 503.

**503.2 User Preferences.** Applications shall permit user preferences from platform settings for color, contrast, font type, font size, and focus cursor.

EXCEPTION: Applications that are designed to be isolated from their underlying platform software, including Web applications, shall not be required to conform to 503.2.

**503.3 Alternative User Interfaces.** Where an application provides an alternative user interface that functions as assistive technology, the application shall use platform and other industry standard accessibility services.

**503.4 User Controls for Captions and Audio Description.** Where ICT displays video with synchronized audio, ICT shall provide user

controls for closed captions and audio descriptions conforming to 503.4.

503.4.1 *Caption Controls*. Where user controls are provided for volume adjustment, ICT shall provide user controls for the selection of captions at the same menu level as the user controls for volume or program selection.

503.4.2 *Audio Description Controls*. Where user controls are provided for program selection, ICT shall provide user controls for the selection of audio descriptions at the same menu level as the user controls for volume or program selection.

#### 504 AUTHORIZING TOOLS

504.1 *General*. Where an application is an authoring tool, the application shall conform to 504 to the extent that information required for accessibility is supported by the destination format.

504.2 *Content Creation or Editing*. Authoring tools shall provide a mode of operation to create or edit content that conforms to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1) for all supported features and, as applicable, to file formats supported by the authoring tool. Authoring tools shall permit authors the option of overriding information required for accessibility.

EXCEPTION: Authoring tools shall not be required to conform to 504.2 when used to directly edit plain text source code.

504.2.1 *Preservation of Information Provided for Accessibility in Format Conversion*. Authoring tools shall, when converting content from one format to another or saving content in multiple formats, preserve the information required for accessibility to the extent that the information is supported by the destination format.

504.2.2 *PDF Export*. Authoring tools capable of exporting PDF files that conform to ISO 32000-1:2008 (PDF 1.7) shall also be capable of exporting PDF files that conform to ANSI/AIIM/ISO 14289-1:2016 (PDF/UA-1) (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.3.1).

504.3 *Prompts*. Authoring tools shall provide a mode of operation that prompts authors to create content that conforms to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1) for supported features and, as applicable, to file formats supported by the authoring tool.

504.4 *Templates*. Where templates are provided, templates allowing content creation that conforms to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1) shall be provided for a range of template uses for supported features and, as applicable, to file formats supported by the authoring tool.

## CHAPTER 6: SUPPORT DOCUMENTATION AND SERVICES

### 601 GENERAL

601.1 *Scope*. The technical requirements in Chapter 6 shall apply to ICT support documentation and services where required by 508 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), 255 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), and where otherwise referenced in any other chapter of the Revised 508 Standards or Revised 255 Guidelines.

### 602 SUPPORT DOCUMENTATION

602.1 *General*. Documentation that supports the use of ICT shall conform to 602.

602.2 *Accessibility and Compatibility Features*. Documentation shall list and explain how to use the accessibility and compatibility features required by Chapters 4 and 5. Documentation shall include accessibility features that are built-in and accessibility features that provide compatibility with assistive technology.

602.3 *Electronic Support Documentation*. Documentation in electronic format, including Web-based self-service support, shall conform to Level A and Level AA Success Criteria and Conformance Requirements in WCAG 2.0 (incorporated by reference, *see* 702.10.1).

602.4 *Alternate Formats for Non-Electronic Support Documentation*. Where support documentation is only provided in non-electronic formats, alternate formats usable by individuals with disabilities shall be provided upon request.

### 603 SUPPORT SERVICES

603.1 *General*. ICT support services including, but not limited to, help desks, call centers, training services, and automated self-service technical support, shall conform to 603.

603.2 *Information on Accessibility and Compatibility Features*. ICT support services shall include information on the accessibility and compatibility features required by 602.2.

603.3 *Accommodation of Communication Needs*. Support services shall be provided directly to the user or through a referral to a point of contact. Such ICT support services shall accommodate the communication needs of individuals with disabilities.

## CHAPTER 7: REFERENCED STANDARDS

### 701 GENERAL

701.1 *Scope*. The standards referenced in Chapter 7 shall apply to ICT where required by 508 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), 255 Chapter 2 (Scoping Requirements), and where referenced in any other chapter of the Revised 508 Standards or Revised 255 Guidelines.

## 702 INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

702.1 *Approved IBR Standards.* The Director of the Office of the Federal Register has approved these standards for incorporation by reference into this part in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of the referenced standards may be inspected at the U.S. Access Board, 1331 F Street, NW., Suite 1000, Washington, DC 20004, (202) 272-0080, and may also be obtained from the sources listed below. They are also available for inspection at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). For information on the availability of this material at NARA, call 202-741-6030 or go to [http://www.archives.gov/federal\\_register/code\\_of\\_federal\\_regulations/ibr\\_locations.html](http://www.archives.gov/federal_register/code_of_federal_regulations/ibr_locations.html).

702.2 *Advanced Television Systems Committee (ATSC).* Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from the Advanced Television Systems Committee, 1776 K Street NW., Suite 200, Washington, DC 20006-2304 (<http://www.atsc.org>).

702.2.1 *ATSC A/53 Part 5:2014, Digital Television Standard, Part 5—AC-3 Audio System Characteristics*, August 28, 2014, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 414.1.1.

702.3 *Association for Information and Image Management (AIIM).* Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from AIIM, 1100 Wayne Ave., Ste. 1100, Silver Spring, Maryland 20910 ([http://www.aiim.org/Resources/Standards/AIIM\\_ISO\\_14289-1](http://www.aiim.org/Resources/Standards/AIIM_ISO_14289-1)).

702.3.1 *ANSI/AIIM/ISO 14289-1-2016, Document Management Applications—Electronic Document File Format Enhancement for Accessibility—Part 1: Use of ISO 32000-1 (PDF/UA-1)*, ANSI-approved February 8, 2016, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 504.2.2.

702.4 *Human Factors and Ergonomics Society (HFES).* Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from the Human Factors and Ergonomics Society, P.O. Box 1369, Santa Monica, CA 90406-1369 (<http://www.hfes.org/Publications/ProductDetail.aspx?Id=76>).

702.4.1 *ANSI/HFES 200.2, Human Factors Engineering of Software User Interfaces—Part 2: Accessibility*, copyright 2008, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 502.4.

702.5 *Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).* Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 10662 Los Vaqueros Circle, P.O. Box 3014, Los Alamitos, CA 90720-1264 (<http://www.ieee.org>).

702.5.1 *ANSI/IEEE C63.19-2011, American National Standard for Methods of Measurement of Compatibility between Wireless Communications Devices and Hearing Aids*, May 27, 2011, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 412.3.1.

702.6 *International Code Council (ICC).* Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from ICC Publications, 4051 W.

Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, IL 60478-5795 (<http://www.iccsafe.org>).

702.6.1 *ICC A117.1-2009, Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities*, approved October 20, 2010, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 402.5.

702.7 *International Telecommunications Union Telecommunications Standardization Sector (ITU-T).* Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the International Telecommunication Union, Telecommunications Standardization Sector, Place des Nations CH-1211, Geneva 20, Switzerland (<http://www.itu.int/en/ITU-T>).

702.7.1 *ITU-T Recommendation E.161, Series E. Overall Network Operation, Telephone Service, Service Operation and Human Factors—International operation—Numbering plan of the international telephone service, Arrangement of digits, letters and symbols on telephones and other devices that can be used for gaining access to a telephone network*, February 2001, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 407.3.3.

702.7.2 *ITU-T Recommendation G.722.2, Series G. Transmission Systems and Media, Digital Systems and Networks—Digital terminal equipment—Coding of analogue signals by methods other than PCM, Wideband coding of speech at around 16 kbit/s using Adaptive Multi-Rate Wideband (AMR-WB)*, July 2003, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 412.4.

702.8 *Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).* Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from the Internet Engineering Task Force (<http://www.ietf.org>).

702.8.1 *IETF RFC 6716, Definition of the Opus Codec*, September 2012, J.M. Valin, Mozilla Corporation, K. Vos, Skype Technologies S.A., T. Terriberry, Mozilla Corporation, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 412.4.

702.9 *Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA).* Copies of the referenced standard, published by the Telecommunications Industry Association, may be obtained from IHS Markit, 15 Inverness Way East, Englewood, CO 80112 (<http://global.ihs.com>).

702.9.1 *TIA-1083-B, Telecommunications—Communications Products—Handset Magnetic Measurement Procedures and Performance Requirements*, October 2015, IBR approved for Appendix C, Section 412.3.2.

702.10 *Worldwide Web Consortium (W3C).* Copies of the referenced standard may be obtained from the W3C Web Accessibility Initiative, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 32 Vassar Street, Room 32-G515, Cambridge, MA 02139 (<http://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG20>).

702.10.1 *WCAG 2.0, Web Content Accessibility Guidelines, W3C Recommendation*, December 11, 2008, IBR approved for: Appendix A (Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act: Application and Scoping Requirements), Sections E205.4, E205.4 Exception, E205.4.1,

E207.2, E207.2 Exception 2, E207.2 Exception 3, E207.2.1, E207.3; Appendix B (Section 255 of the Communications Act: Application and Scoping Requirements), C203.1, C203.1 Exception, C203.1.1, C205.2, C205.2 Exception 2, C205.2 Exception 3, C205.2.1, C205.3; and Appendix C (Functional Performance Criteria and Technical Requirements), 408.3 Exception, 501.1 Exception, 504.2, 504.3, 504.4, and 602.3.

[82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017, as amended at 83 FR 2916, Jan. 22, 2018]

APPENDIX D TO PART 1194—ELECTRONIC AND INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS AS ORIGINALLY PUBLISHED ON DECEMBER 21, 2000

**§ D1194.1 Purpose.**

The purpose of this part is to implement section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. 794d). Section 508 requires that when Federal agencies develop, procure, maintain, or use electronic and information technology, Federal employees with disabilities have access to and use of information and data that is comparable to the access and use by Federal employees who are not individuals with disabilities, unless an undue burden would be imposed on the agency. Section 508 also requires that individuals with disabilities, who are members of the public seeking information or services from a Federal agency, have access to and use of information and data that is comparable to that provided to the public who are not individuals with disabilities, unless an undue burden would be imposed on the agency.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

**§ D1194.2 Application.**

(a) Products covered by this part shall comply with all applicable provisions of this part. When developing, procuring, maintaining, or using electronic and information technology, each agency shall ensure that the products comply with the applicable provisions of this part, unless an undue burden would be imposed on the agency.

(1) When compliance with the provisions of this part imposes an undue burden, agencies shall provide individuals with disabilities with the information and data involved by an alternative means of access that allows the individual to use the information and data.

(2) When procuring a product, if an agency determines that compliance with any provision of this part imposes an undue burden, the documentation by the agency supporting the procurement shall explain why, and to what extent, compliance with each such provision creates an undue burden.

(b) When procuring a product, each agency shall procure products which comply with the provisions in this part when such products are available in the commercial marketplace or when such products are developed in response to a Government solicitation. Agencies cannot claim a product as a whole is not commercially available because no product in the marketplace meets all the standards. If products are commercially available that meet some but not all of the standards, the agency must procure the product that best meets the standards.

(c) Except as provided by § 1194.3(b), this part applies to electronic and information technology developed, procured, maintained, or used by agencies directly or used by a contractor under a contract with an agency which requires the use of such product, or requires the use, to a significant extent, of such product in the performance of a service or the furnishing of a product.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

**§ D1194.3 General exceptions.**

(a) This part does not apply to any electronic and information technology operated by agencies, the function, operation, or use of which involves intelligence activities, cryptologic activities related to national security, command and control of military forces, equipment that is an integral part of a weapon or weapons system, or systems which are critical to the direct fulfillment of military or intelligence missions. Systems which are critical to the direct fulfillment of military or intelligence missions do not include a system that is to be used for routine administrative and business applications (including payroll, finance, logistics, and personnel management applications).

(b) This part does not apply to electronic and information technology that is acquired by a contractor incidental to a contract.

(c) Except as required to comply with the provisions in this part, this part does not require the installation of specific accessibility-related software or the attachment of an assistive technology device at a workstation of a Federal employee who is not an individual with a disability.

(d) When agencies provide access to the public to information or data through electronic and information technology, agencies are not required to make products owned by the agency available for access and use by individuals with disabilities at a location other than that where the electronic and information technology is provided to the public, or to purchase products for access and use by individuals with disabilities at a location other than that where the electronic and information technology is provided to the public.

(e) This part shall not be construed to require a fundamental alteration in the nature of a product or its components.

(f) Products located in spaces frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair, or occasional monitoring of equipment are not required to comply with this part.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

#### § D1194.4 Definitions.

The following definitions apply to this part:

*Agency.* Any Federal department or agency, including the United States Postal Service.

*Alternate formats.* Alternate formats usable by people with disabilities may include, but are not limited to, Braille, ASCII text, large print, recorded audio, and electronic formats that comply with this part.

*Alternate methods.* Different means of providing information, including product documentation, to people with disabilities. Alternate methods may include, but are not limited to, voice, fax, relay service, TTY, Internet posting, captioning, text-to-speech synthesis, and audio description.

*Assistive technology.* Any item, piece of equipment, or system, whether acquired commercially, modified, or customized, that is commonly used to increase, maintain, or improve functional capabilities of individuals with disabilities.

*Electronic and information technology.* Includes information technology and any equipment or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment, that is used in the creation, conversion, or duplication of data or information. The term electronic and information technology includes, but is not limited to, telecommunications products (such as telephones), information kiosks and transaction machines, World Wide Web sites, multimedia, and office equipment such as copiers and fax machines. The term does not include any equipment that contains embedded information technology that is used as an integral part of the product, but the principal function of which is not the acquisition, storage, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, or reception of data or information. For example, HVAC (heating, ventilation, and air conditioning) equipment such as thermostats or temperature control devices, and medical equipment where information technology is integral to its operation, are not information technology.

*Information technology.* Any equipment or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment, that is used in the automatic acquisition, storage, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, or reception

of data or information. The term information technology includes computers, ancillary equipment, software, firmware and similar procedures, services (including support services), and related resources.

*Operable controls.* A component of a product that requires physical contact for normal operation. Operable controls include, but are not limited to, mechanically operated controls, input and output trays, card slots, keyboards, or keypads.

*Product.* Electronic and information technology.

*Self Contained, Closed Products.* Products that generally have embedded software and are commonly designed in such a fashion that a user cannot easily attach or install assistive technology. These products include, but are not limited to, information kiosks and information transaction machines, copiers, printers, calculators, fax machines, and other similar types of products.

*Telecommunications.* The transmission, between or among points specified by the user, of information of the user's choosing, without change in the form or content of the information as sent and received.

*TTY.* An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Machinery or equipment that employs interactive text based communications through the transmission of coded signals across the telephone network. TTYs may include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons) or computers with special modems. TTYs are also called text telephones.

*Undue burden.* Undue burden means significant difficulty or expense. In determining whether an action would result in an undue burden, an agency shall consider all agency resources available to the program or component for which the product is being developed, procured, maintained, or used.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

#### § D1194.5 Equivalent facilitation.

Nothing in this part is intended to prevent the use of designs or technologies as alternatives to those prescribed in this part provided they result in substantially equivalent or greater access to and use of a product for people with disabilities.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

#### §§ D1194.6–D1194.20 [Reserved]

#### § D1194.21 Software applications and operating systems.

(a) When software is designed to run on a system that has a keyboard, product functions shall be executable from a keyboard where the function itself or the result of performing a function can be discerned textually.

(b) Applications shall not disrupt or disable activated features of other products that are identified as accessibility features, where those features are developed and documented according to industry standards. Applications also shall not disrupt or disable activated features of any operating system that are identified as accessibility features where the application programming interface for those accessibility features has been documented by the manufacturer of the operating system and is available to the product developer.

(c) A well-defined on-screen indication of the current focus shall be provided that moves among interactive interface elements as the input focus changes. The focus shall be programmatically exposed so that assistive technology can track focus and focus changes.

(d) Sufficient information about a user interface element including the identity, operation and state of the element shall be available to assistive technology. When an image represents a program element, the information conveyed by the image must also be available in text.

(e) When bitmap images are used to identify controls, status indicators, or other programmatic elements, the meaning assigned to those images shall be consistent throughout an application's performance.

(f) Textual information shall be provided through operating system functions for displaying text. The minimum information that shall be made available is text content, text input caret location, and text attributes.

(g) Applications shall not override user selected contrast and color selections and other individual display attributes.

(h) When animation is displayed, the information shall be displayable in at least one non-animated presentation mode at the option of the user.

(i) Color coding shall not be used as the only means of conveying information, indicating an action, prompting a response, or distinguishing a visual element.

(j) When a product permits a user to adjust color and contrast settings, a variety of color selections capable of producing a range of contrast levels shall be provided.

(k) Software shall not use flashing or blinking text, objects, or other elements having a flash or blink frequency greater than 2 Hz and lower than 55 Hz.

(l) When electronic forms are used, the form shall allow people using assistive technology to access the information, field elements, and functionality required for completion and submission of the form, including all directions and cues.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

**§ D1194.22 Web-based intranet and internet information and applications.**

(a) A text equivalent for every non-text element shall be provided (e.g., via "alt", "longdesc", or in element content).

(b) Equivalent alternatives for any multimedia presentation shall be synchronized with the presentation.

(c) Web pages shall be designed so that all information conveyed with color is also available without color, for example from context or markup.

(d) Documents shall be organized so they are readable without requiring an associated style sheet.

(e) Redundant text links shall be provided for each active region of a server-side image map.

(f) Client-side image maps shall be provided instead of server-side image maps except where the regions cannot be defined with an available geometric shape.

(g) Row and column headers shall be identified for data tables.

(h) Markup shall be used to associate data cells and header cells for data tables that have two or more logical levels of row or column headers.

(i) Frames shall be titled with text that facilitates frame identification and navigation.

(j) Pages shall be designed to avoid causing the screen to flicker with a frequency greater than 2 Hz and lower than 55 Hz.

(k) A text-only page, with equivalent information or functionality, shall be provided to make a web site comply with the provisions of this part, when compliance cannot be accomplished in any other way. The content of the text-only page shall be updated whenever the primary page changes.

(l) When pages utilize scripting languages to display content, or to create interface elements, the information provided by the script shall be identified with functional text that can be read by assistive technology.

(m) When a web page requires that an applet, plug-in or other application be present on the client system to interpret page content, the page must provide a link to a plug-in or applet that complies with § 1194.21(a) through (l).

(n) When electronic forms are designed to be completed on-line, the form shall allow people using assistive technology to access the information, field elements, and functionality required for completion and submission of the form, including all directions and cues.

(o) A method shall be provided that permits users to skip repetitive navigation links.

(p) When a timed response is required, the user shall be alerted and given sufficient time to indicate more time is required.

NOTE TO § D1194.22: 1. The Board interprets paragraphs (a) through (k) of this section as consistent with the following priority 1

Checkpoints of the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 1.0 (WCAG 1.0) (May 5, 1999) published by the Web Accessibility Initiative of the World Wide Web Consortium:

| Section 1194.22 paragraph | WCAG 1.0 checkpoint |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| (a) .....                 | 1.1                 |
| (b) .....                 | 1.4                 |
| (c) .....                 | 2.1                 |
| (d) .....                 | 6.1                 |
| (e) .....                 | 1.2                 |
| (f) .....                 | 9.1                 |
| (g) .....                 | 5.1                 |
| (h) .....                 | 5.2                 |
| (i) .....                 | 12.1                |
| (j) .....                 | 7.1                 |
| (k) .....                 | 11.4                |

2. Paragraphs (l), (m), (n), (o), and (p) of this section are different from WCAG 1.0. Web pages that conform to WCAG 1.0, level A (i.e., all priority 1 checkpoints) must also meet paragraphs (l), (m), (n), (o), and (p) of this section to comply with this section. WCAG 1.0 is available at <http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/WAI-WEBCONTENT-19990505>.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

#### § D1194.23 Telecommunications products.

(a) Telecommunications products or systems which provide a function allowing voice communication and which do not themselves provide a TTY functionality shall provide a standard non-acoustic connection point for TTYs. Microphones shall be capable of being turned on and off to allow the user to intermix speech with TTY use.

(b) Telecommunications products which include voice communication functionality shall support all commonly used cross-manufacturer non-proprietary standard TTY signal protocols.

(c) Voice mail, auto-attendant, and interactive voice response telecommunications systems shall be usable by TTY users with their TTYs.

(d) Voice mail, messaging, auto-attendant, and interactive voice response telecommunications systems that require a response from a user within a time interval, shall give an alert when the time interval is about to run out, and shall provide sufficient time for the user to indicate more time is required.

(e) Where provided, caller identification and similar telecommunications functions shall also be available for users of TTYs, and for users who cannot see displays.

(f) For transmitted voice signals, telecommunications products shall provide a gain adjustable up to a minimum of 20 dB. For incremental volume control, at least one intermediate step of 12 dB of gain shall be provided.

(g) If the telecommunications product allows a user to adjust the receive volume, a function shall be provided to automatically

reset the volume to the default level after every use.

(h) Where a telecommunications product delivers output by an audio transducer which is normally held up to the ear, a means for effective magnetic wireless coupling to hearing technologies shall be provided.

(i) Interference to hearing technologies (including hearing aids, cochlear implants, and assistive listening devices) shall be reduced to the lowest possible level that allows a user of hearing technologies to utilize the telecommunications product.

(j) Products that transmit or conduct information or communication, shall pass through cross-manufacturer, non-proprietary, industry-standard codes, translation protocols, formats or other information necessary to provide the information or communication in a usable format. Technologies which use encoding, signal compression, format transformation, or similar techniques shall not remove information needed for access or shall restore it upon delivery.

(k) Products which have mechanically operated controls or keys, shall comply with the following:

(1) Controls and keys shall be tactilely discernible without activating the controls or keys.

(2) Controls and keys shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls and keys shall be 5 lbs. (22.2 N) maximum.

(3) If key repeat is supported, the delay before repeat shall be adjustable to at least 2 seconds. Key repeat rate shall be adjustable to 2 seconds per character.

(4) The status of all locking or toggle controls or keys shall be visually discernible, and discernible either through touch or sound.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

#### § D1194.24 Video and multimedia products.

(a) All analog television displays 13 inches and larger, and computer equipment that includes analog television receiver or display circuitry, shall be equipped with caption decoder circuitry which appropriately receives, decodes, and displays closed captions from broadcast, cable, videotape, and DVD signals. As soon as practicable, but not later than July 1, 2002, widescreen digital television (DTV) displays measuring at least 7.8 inches vertically, DTV sets with conventional displays measuring at least 13 inches vertically, and stand-alone DTV tuners, whether or not they are marketed with display screens, and computer equipment that includes DTV receiver or display circuitry, shall be equipped with caption decoder circuitry which appropriately receives, decodes, and displays closed captions from broadcast, cable, videotape, and DVD signals.

(b) Television tuners, including tuner cards for use in computers, shall be equipped with secondary audio program playback circuitry.

(c) All training and informational video and multimedia productions which support the agency's mission, regardless of format, that contain speech or other audio information necessary for the comprehension of the content, shall be open or closed captioned.

(d) All training and informational video and multimedia productions which support the agency's mission, regardless of format, that contain visual information necessary for the comprehension of the content, shall be audio described.

(e) Display or presentation of alternate text presentation or audio descriptions shall be user-selectable unless permanent.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

**§ D1194.25 Self contained, closed products.**

(a) Self contained products shall be usable by people with disabilities without requiring an end-user to attach assistive technology to the product. Personal headsets for private listening are not assistive technology.

(b) When a timed response is required, the user shall be alerted and given sufficient time to indicate more time is required.

(c) Where a product utilizes touchscreens or contact-sensitive controls, an input method shall be provided that complies with § 1194.23 (k) (1) through (4).

(d) When biometric forms of user identification or control are used, an alternative form of identification or activation, which does not require the user to possess particular biological characteristics, shall also be provided.

(e) When products provide auditory output, the audio signal shall be provided at a standard signal level through an industry standard connector that will allow for private listening. The product must provide the ability to interrupt, pause, and restart the audio at anytime.

(f) When products deliver voice output in a public area, incremental volume control shall be provided with output amplification up to a level of at least 65 dB. Where the ambient noise level of the environment is above 45 dB, a volume gain of at least 20 dB above the ambient level shall be user selectable. A function shall be provided to automatically reset the volume to the default level after every use.

(g) Color coding shall not be used as the only means of conveying information, indicating an action, prompting a response, or distinguishing a visual element.

(h) When a product permits a user to adjust color and contrast settings, a range of color selections capable of producing a variety of contrast levels shall be provided.

(i) Products shall be designed to avoid causing the screen to flicker with a fre-

quency greater than 2 Hz and lower than 55 Hz.

(j) Products which are freestanding, non-portable, and intended to be used in one location and which have operable controls shall comply with the following:

(1) The position of any operable control shall be determined with respect to a vertical plane, which is 48 inches in length, centered on the operable control, and at the maximum protrusion of the product within the 48 inch length (see Figure 1 of this part).

(2) Where any operable control is 10 inches or less behind the reference plane, the height shall be 54 inches maximum and 15 inches minimum above the floor.

(3) Where any operable control is more than 10 inches and not more than 24 inches behind the reference plane, the height shall be 46 inches maximum and 15 inches minimum above the floor.

(4) Operable controls shall not be more than 24 inches behind the reference plane (see Figure 2 of this part).

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

**§ D1194.26 Desktop and portable computers.**

(a) All mechanically operated controls and keys shall comply with § 1194.23(k)(1) through (4).

(b) If a product utilizes touchscreens or touch-operated controls, an input method shall be provided that complies with § 1194.23 (k) (1) through (4).

(c) When biometric forms of user identification or control are used, an alternative form of identification or activation, which does not require the user to possess particular biological characteristics, shall also be provided.

(d) Where provided, at least one of each type of expansion slots, ports and connectors shall comply with publicly available industry standards.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

**§§ D1194.27-D1194.30 [Reserved]**

**§ D1194.31 Functional performance criteria.**

(a) At least one mode of operation and information retrieval that does not require user vision shall be provided, or support for assistive technology used by people who are blind or visually impaired shall be provided.

(b) At least one mode of operation and information retrieval that does not require visual acuity greater than 20/70 shall be provided in audio and enlarged print output working together or independently, or support for assistive technology used by people who are visually impaired shall be provided.

(c) At least one mode of operation and information retrieval that does not require user hearing shall be provided, or support for

**Pt. 1194, App. D**

assistive technology used by people who are deaf or hard of hearing shall be provided.

(d) Where audio information is important for the use of a product, at least one mode of operation and information retrieval shall be provided in an enhanced auditory fashion, or support for assistive hearing devices shall be provided.

(e) At least one mode of operation and information retrieval that does not require user speech shall be provided, or support for assistive technology used by people with disabilities shall be provided.

(f) At least one mode of operation and information retrieval that does not require fine motor control or simultaneous actions and that is operable with limited reach and strength shall be provided.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

**36 CFR Ch. XI (7–1–23 Edition)**

**§§ D1194.32–D1194.40 [Reserved]**

**§ D1194.41 Information, documentation, and support.**

(a) Product support documentation provided to end-users shall be made available in alternate formats upon request, at no additional charge.

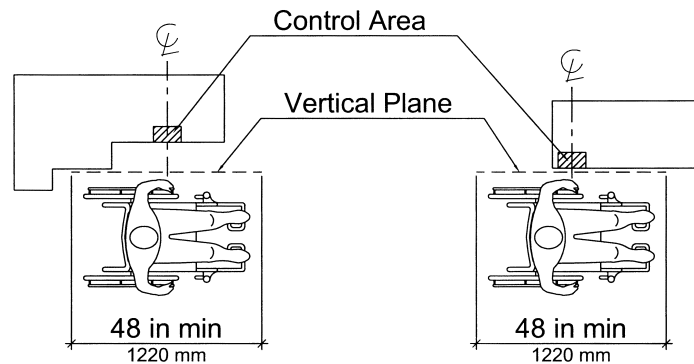
(b) End-users shall have access to a description of the accessibility and compatibility features of products in alternate formats or alternate methods upon request, at no additional charge.

(c) Support services for products shall accommodate the communication needs of end-users with disabilities.

[65 FR 80523, Dec. 21, 2000. Redesignated and amended at 82 FR 5832, Jan. 18, 2017]

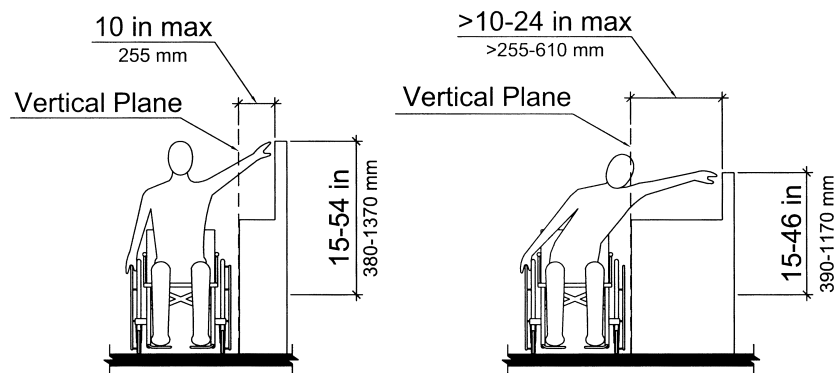
**§§ D1194.42–D1194.50 [Reserved]**

**§ D1194.51 Figures**



Vertical Plane Relative to the Operable Control

Figure 1



Height of Operable Control Relative to the Vertical Plane

Figure 2

**PART 1195—STANDARDS FOR ACCESSIBLE MEDICAL DIAGNOSTIC EQUIPMENT**

Sec.

1195.1 Standards.

APPENDIX TO PART 1195—STANDARDS FOR ACCESSIBLE MEDICAL DIAGNOSTIC EQUIPMENT

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 794f.

SOURCE: 82 FR 2845, Jan. 9, 2017, unless otherwise noted.

**§ 1195.1 Standards.**

The standards for accessible medical diagnostic equipment are set forth in

the appendix to this part. Other agencies, referred to as an enforcing authority in the standards, may adopt the standards as mandatory requirements for entities subject to their jurisdiction. Advisory sections and figures that illustrate the technical requirements in the appendix to part 1195 are available on the Internet at: [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov). These advisory materials provide guidance only and do not contain mandatory requirements.

#### APPENDIX TO PART 1195—STANDARDS FOR ACCESSIBLE MEDICAL DIAGNOSTIC EQUIPMENT

##### TABLE OF CONTENTS

##### CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

M101 General  
M102 Definitions

##### CHAPTER 2: SCOPING

M201 General

##### CHAPTER 3: TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS

M301 Diagnostic Equipment Used by Patients in Supine, Prone, or Side-Lying Position  
M302 Diagnostic Equipment Used by Patients in Seated Position  
M303 Diagnostic Equipment Used by Patients Seated in a Wheelchair  
M304 Diagnostic Equipment Used by Patients in Standing Position  
M305 Supports  
M306 Communication  
M307 Operable Parts

##### CHAPTER 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

##### M101 GENERAL

**M101.1 Purpose.** These Standards (MDE Standards) contain scoping and technical requirements for medical diagnostic equipment (diagnostic equipment) to ensure accessibility to, and usability of the diagnostic equipment by patients with disabilities. The MDE Standards provide for independent access to, and use of, diagnostic equipment by patients with disabilities to the maximum extent possible.

**M101.2 Application.** Sections M301 through M304 shall be applied to diagnostic equipment, based on the patient positions that the equipment supports, during patient transfer and diagnostic use. Sections M306 and M307 shall be applied to diagnostic equipment where communication features or operable parts are provided for patient use.

**M101.3 Existing Diagnostic Equipment.** The MDE Standards do not address the applicability of scoping or technical requirements to existing diagnostic equipment. Enforcing

authorities, such as the Department of Justice or the Department of Health and Human Services, have authority over the accessibility of existing equipment and any regulation of that equipment will be effective only to the extent required by such enforcing authorities.

**M101.4 Equivalent Facilitation.** The use of alternative designs or technologies that result in substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability than specified in the MDE Standards is permitted.

**M101.5 Dimensions.** The MDE Standards are based on adult dimensions and anthropometrics. Dimensions that are not stated as “maximum” or “minimum” are absolute.

**M101.6 Dimensional Tolerances.** Dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances for manufacturing processes, material properties, and field conditions.

**M101.7 Units of Measurement.** Measurements are stated in U.S. customary and metric units. The values stated in each system (U.S. customary and metric units) may not be exact equivalents, and each system shall be used independently of the other.

##### M102 DEFINITIONS

**M102.1 Defined Terms.** For the purpose of the MDE Standards, the following terms have the indicated meaning:

**End Transfer Surface.** A transfer surface located at one end of an examination surface that allows patient transfer at the end and one adjoining side of the examination surface.

**Enforcing Authority.** An agency or other governmental entity that adopts the MDE Standards as mandatory requirements for entities subject to its jurisdiction. Enforcing authorities may include, but are not limited to the United States Departments of Justice and Health and Human Services.

**Examination Chair.** Diagnostic equipment with a seat in which a patient typically is positioned with buttocks approximately parallel to the ground and shins approximately perpendicular to the ground. Examination chairs typically have back support and may recline to properly position the patient during examination. Such chairs may also have footrests or stirrups. Examination chairs include, but are not limited to, equipment used for dental, ophthalmic, podiatric, gynecological, urological, and ear, nose, and throat examinations.

**Imaging bed.** A component of diagnostic scanning equipment that accommodates patients in supine, prone, or side-lying positions.

**Imaging equipment with bores.** Diagnostic scanning equipment using magnets, x-rays, or detectors into which a patient and the table on which the patient lies is inserted into the equipment through a cylindrical

opening (bore) in order to achieve the positioning accuracy needed during the scan. Such equipment includes, but is not limited to, computerized axial tomography (CT or CAT), positron emission tomography (PET), and nuclear medicine (NM) scanning equipment or a combination thereof.

*Medical Diagnostic Equipment (Diagnostic Equipment).* Equipment used in, or in conjunction with, medical settings by health care providers for diagnostic purposes.

*Operable Parts.* Components of diagnostic equipment that are used by the patient to activate, deactivate, or adjust the equipment.

*Side Transfer Surface.* A transfer surface located within the length of the examination surface that allows patient transfer on two opposing sides of the examination surface.

*Transfer Surface.* Part of diagnostic equipment onto which patients who use mobility devices or aids transfer when moving onto and off of the equipment.

*Wheelchair Space.* Space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

*M102.2 Undefined Terms.* Terms not defined in M102.1 or in regulations or policies issued by an enforcing authority shall be given their ordinarily accepted meaning in the sense that the context implies.

*M102.3 Interchangeability.* Words, terms, and phrases used in the singular include the plural and those used in the plural include the singular.

## CHAPTER 2: SCOPING

### M201 GENERAL

*M201.1 Application by Enforcing Authority.* The enforcing authority shall specify the number and type of diagnostic equipment that are required to comply with the MDE Standards.

*M201.2 General Exception.* Medical diagnostic equipment shall not be required to comply with one or more applicable requirements in the MDE Standards in the rare circumstances where compliance would alter diagnostically required structural or operational characteristics of the equipment and would prevent the use of the equipment for its intended diagnostic purpose. Diagnostic equipment subject to M201.2 shall comply to the maximum extent practicable.

## CHAPTER 3: TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS

### M301 DIAGNOSTIC EQUIPMENT USED BY PATIENTS IN SUPINE, PRONE, OR SIDE-LYING POSITION

*M301.1 General.* Diagnostic equipment that supports patients in a supine, prone, or side-lying position shall comply with M301.

*Exception:* Examination chairs complying with M302 that recline to facilitate diagnosis after patients transfer onto the chair shall not be required to comply with M301.

*M301.2 Transfer Surface.* A transfer surface shall be provided and shall comply with M301.2.

*M301.2.1 Adjustability.* Transfer surfaces shall be adjustable in height measured from the floor to the top of the uncompressed transfer surface and shall provide the following:

A. A low transfer position at a height of 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum;

B. A high transfer position at 25 inches (635 mm); and

C. At least 4 additional transfer positions located between the low and high transfer positions and separated by 1 inch (25 mm) minimum.

*M301.2.2 Sunset.* The low transfer position height, Item A of M301.2.1, shall cease to have effect on January 10, 2025.

*M301.2.3 Size.* The size of the transfer surface shall comply with M301.2.3.1 or M301.2.3.2. The size of transfer surfaces shall be measured from center points of their opposing sides.

*M301.2.3.1 End Transfer Surface.* End transfer surfaces shall be 28 inches (710 mm) wide minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) long minimum.

*Exception:* Transfer surfaces for imaging equipment with bores shall be permitted to be 21 inches (535 mm) wide minimum but shall not be permitted to be less than the full width of the examination surface provided for the patient.

*M301.2.3.2 Side Transfer Surface.* Side transfer surfaces shall be 28 inches (710 mm) wide minimum and 28 inches (710 mm) long minimum.

*Exception:* Transfer surfaces for imaging equipment with bores shall be permitted to be 21 inches (535 mm) wide minimum but shall not be permitted to be less than the full width of the examination surface provided for the patient.

*M301.2.4 Unobstructed Transfer.* Each transfer surface shall provide two unobstructed sides for patient transfer.

*Exceptions:* 1. Obstructions no more than 3 inches (75 mm) deep shall be permitted to extend beyond transfer sides of transfer surfaces provided that such obstructions do not protrude above the tops of transfer surfaces.

2. Temporary obstructions shall be permitted provided that they can be repositioned during transfer to comply with M301.2.4, including Exception 1.

*M301.3 Supports.* Transfer supports, leg supports, and reclining surfaces shall comply with M301.3.

*M301.3.1 Transfer Supports.* Transfer surfaces required by M301.2 shall provide transfer supports and shall comply with M305.2.

*M301.3.2 Leg Supports.* Where stirrups are provided, leg supports shall also be provided and shall comply with M305.4.

**M301.3.3 Head and Back Support.** Where the diagnostic equipment is used in a reclined position, head and back support shall be provided and shall comply with M305.5.

**M301.4 Lift Compatibility.** Diagnostic equipment shall be usable with portable patient lifts and, when in use with such lifts, shall comply with M301.4.1 or M301.4.2.

**Exception:** Where fixed overhead patient lifts are provided, and when their use with diagnostic equipment is permitted by an enforcing authority, diagnostic equipment shall not be required to meet the lift compatibility requirements of this section provided that such equipment is clearly labeled as not compatible with portable floor lifts.

**M301.4.1 Clearance in Base.** The base of diagnostic equipment shall provide a clearance 39 inches (990 mm) wide minimum, 6 inches (150 mm) high minimum measured from the floor, and 36 inches (915 mm) deep minimum measured from the edge of the examination surface. Where the width of examination surfaces is less than 36 inches (915 mm), the clearance depth shall extend the full width of the equipment. Components of diagnostic equipment are permitted to be located within 8 inches (205 mm) maximum of the centerline of the clearance width.

**M301.4.2 Clearance Around Base.** The base of diagnostic equipment shall provide a clearance 6 inches (150 mm) high minimum measured from the floor and 36 inches (915 mm) deep minimum measured from the edge of the examination surface. The width of the base permitted within this clearance shall be 26 inches (660 mm) wide maximum at the edge of the examination surface and shall be permitted to increase at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in width for each 3 inches (75 mm) in depth.

#### M302 DIAGNOSTIC EQUIPMENT USED BY PATIENTS IN SEATED POSITION

**M302.1 General.** Diagnostic equipment that supports patients in a seated position shall comply with M302.

**Exception:** Where weight scales contain wheelchair spaces complying with M303 and also provide a seat integral to the equipment, the scales shall not be required to comply with M302.

**M302.2 Transfer Surface.** A transfer surface shall be provided and shall comply with M302.2.

**M302.2.1 Adjustability.** Transfer surfaces shall be adjustable in height measured from the floor to the top of the uncompressed transfer surface and shall provide the following:

- A. A low transfer position at a height of 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum;
- B. A high transfer position at 25 inches (635 mm); and
- C. At least 4 additional transfer positions located between the low and high transfer

positions and separated by 1 inch (25 mm) minimum.

**M302.2.2 Sunset.** The low transfer position height, Item A of M302.2.1, shall cease to have effect on January 10, 2025.

**M302.2.3 Size.** Transfer surfaces shall be 21 inches (610 mm) wide minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) deep minimum. The size of transfer surfaces shall be measured from center points of their opposing sides.

**M302.2.4 Transfer Sides.** Options to transfer from a mobility device shall be provided on two adjoining sides of transfer surfaces.

**Exception:** Options to transfer to or from a mobility device onto opposing sides of transfer surfaces shall be permitted where the transfer surface is obstructed by fixed footrests.

**M302.2.5 Unobstructed Transfer.** Each transfer side complying with M302.2.4 shall provide unobstructed access to transfer surfaces.

**Exceptions:** 1. Obstructions no more than 3 inches (75 mm) deep shall be permitted to extend beyond transfer sides of transfer surfaces provided that such obstructions do not protrude above the tops of transfer surfaces.

2. Temporary obstructions shall be permitted provided that they can be repositioned during transfer to comply with M302.2.5, including Exception 1.

**M302.3 Supports.** Transfer supports, leg supports and reclining surfaces shall comply with M302.3.

**M302.3.1 Transfer Supports.** Transfer supports shall be provided for use with transfer sides required by M302.2.4 and shall comply with M305.2.1.1, M305.2.2.1, and M305.2.3 through M305.2.8.

**M302.3.2 Leg Supports.** Where stirrups are provided, leg supports shall also be provided and comply with M305.4.

**M302.3.3 Head and Back Support.** Where the diagnostic equipment is used in a reclined position, head and back support shall be provided and shall comply with M305.5.

**M302.4 Lift Compatibility.** Diagnostic equipment shall be usable with portable patient lifts and, when in use with such lifts, shall comply with M302.4.1 or M302.4.2.

**Exception:** Where fixed overhead patient lifts are provided, and when their use with diagnostic equipment is permitted by an enforcing authority, diagnostic equipment shall not be required to meet the lift compatibility requirements of this section provided that such equipment is clearly labeled as not compatible with portable floor lifts.

**M302.4.1 Clearance in Base.** The base of the diagnostic equipment shall provide a clearance 39 inches (990 mm) wide minimum, 6 inches (150 mm) high minimum measured from the floor, and 36 inches (915 mm) deep minimum measured from the edge of the examination surface. Where the width of the examination surface is less than 36 inches (915 mm), the clearance depth shall extend

the full width of the equipment. Equipment components are permitted to be located within 8 inches (205 mm) maximum of the centerline of the clearance width.

**M302.4.2 Clearance Around Base.** The base of the diagnostic equipment shall provide a clearance 6 inches (150 mm) high minimum measured from the floor and 36 inches (915 mm) deep minimum measured from the edge of the examination surface. The width of the base permitted within this clearance shall be 26 inches (660 mm) wide maximum at the edge of the examination surface and shall be permitted to increase at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in width for each 3 inches (75 mm) in depth.

**M303 DIAGNOSTIC EQUIPMENT USED BY PATIENTS SEATED IN A WHEELCHAIR**

**M303.1 General.** Diagnostic equipment used by patients seated in a wheelchair shall comply with M303.

**M303.2 Wheelchair Spaces.** Wheelchair spaces complying with M303.2 shall be provided at diagnostic equipment.

**M303.2.1 Orientation.** Wheelchair spaces shall be designed so that a patient seated in a wheelchair orients in the same direction that a patient not seated in a wheelchair orients when the diagnostic equipment is in use.

**M303.2.2 Width.** Wheelchair spaces shall be 36 inches (915 mm) wide minimum.

**Exception:** Wheelchair spaces located on raised platforms shall be permitted to be 32 inches (815 mm) wide minimum to a height of 4 inches (100 mm) measured from the platform surface.

**M303.2.3 Depth.** The depth of wheelchair spaces shall comply with M303.2.3.

**M303.2.3.1 Front or Rear Entry.** Where wheelchair space entry and exit is provided at only one end (front or rear) the wheelchair space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) deep minimum.

**M303.2.3.2 Pass Through Entry.** Where wheelchair space entry and exit permits pass through from one end to the other, the wheelchair space shall be 40 inches deep (1015 mm) minimum.

**M303.2.3.3 Side Entry.** Where wheelchair space entry is only from the side, the wheelchair space shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) deep minimum.

**M303.2.4 Equipment Clearances.** Where wheelchair spaces are entered from the rear and includes space beneath components, wheelchair spaces shall include knee and toe clearances complying with M303.2.4.1 for breast platforms and M303.2.4.2 for all other equipment.

**M303.2.4.1 Breast Platforms.** Wheelchair spaces beneath breast platforms shall comply with M303.2.4.1.

**M303.2.4.1.1 Depth.** Wheelchair spaces shall include knee and toe clearance 25

inches (635 mm) deep minimum and 28 inches (710 mm) deep maximum.

**M303.2.4.1.2 Height.** Wheelchair spaces shall include toe clearance 9 inches (230 mm) high minimum above the floor measured to a depth of 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the toe end of the wheelchair space. Knee clearance shall be provided at a depth of 19 inches (485 mm) minimum and 22 inches (560 mm) maximum at 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor and at a depth of 16 inches (405 mm) minimum at 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor measured from the leading edge of the breast platform. Between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor, the knee clearance shall be permitted to reduce at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for every 6 inches (150 mm) in height.

**Exception:** Components shall be permitted to extend into the wheelchair space at a height of 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum between 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 25 inches (635 mm) maximum in depth measured from the leading edge of the breast platform. From 25 inches (635 mm) to 28 inches (710 mm) in depth the height of a component above 1½ inches (38 mm) shall be beveled at a rate of 2.5:3 maximum.

**M303.2.4.2 Other Equipment.** Wheelchair spaces beneath diagnostic equipment other than breast platforms shall comply with M303.2.4.2.

**M303.2.4.2.1 Depth.** Wheelchair spaces shall include knee and toe clearance 17 inches (430 mm) deep minimum and 25 inches (635 mm) deep maximum.

**M303.2.4.2.2 Height.** Wheelchair spaces shall include toe clearance 9 inches (230 mm) high minimum above the floor measured to a depth of 6 inches (150 mm) maximum measured from the toe end of the wheelchair space. Knee clearance shall be provided at a depth of 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 25 inches (635 mm) maximum at 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor and at a depth of 8 inches (205 mm) minimum at 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor measured from the leading edge of the equipment. Between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor, the knee clearance shall be permitted to reduce at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for every 6 inches (150 mm) in height.

**M303.2.5 Surfaces.** Wheelchair space surfaces shall not slope more than 1:48 in any direction.

**M303.2.6 Edge Protection.** Where wheelchair spaces are provided on a platform raised more than 1½ inches (38 mm) in height, edge protection 2 inches (51 mm) high minimum measured from the surface of the platform shall be provided on each side not providing entry to or exit from the equipment.

**M303.3 Entry.** Where there is a change in level at the entry to wheelchair spaces, the change in level shall comply with M303.3.

**M303.3.1 Vertical.** Changes in level of ¼ inch (6.4 mm) high maximum shall be permitted to be vertical.

**M303.3.2 Beveled.** Changes in level between ¼ inch (6.4 mm) high and ½ inch (13 mm) high maximum shall be beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.

**M303.3.3 Ramped.** Changes in level greater than ½ inch (13 mm) high shall be ramped and shall comply with M303.3.3.

**M303.3.3.1 Running Slope.** Ramp runs shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12.

**Exception:** A running slope not steeper than 1:8 shall be permitted for ramp runs with a maximum height of 2½ inches (64 mm).

**M303.3.3.2 Cross Slope.** The cross slope of ramp runs shall not be steeper than 1:48.

**M303.3.3.3 Clear Width.** The clear width of ramp runs shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

**M303.3.3.4 Edge Protection.** Ramps with drop offs ½ inch (13 mm) or greater shall provide edge protection 2 inches (50 mm) high minimum on each side with a drop off.

**M303.3.3.5 Handrails.** Ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches (150 mm) shall provide handrails on both sides.

**M303.4 Components.** Where components of diagnostic equipment are used to examine specific body parts, the components shall be capable of examining the body parts of a patient seated in a wheelchair. Breast platforms shall comply with M303.4.1.

**M303.4.1 Breast Platform Adjustability.** Breast platforms shall be continuously adjustable from a low height of 26 inches (660 mm) to a high height of 42 inches (1065 mm) above the floor.

#### M304 DIAGNOSTIC EQUIPMENT USED BY PATIENTS IN STANDING POSITION

**M304.1 General.** Diagnostic equipment used by patients in a standing position shall comply with M304.

**M304.2 Standing Surface.** Equipment surfaces on which patients stand must comply with M304.2.

**M304.2.1 Slip Resistant.** The surface on which the patient stands shall be slip resistant.

**M304.2.2 Standing Supports.** Standing supports shall be provided on two sides of the standing surface and shall comply with M305.3.

**Exception:** Diagnostic equipment with entry and exit permitting pass-through from one end to the other shall be permitted to provide one standing support on one side of the standing surface provided that the standing support complies with the requirements for standing supports in a horizontal position in M305.3.

#### M305 SUPPORTS

**M305.1 General.** Supports shall comply with M305.

**M305.2 Transfer Supports.** Transfer supports shall comply with M305.2.

**M305.2.1 Location.** Transfer supports shall comply with M305.2.1.1 or M305.2.1.2 and shall be located 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum measured horizontally from the plane defined by the nearest edge of the transfer surface.

**Exception:** Where the support folds, collapses, or articulates, the transfer support shall be permitted to be located 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from the plane defined by the nearest edge of the transfer surface.

**M305.2.1.1 End Transfer Supports.** Transfer supports for transfer surfaces complying with M301.2.3.1 and M302.2 shall be located on the short side (length) opposite the transfer side.

**M305.2.1.2 Side Transfer Supports.** Transfer supports for transfer surfaces complying with M301.2.3.2 shall be capable of supporting transfer on each side of the transfer surface.

**M305.2.2 Length.** The length of transfer supports shall comply with M305.2.2.1 or M305.2.2.2.

**M305.2.2.1 End Transfer Supports.** Transfer supports for transfer surfaces complying with M301.2.3.1 and M305.2.2.1 shall be 15 inches (380 mm) long minimum. Transfer supports shall be positioned along 13½ inches (345 mm) minimum of the depth of the transfer surface.

**M305.2.2.2 Side Transfer Supports.** Transfer supports for transfer surfaces complying with M301.2.3.2 shall be 28 inches (710 mm) long minimum and shall be positioned along the width of transfer surfaces.

**Exceptions:** 1. Where transfer surfaces are part of an articulating surface, the support shall be permitted to be 15 inches (380 mm) long minimum.

2. Where the width of an imaging bed is more than 24 inches (533 mm), transfer supports shall be permitted to be 12 inches (305 mm) long minimum.

**M305.2.3 Height.** During use, the tops of transfer support gripping surfaces shall be 6 inches (150 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum higher than the top of the associated uncompressed transfer surface.

**Exception:** Where the width of the transfer surface for imaging beds exceed 24 inches (610 mm), the tops of the gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum higher than the top of the associated uncompressed transfer surface.

**M305.2.4 Cross Section.** Transfer supports shall have a cross section complying with 305.2.4.1 or 305.2.4.2.

**M305.2.4.1 Circular Cross Section.** Transfer supports with circular cross sections shall have an outside diameter of 1¼ inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

**M305.2.4.2 Non-Circular Cross Section.** Transfer supports with non-circular cross

sections shall have a cross-section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum.

**M305.2.5 Surface Hazards.** Transfer supports and surfaces adjacent to transfer supports shall be free of sharp or abrasive components and shall have eased edges.

**M305.2.6 Gripping Surface.** Transfer support gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of transfer support gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length.

**M305.2.7 Clearance.** Clearance between the transfer support gripping surface and adjacent surfaces or obstructions shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum.

**M305.2.8 Fittings.** Transfer supports shall not rotate within their fittings when in place for transfer.

**M305.3 Standing Supports.** Standing supports shall provide continuous support throughout use of the diagnostic equipment and shall comply with M305.3.

**M305.3.1 Length.** The length of gripping surfaces for standing supports shall be based on the position of the standing supports in relation to the standing surfaces they serve. Horizontal standing support gripping surfaces shall comply with M305.3.1.1, horizontal standing support gripping surfaces on diagnostic equipment containing a wheelchair space shall comply with M305.3.1.2 and, vertical standing support gripping surfaces shall comply with M305.3.1.3.

**M305.3.1.1 Horizontal Position.** The length of gripping surfaces on horizontal standing supports shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum except for diagnostic equipment containing a wheelchair space which shall comply with M305.3.1.2.

**M305.3.1.2 Diagnostic Equipment Containing a Wheelchair Space.** On diagnostic equipment containing wheelchair spaces with one entry that also serves as the exit, the length of the gripping surface of horizontal standing supports shall be equal to or greater than 80 percent of the overall length of the platform. On diagnostic equipment containing a wheelchair space and permitting pass-through from one end to the other, the length of the gripping surface on horizontal standing supports shall be at least equal to the length of the platform.

**M305.3.1.3 Vertical Position.** The length of the gripping surface on vertical standing supports shall be 18 inches (455 mm) minimum.

**M305.3.2 Height.** The height of gripping surfaces for standing supports shall be based on the position of the standing supports in relation to the standing surfaces they serve. Horizontal standing support gripping surfaces shall comply with M305.3.2.1 and vertical standing support gripping surfaces shall comply with M305.3.2.2.

**M305.3.2.1 Horizontal Position.** The height of the top of the gripping surface on horizontal standing supports shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum above the standing surface.

**M305.3.2.2 Vertical Position.** The height of the lowest end of the gripping surface on vertical standing supports shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 37 inches (940 mm) maximum above the standing surface.

**M305.3.3 Fittings.** Standing supports shall not rotate within their fittings.

**M305.4 Leg Supports.** Leg supports shall provide a method of supporting, positioning, and securing the patient's legs.

**M305.5 Head and Back Support.** Where the diagnostic equipment is used in a reclined position, head and back support shall be provided. Where the incline of the back support can be modified while in use, head and back support shall be provided throughout the entire range of the incline.

#### M306 COMMUNICATION

**M306.1 General.** Where instructions or other information necessary for performance of the diagnostic procedure is communicated to the patient through the diagnostic equipment, the instructions and other information shall be provided in at least two of the following methods: Audible, visible, or tactile.

#### M307 OPERABLE PARTS

**M307.1 General.** Operable parts for patient use shall comply with M307.

**M307.2 Tactilely Discernible.** Operable parts shall be tactilely discernible without activation.

**M307.3 Operation.** Operable parts shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist.

**M307.4 Operating Force.** The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

[82 FR 2845, Jan. 9, 2017, as amended at 87 FR 6038, Feb. 3, 2022]

### PARTS 1196–1199 [RESERVED]